Unit 1

Egypt's Heritage

Learning Outcomes

Reading

- Identify gist in a text about Egypt's heritage
- Recognize specific detail in a text about Egypt's heritage

Listening

- Identify the main ideas from audio texts about cultural heritage and its preservation

Language

- Use the past simple for completed past actions
- Use the past continuous to show that an action was in progress

Writing

- Write a short narrative paragraph about "a strange day in my life" using past simple and past continuous

Speaking

- Describe a longer, ongoing action in the past using the Past Continuous and a shorter action in past simple.

Unit 1

Egypt's Heritage

Lessons
1 Taking Pride in Our Beloved Egypt
2 Moments That Shaped Us

Key Vocabulary

heritage (n)	تراث	national identity	الهوية القومية	progress (n/v)	تقدم / يتقدم
merchant (n)	تاجر	preserve (v)	يحفظ/ يصون	privilege (n)	ميزة/ شرف
trade (n/v)	تجارة / يتاجر	preservation (n)	حفاظ	sacrifice (n/v)	تضحية / يضحى
monuments (n)	آثار / معالم	restore (v)	يرمم/ يصلح / يصون	legacy (n)	إرث/ ميراث
neighborhood (n)	حي / جوار	contribute (v)	يساهم	inspire (v)	يلهم
civilization (n)	حضارة	pride (n)	فخر	inspiration (n)	ألهام / وحي
crossroads (n)	مفترق طرق	determination (n)	عزيمة / إصرار	honor (v/n)	يكرم/ شرف

Main Vocabulary

ancestor (n)	سلف/ جد	architect (n)	مهندس معمارى	economy (n)	اقتصاد
attraction (n)	جذب/ معلم جذاب	compare (v)	يقارن / يشبه	balance (n/v)	توازن /يوازن
challenge (v)	تحدى / يتحدى	immense (adj)	هائل/ ضخم	core (n)	جوهر / اساس
harmony (n)	انسجام / تناغم	export (n/v)	يصدر / تصدير	era (n)	عصر / حقبة
carve (v)	ينحت	symbol (n)	رمز	significant (adj)	مهم / ذو معنى
knowledge (n)	معرفة	homeland (n)	وطن	material (n)	مادة / خامة
beat (v)	ينبض / يدق / يهزم	decoration (n)	تزيين / زخرفة	culture (n)	ثقافة
citizen (n)	مواطن	demonstrate (v)	يُظهر / يبين	continent (n)	قارة
gather (v)	يجمع/ يتجمع	anxiety (n)	قلق	host (n/v)	يستضيف / مستضيف
grain (n)	حبوب / محصول	generation (n)	جيل	flood (n/v)	فيضان/ يفيض
historical (adj)	تاريخى	national (adj)	قومى	medical (adj)	طبي / متعلق بالطب
embrace (v)	يعانق / يتبنى شيئًا	climate change (n)	تغيَر المناخ	lack (n)	نقص / قلة
author (n)	مؤلف	distant (adj)	بعيد	effect (n)	أثر / تأثير
require (v)	يتطلب	role (n)	دور	wisdom (n)	حكمة
site (n)	موقع	urban (adj)	حضري	medicine (n)	دواء / طب
mission (n)	مهمة	awareness (n)	وعى/ ادراك	context (n)	سياق
duty (n)	واجب	exchange (n/v)	تبادل / يتبادل	source (n)	مصدر
hieroglyphs (n)	الهيروغليفية	archaeologist (n)	عالم آثار	protect (v)	يحمى
shape (n/v)	شكل / هيئة / يشكل	will (n/v)	إرادة / وصية / يوصي	youth (n)	شباب

Collocations

take pride in	يفخر بـ	fall asleep	ينام
feel (be) proud of (to+inf.)	يشعر بالفخر بـ	exchange ideas	يتبادل الأفكار
play a role in	يلعب دورًا في	serve lunch	يقدم الغذاء
record history	يسجل التاريخ	protect our heritage	يحمي تراثنا
achieve a goal	يحقق هدفًا	make a plan	يعمل خطة
gather knowledge	يجمع المعرفة	do the shopping	يقوم بالتسوق
contribute to knowledge	يساهم بالمعرفة	honor history	احترام التاريخ / يعطى التاريخ حقه

Expressions & Prepositions

a land with a heart	أرض نابضة بالحياة	carved into	منحوت على / محفور في
take turns to	يأخذ دوراً / يتناوب على	lack of awareness	نقص الوعي
contribute to+ (n. / v+ing)	يساهم في	stand with pride	يقف بفخر
lead to + (n. / v+ing)	يؤدي الي	focus on	يركز على
close to	بالقرب من	based on	مبني على / قائم علي
meet in harmony	يلتقي في وئام او انسجام	protect from	يحمي من
record history	يسجل التاريخ	prevent … from	يمنع … من
connect with	يتواصل مع	a source of inspiration for	مصدر إلهام
a crossroads for trade	مفترق طرق للتجارة	reconnect with our past	نعيد الاتصال بماضينا
pass down	يورِّث / ينقل عبر الأجيال	share with	يشارك / يتشارك مع

Definitions

civilization	حضارة	a group of people living together with rules, culture, cities, and ways of life.
neighborhood	الحي / الجوار	the area or place around your home where people live close to each other
heritage	تراث	history, traditions, and values passed down
crossroad	مفترق طرق	a place where two or more roads meet.
merchant	تاجر	a person who buys and sells goods
preserve	يحافظ	to keep something in good or original condition and preventing damage
national identity	الهوية القومية	the shared sense of who a nation's people are , shaped by common history, culture , and values
sacrifice	تضحية / يضحى	the act of giving up something valuable for someone or something more important
privilege	ميزة / شرف	a special right or advantage that only some people or groups have
restore	يرمم	to return something to a former good condition by repairing or cleaning it
legacy	إرث	something that is passed down from the past- ideas, achievements, or property - that still affects the present
inspire	يلهم	to motivate and encourage others
monument	أثر / معلم أثري	an important historical building or structure

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
protect	يحمي	protection	حماية	protective	وقائي / حامي
inspire	يلهم	inspiration	الهام	inspiring	ملهم / مسبب للالهام
develop	يطور	development	تطوير	developing	نامي
preserve	يحافظ على	preservation	صون / الحفاظ	preserved	محفوظ / مصان
restore	يستعيد / يرمم	restoration	ترميم	restored	تم ترميمه

Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym	Antonym
inspire	يلهم	motivate/ encourage/ stimulate	discourage/ depress/ hinder
gather	يجمع	collect/ assemble / bring together	separate / scatter / break up
honor	يكرم/ يشرف	respect / admire / celebrate	dishonor / shame / insult
awareness	الوعي	consciousness / knowledge	ignorance / carelessness
progress	تقدم	development / growth	decline / failure / decrease
sacrifice	تضحية/ يضحي	offering / giving / devotion	selfishness / greed
inspiration	الهام	motivation / encouragement	discouragement / boredom
pride	فخر	honor / dignity / respect	shame / dishonor / disgrace
preserve	يحفظ / يصون	protect / maintain / conserve	destroy / waste / ruin
restore	يستعيد/ يرمم	repair / rebuild / renew	destroy / damage / ruin
legacy	ارث	tradition / heritage / inheritance	loss / neglect / ignorance
harmony	تناغم	coordination / agreement	conflict / disagreement
carve	ينحت	cut / shape / sculpt	smooth / polish / mend
knowledge	معرفة	awareness / information	ignorance / illiteracy

Language Notes

Notice the Difference

host	يستضيف / مضيف	**guest**	ضيف
effect	تأثير	**affect**	يؤثر
motivate	يحفز(شخص للقيام بعمل)	**inspire**	يلهم (بفكرة أو شعور)
neighborhood	حى / منطقة	**neighbor**	جار
pride	فخر	**proud**	فخور
profession	مهنه(تحتاج تدريب)	**job**	وظيفة
export	يصدر	**import**	يستورد
historical	تاريخى(له علاقة بالتاريخ)	**historic**	تاريخى(اثرى / حدث مهم)
along	بطول	**a long**	طويل
store	يخزن	**restore**	يُرمم / يُعيد / يستعيد
go shopping	يذهب للتسوق	**do the shopping**	يقوم بالتسوق
be capable of + ing /n	قادر على	**be able to + inf.**	قادر على
role	دور	**rule**	قاعدة
culture	ثقافة	**cultural**	ثقافي

preserve, conserve, reserve & maintain

preserve	يحافظ على شيء كما هو	We preserve old manuscripts.
conserve	يحافظ على الموارد أو البيئة لتجنب الهدر	We should conserve water.
reserve	يحتفظ بشيء لاستخدامه لاحقًا	He reserved a seat.
maintain	يحافظ على شيء في حالة جيدة	We maintain the garden regularly.

educate, teach, instruct, & train

educate	يعلم	Schools educate children about life skills.
teach	يدريس	The teacher teaches math.
instruct	يعطي تعليمات	The coach instructed the players.
train	يتدريب	He trains new employees at the factory.

destination, location, site & position

destination	مكان الوصول (المكان المقصود)	This place will be our final destination.
location	موقع (ثابت / تصوير / على خريطة)	What is the exact location of the ship?
site	موقع أثرى / بناء / موقع على الإنترنت	Abu Simble is the site of two temples south of Aswan.
position	موقع متحرك / مكانة اجتماعية	What position do you play? He had a high position in society.

contact, communicate & connect

contact (v)	يتصل (تليفونياً ....)	I will contact you later.
contact with (n)	اتصال (تليفونياً ....)	She refuses to have any contact with her friend.
communicate with	يتواصل مع / ينقل	I communicate with my friends on the internet.
connect with	يتصل بـ	Can you connect me with a number in Paris?
connect to	يوصل / يربط (شيء / بسلك)	Can I connect my printer to your computer?

لاحظ ما يأتى بعد allow

فاعل + allow + مفعول + to + inf.

فاعل + allow + ing أو اسم → بدون مفعول

فاعل + v.be + allowed + to + inf. → في المجهول

★ My father doesn't allow my relatives to smoke in our flat.
★ My relatives aren't allowed to smoke in our flat.
★ My father doesn't allow smoking in our flat.

" Taking Pride in Our Beloved Egypt "

Reading

Before you start: ➲ Think and discuss in pairs:

1) Answer the following questions.

1. What do you think makes a country's people feel proud of their homeland?
2. What do you know about the Ancient Egyptian civilization?

2) Read the following article

Egypt is a land with a heart that has been beating for thousands of years. We are proud to call it our home. It is a place where the past and the present meet in **harmony**(1).

Egypt has always **played an important role** in the world. Our **ancestors** (2)built one of the greatest **civilizations** (3)in history. They gave the world knowledge(4) in writing, mathematics, and medicine. The **hieroglyphs carved** into **temple** (5)walls were not just beautiful art; they were a way to **record history**. The Library of Alexandria (6)once **gathered** knowledge from all over the world, making Egypt a center of learning.

١) تناغم
٢) اسلاف
٣) حضارات
٤) معرفة
٥) معبد
٦) مكتبة الاسكندرية
٧) تجارة
٨) بضائع
٩) ذهب
١٠) مصدر
١١) الهام
١٢) اثار
١٣) تقدم
١٤) تضحيات

Egypt was also a **crossroads** for trade(7). **Merchants** traveled along the Nile and across the deserts, carrying goods(8) such as gold(9), **spices**, **papyrus**, and **grain**. Our land was a **bridge** where people met and **exchanged ideas**, making Egypt a source(10) of **inspiration** (11)for many **civilizations**.

Today, Egypt continues to grow. Our cities rise with modern buildings, while our historical **monuments**(12) still **stand with pride**. We are building new roads, bridges, and **neighborhoods** that show the world our **determination** to progress(13). From the Pyramids of Giza to the Grand Egyptian Museum, we continue to **honor** our history while shaping our future.

We take **pride** in our country, not only for its beauty, but also because we understand the **sacrifices** (14)of our ancestors. We work hard to make it greater for **generations** to come.

Every citizen **has a role to play** – protecting our **heritage**, **contributing to** our economy, and sharing our culture with the world.

3) **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. **In what ways did Ancient Egyptians contribute to world knowledge?**
   - **a.** by building modern bridges and roads
   - **b.** by writing mathematics, art, and medicine
   - **c.** be trading oil and with other countries
   - **d.** by inventing computers and mobile phones
2. **According to the passage, the hieroglyphs were a ....**
   - **a.** type of trade product
   - **b.** form of beautiful decoration
   - **c.** a way to record history
   - **d.** type of building material
3. **What specific action is mentioned that demonstrates Egypt's focus on modern development?**
   - **a.** Protecting its heritage
   - **b.** Building new roads, bridges, and neighborhoods
   - **c.** Recording history with hieroglyphs
   - **d.** Traveling along the Nile
4. **The main idea of this passage is to show ....**
   - **a.** How Egypt's ancient civilization was superior to all others
   - **b.** The challenges Egypt faces with modern development
   - **c.** The proud link between Egypt's ancient past and its modern progress
   - **d.** The sacrifices made by ancient Egyptians
5. **Which of the following is the best summary of the passage?**
   - **a.** Ancient Egypt was a great civilization that built pyramids and temples.
   - **b.** Modern Egypt is a developing country that is building new roads and museums.
   - **c.** Egypt is continuing to build and progress today, a source of pride for its citizens.
   - **d.** Egyptians should be proud of their country's past for it was once a center of trade and learning.
6. **Based on the context, what does the word "determination" mean in this sentences:**

   "We are building new roads, bridges, and neighborhoods that show the world our determination to progress."
   - **a.** A lack of interest effort.
   - **b.** A strong will to succeed or achieve a goal.
   - **c.** A feeling of worry or anxiety.
   - **d.** An old and ancient way of doing things.
7. **Which of the following statements from the passage is an opinion rather than a fact?**
   - **a.** "The hieroglyphs carved into temple walls were not just beautiful art; they were a way to record history."
   - **b.** "The Library of Alexandria once gathered knowledge from all over the world."
   - **c.** "Egypt has always played an important role in the world."
   - **d.** "Merchants traveled along the Nile and across the deserts."

Listening

Host Welcome back to our story. Today, we're talking to Dr. Mona Hassan, an archaeologist(1) who recently led a team to restore(2) parts of the Philae Temple.

Dr. Mona, thank you for joining us.

Dr.Mona Thank you. It's a privilege(3) to be here.

Host Your work on Philae is a powerful symbol(4). Can you tell us why preserving our heritage is so important?.

Dr.Mona Of course. When we restore a historical site(5), we're not just fixing old stones; we're reconnecting with(6) our past. Our ancestors left us a rich legacy(7), from the pyramids to the temples of Upper Egypt. This heritage is the core(8) of our national identity(9). It reminds us of who we are, where we came from, and the greatness we are capable of. It's a source of immense(10) pride for every Egyptian.

Host It sounds like more than a job; it's a mission(11). What do you think the biggest challenge to preserving our heritage today?

Dr.Mona The challenges are many—from urban(12) development to climate change. But perhaps the biggest is the lack(13) of awareness among our youth. Many young people don't realize the value of these treasures. Our job is to inspire(14) them, to make them see that a thousand-year-old temple is not just a tourist attraction—it's a living part of our story. We need to encourage them to visit these sites, to learn the stories, and to feel the connection.

Host That's a great point. You're inspiring them to become the next generation of protectors(15). Thank you for your valuable work, Dr. Mona.

١) عالم اثار
٢) يرمم
٣) امتياز
٤) رمز
٥) موقع
٦) يعيد الاتصال ب
٧) ارث
٨) جوهر
٩) هوية قومية
١٠) هائل
١١) مهمة
١٢) حضرى
١٣) نقص
١٤) يلهم
١٥) حماة

انتظرو!!!!!
كتاب مراجعة العمالقة
للصف الاول الثانوي
العمالقة
سلسلة GIANTS العمالقة
Giants

Exercise on Key Vocabulary

1. **We should honor our .... for the sacrifices they made many years ago.**
a. ancestors **b.** progress **c.** grandchildren **d.** crossroads

2. **Having the chance to study at a good university is a ....**
a. duty **b.** sacrifice **c.** privilege **d.** punishment

3. **The museum is working to .... ancient artifacts to their original condition.**
a. honor **b.** restore **c.** require **d.** encourage

4. **Egyptian soldiers made the ultimate .... for their country against Israel.**
a. monument **b.** trade **c.** progress **d.** sacrifice

5. **The pyramids of Egypt are among the most famous .... in the world.**
a. determinations **b.** monuments **c.** crossroads **d.** materials

6. **The temples in Luxor are part of our cultural......... .**
a. neighborhood **b.** merchant **c.** legacy **d.** sacrifice

7. **The beautiful landscape .... the artist to paint a beautiful painting.**
a. damaged **b.** preserved **c.** inspired **d.** balanced

8. **We should .... our natural resources to protect the environment.**
a. flood **b.** export **c.** carve **d.** preserve

9. **The school decided to .... the top students with valuable awards.**
a. beat **b.** honor **c.** carve **d.** require

10. **With ...., she was able to overcome the challenges she faced.**
a. determination **b.** monument **c.** legacy **d.** attraction

11. **A strong sense of national .... is important for a country to feel united.**
a. bank **b.** neighborhood **c.** identity **d.** team

12. **Egyptians have a deep feeling of .... when they see their ancient monuments.**
a. pride **b.** attraction **c.** funding **d.** restoring

13. **Cairo is full of .... like mosques and old buildings.**
a. merchants **b.** monuments **c.** hieroglyphs **d.** stores

14. **He is a .... who sells spices in the market.**
a. merchant **b.** engineer **c.** architect **d.** speaker

15. **My grandfather told me a story from our family's ....**
a. candy **b.**mystery **c.** historical **d.** history

16. **My .... is very quiet and full of trees.**
a. neighbor **b.** neighborhood **c.** class **d.** house

17. **Cairo was once a .... between Africa and Asia.**
a. crossboards **b.** classmates **c.** crosswords **d.** crossroads

18. **The book provided great .... for anyone looking to make a change.**
a. neighbor **b.** inspiration **c.** monument **d.** neighborhood

19. **We plan to .... at the park for a picnic this weekend.**
a. preserve **b.** restore **c.** sacrifice **d.** gather

20. **The government is working on .... the old Islamic buildings in Cairo.**
a. restoring **b.** recycling **c.** damaging **d.** storing

21. **The achievements of ancient Egypt were a source of .... for many civilizations.**
a. confusion **b.** boredom **c.** fear **d.** inspiration

22. **Our country is making great .... in building new roads and bridges.**
a. boredom **b.** failure **c.** progress **d.** noise

23. **We continue to .... our history while shaping our future.**
a. ignore **b.** honor **c.** destroy **d.** forget

24. **We remember the .... of our ancestors who built our country.**
a. gifts **b.** games **c.** sacrifices **d.** trips

25. **A group of people living together with rules, culture, and cities is called ....**
a. cooperation **b.** action **c.** civilization **d.** homeland

Exercise On Main Vocabulary

26. **Egypt is a land with a heart that has beaten for thousands of years. The phrase "beaten for" suggests a ....**
a. continuous, ongoing life **b.** difficult struggle
c. temporary event **d.** brief history

27. **Schools play an important .... in society.** **SB**
a. reel **b.** rule **c.** roll **d.** role

28. **Egypt was also "a crossroads for trade". This idiom means it was a place where ....** **SB**
a. roads crossed **b.** merchants argued
c. chants orm ert g los **d.** people and goods from many places meet

29. **Ancient Egyptians wrote on .... to record their history.**
a. papyrus **b.** paper **c.** clothes **d.** water

30. **We should protect all .... places to preserve our heritage.**
a. ordinary **b.** new **c.** empty **d.** historical

31. **We take great .... in our country's history and achievements.**
a. pride **b.** fear **c.** laziness **d.** boredom

32. **Every citizen can contribute to the country's .... by working and paying taxes.**
a. culture **b.** economy **c.** history **d.** nature

33. **The stone was carefully .... into a shape of a lion.**
a. carved **b.** exported **c.** honored **d.** contributed

34. **As a/an .... , she creates great designs for modern buildings.**
a. nurse **b.** merchant **c.** neighbor **d.** architect

35. **The .... size of the elephant amazed the children.**
a. tiny **b.** little **c.** immense **d.** ordinary

36. **The orchestra played in perfect .... , creating a beautiful sound.**
a. harmony **b.** ignorance **c.** source **d.** duty

37. **Egypt .... a variety of goods, including oil and textiles to the African countries.**
a. imports **b.** exports **c.** buys **d.** pays

38. **The .... of parents is to guide and support their children.**
a. rule **b.** growth **c.** lack **d.** role

39. **The teacher will .... how to solve the math problem on the board.**
a. beat **b.** carve **c.** demonstrate **d.** affect

40. **The Nile is the main......... of water for Egypt.**
a. source **b.** funding **c.** effect **d.** material

41. **They offered to .... us at their house for the weekend.**
a. guest **b.** carve **c.** host **d.** beat

42. His .... in the face of danger was admired by everyone.
a. exchange b. funding c. source d. courage

Exercise 04 Expressions, Prepositions, Derivatives & Language Notes

43. You should .... more pride in your work. SB
a. drop b. give c. take d. swell

44. The team is .... of winning the championship if they stay focused.
a. disable b. enable c. able d. capable

45. The .... of climate change is visible in many parts of the world.
a. affect b. effect c. effective d. effectively

46. We are .... to call Egypt our home.
a. sad b. proud c. afraid d. bored

47. The boxer was strong enough to .... his opponent in the final round.
a. beat b. watch c. draw d. invite

48. My heart began to .... quickly when I heard the loud noise.
a. repeat b. heat c. meat d. beat

49. Teachers .... an important role in building the future of young people.
a. play b. give c. take d. discourage

50. The story is based .... real events in history.
a. at b. in c. on d. with

51. In the game, each child .... turns to answer the questions.
a. has b. makes c. bakes d. takes

52. Students go to school to .... knowledge for their future.
a. gather b. earn c. tell d. feel

53. The conference helps people to .... ideas about science.
a. sell b. buy c. change d. exchange

54. Museums are important for......... our heritage from damage.
a. electing b. protecting c. making d. running

55. It took me a while to fall .... after the long day.
a. sleep b. sleepy c. asleep d. sleeping

56. I need to .... the shopping for groceries before the weekend party.
a. go b. do c. have d. make

57. She .... a plan to improve her fitness over the next few months.
a. did b. took c. met d. made

58. The area around your home where people live close together is a ....
a. society b. game c. monument d. neighborhood

59. A .... is a place where two or more roads meet.
a. crossroads b. coss c. carriage d. world

60. A .... is a person who buys and sells goods is.
a. customer b. merchant c. client d. buyer

61. A .... is a special building or statue made to remember history.
a. monument b. landscape c. moment d. mark

62. He plans to contribute .... the environmental charity to reduce pollution.
a. with b. to c. of d. for

Choose the (Two) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given.

63. We must ensure that tourism develops in harmony with the environment. The synonym of the underlined word "harmony" is .... SB R.1

a. confusion b. conflict c. coordination d. separation e. agreement

64. He tried to impress me with his extensive knowledge of football. The antonym of the underlined word "knowledge" is .... SB R.1

a. wisdom b. ignorance c. learning d. facts e. illiteracy

65. There were three large figures carved out of the rock. The synonym of the underlined word "carved" is .... SB R.1

a. shaped b. cut c. wasted d. spent e. collected

66. Merchants used to travel along the Nile to sell goods in ancient times. The synonym of the underlined word "merchants" is ....

a. traders b. sellers c. builders d. guards e. teachers

67. Cairo was once a crossroads for trade between Africa and Asia. The synonym of the underlined word "crossroads" is ....

a. junction b. street c. neighborhood d. meeting point e. market

68. The old temple was carefully restored by the government. The synonym of the underlined word "restored" is ....

a. preserved b. ruined c. destroyed d. avenue e. maintained

69. With determination, anyone can .... a goal in life. SB

a. achieve b. reach c. pass d. make e. do

70. We must preserve our cultural monuments for future generations. The synonym of the underlined word "preserve" is ....

a. serve b. repair c. destroy d. save e. protect

71. Her story of success will inspire others. The synonym of the underlined word "inspire" is ....

a. motivate b. discourage c. encourage d. depress e. stop

72. He works hard to raise awareness about animal rights. The synonym of the underlined word "awareness" is ....

a. carelessness b. consciousness c. knowledge d. ignorance e. unawareness

73. It's important to preserve our natural resources. The antonym of "preserve" is ....

a. protect b. maintain c. inspire d. destroy e. ruin

74. He received an honor for his achievements. The synonym of the underlined word "honor" is ....

a. disgrace b. respect c. admire d. shame e. renew

75. The team worked hard to restore the old building. The antonym of "restore" is ....

a. damage b. destroy c. renew d. rebuild e. repair

76. The team took great pride in their victory. The antonym of the underlined word "pride" is ....

a. dishonor b. honor c. respect d. shame e. dignity

The Past Simple Tense
الماضى البسيط

Affirmation الإثبـــات

التصريف الثانى للفعل بإضافة (d / ed / ied) أو حفظ الأفعال الغير منتظمة.

- I **played** football yesterday.
- Rana **watched** the film at home.
- Aya **went** to the cinema.

Negation النفـــى

فاعل + { **didn't + inf** / **Never + → التصريف الثانى** }

- I **didn't play** football yesterday. (**never played**)
- Aya **didn't watch** the film at home.

Question السؤال

Did + فاعل + inf... ?

- **Did** you **play** football yesterday?

Passive المبنى للمجهول

مفعول + was / were + P.P.

- Football **was played** yesterday.
- The film **was watched** at home by Jana.

Key Words الكلمات الدالة

yesterday	أمس	I sent an e-mail to my friend **yesterday**.
ago	منذ	This house was built three years **ago**.
last	السابق / الماضى	Seif wrote his first novel **last** year.
in	فى (سنة سابقة)	Ahmed was born **in** 1986.
in the past	فى الماضى	**In the past**, the wind was used to sail ships.
once / one day	ذات مرة	**Once**, I had a terrible accident.
How long ago did	منذ متى	**How long ago** did you start studying English?
just now	توا	Sandy was on the internet **just now**.
the other day	منذ بضعة أيام/مؤخرا	I had a letter from Jana **the other day**.

Uses الاستخدامات

① يعبر عن حدث بدأ وانتهى فى الماضى.

★ He **visited** his uncle yesterday.

★ He **had** his lunch and **went** out.

② يستخدم لوصف أحداث تتبع بعضها.

★ He **did** his homework then **slept**.

③ يستخدم فى قصة.

★ Once, I **found** a wallet, then I **went** to the police.

④ مع أظرف التكرار للتعبير عن العادات فى الماضى:

(always - usually - often - never....)

- ★ He **drove** into town every day last week.
- ★ My father **always went** to work by train **when** he **was** young.

---

⑤ فى الحالة الثانية (**If**).

- ★ If she **studied** hard, she **would succeed**.

---

⑥ نستخدم **used to** للتعبير عن عادة أو موقف فى الماضى.

- ★ When I **was** young, I **used to get up** early.

---

⑦ يستخدم مع الروابط الزمنية مثل (**after** / **before** / **when** ....) بشرط أن يكون الزمن الآخر ماضى.

- ★ After he had studied, he **slept**.
- ★ Mai had had dinner before she **watched** TV.

---

⑧ يستخدم مع التعبيرات الآتية ويعتبر ماضى غير حقيقى.

- ★ I wish Toka **studied** well.
- ★ It's time she **studied** English.
- ★ I would rather she **studied** well.

1) I wish
2) It's time
3) I would rather
} ماضى بسيط + فاعل +

✍ **لاحظ:** يأتى بعد التعبيرات السابقة ماضى تام (**had + P.P.**) فى حالة وجود كلمة تدل على الماضى.

✍ **لاحظ:** يأتى بعد **would rather** مصدر / وبعد **(wish - It's time)+ to + inf.** فى حالة عدم وجود فاعل.

- ★ I'**d rather watch** a film.
- ★ I'**d rather** Ali **watched** a film.
- ★ I'**d rather** Ali **had watched** a film **yesterday**.

used to

اعتاد على (ماضى)	- used to + **inf**.
النفى	- didn't **use** to + **inf**. - never **used** to + **inf**.
السؤال	- Did you **use** to.....?

✍ نستخدم **used to + inf.** للتعبير عن عادة فى الماضى ولا تحدث الآن.

- ★ He **used to** sleep late.

✍ تستخدم **no longer** بدلا من **used to** ويأتى بعدها الفعل فى المضارع البسيط وتستخدم **any more / any longer** بدلاً من **used to** مع نفى الفعل فى المضارع البسيط وتأتى فى نهاية الجملة:

- ★ Mai **used to get** up early.

= Mai **no longer gets** up early.
= Mai **doesn't get up** early **anymore**.

✍ نستخدم **(am - is - are - get(s) - become(s)) used to + ing or n** للتعبير عن عادة فى المضارع.

- ★ Mai **is used to sleeping** early.

✍ نستخدم **(was - were - got - became) used to + ing or n** للتعبير عن عادة مألوفة فى الماضى.

- ★ Jana **was used to eating** healthy food.

✍ ولكن لاحظ أن **(is - are) used to** قد تأتى بمعنى (**يستخدم لكى**) ويليها **inf.** أو **for + ing**:

- ★ The wind **is used to sail** ships.
- ★ Cotton **is used for making** clothes.

✍ جملة التعقيب بعد **but now** تكون مضارع وعكس الجملة الأساسية ويستخدم **does - do** إذا كان فعل الجملة ليس **V. be** أما إذا كان **V. be** نستخدم **am - is - are**:

- ★ Ali **used to be** active but now he **isn't**.
- ★ Nada **used to get** up early but now she **doesn't**.

لاحظ الفرق بين

اعتاد أن → تعبر عن عادة كانت تحدث فى الماضى ولم تعد تحدث الآن **used to + inf.**
يعتاد علي → تعبر عن عادة تحدث فى الحاضر **(am - is - are - get - gets) used to + V + ing**

Exercise 04 Language Level 1

1. He .... late for work this morning. SB R. 1
a. is **b.** was **c.** were **d.** be

2. She .... her leg when she fell. SB R. 1
a. break **b.** breaks **c.** broke **d.** broken

3. They .... the game last Saturday. SB R. 1
a. win **b.** wins **c.** won **d.** winning

4. He .... to school when he was young as it wasn't far. جنوب الجيزة خدمات ٢٠٢٤
a. walk **b.** was walking **c.** walked **d.** walking

5. When I was on holiday, I .... tennis every day. العمرانية منازل ٢٠٢٤ جهينة ٢٠٢٤ نقادة منازل ٢٠٢٤ الشرقية ٢٠٢٣
a. play **b.** would play **c.** played **d.** have played

6. The ancient Egyptians always .... camels and horses to travel on. القوصية ٢٠٢٤
a. use **b.** uses **c.** were used **d.** used

7. Nora .... late when she was young. She no longer does now. المنتزة ٢٠٢٤
a. usually sleeps **b.** is used to sleeping **c.** used to sleep **d.** is usually sleeping

8. When my father was young, he always .... hard to earn enough money. قليوب ٢٠٢٤
a. works **b.** work **c.** worked **d.** was working

9. When I was young, I .... eat a lot of chocolates. سوهاج طما ٢٠٢٤
a. use to **b.** using to **c.** am used to **d.** used to

10. We always .... to school when we were young. وسط طنطا ٢٠٢٤
a. walk **b.** were walking **c.** are walking **d.** walked

11. My brother .... three books yesterday. القوص ٢٠٢٤
a. reads **b.** read **c.** has read **d.** rode

12. My broken PC .... yesterday. شرق طنطا ٢٠٢٤
a. is fixed **b.** fixed **c.** was fixed **d.** fixes

13. Sara's father died last week. He .... ill for more than a year. بسيون ٢٠٢٤
a. was **b.** is **c.** has been **d.** was being

14. He .... get up early in the past. دشنا ٢٠٢٤
a. used **b.** used to **c.** was used **d.** was using

15. My last e-mail .... to six of my friends. الحوامدية ٢٠٢٤
a. send **b.** was sending **c.** sent **d.** was sent

16. My son .... watch Egyptian movies, but now he does. العجمى ٢٠٢٣
a. used to **b.** didn't use to **c.** wasn't used to **d.** used to not

17. I .... lunch at home yesterday. بني سويف ٢٠٢٣
a. haven't **b.** used **c.** didn't have **d.** hadn't

18. The picture .... in the nineteenth century. المحلة ٢٠٢٤ طوخ ٢٠٢٤
a. paints **b.** was painting **c.** was painted **d.** painted

The thief .... and sent to prison. بنها ٢٠٢٣

a. was arrested **b.** arrested **c.** was arresting **d.** has arrested

19. My friend used to get high marks but now he .... المنيا ٢٠٢٣ الاقصر اسنا ٢٠٢٤ وسط طنطا ٢٠٢٤
a. don't **b.** doesn't **c.** didn't **d.** isn't

20. She used to be active, but now she .... السنطة ٢٠٢٤
a. wasn't **b.** isn't **c.** doesn't **d.** don't

21. She came to my house and .... coffee with me. الخانكة ٢٠٢٤
a. has **b.** had **c.** had had **d.** hadn't have

22. My grandfather .... of heart failure in his sixties. الدقهلية ٢٠٢٥

a. died **b.** had died **c.** dies **d.** was dying

23. My brother planted an orange tree in his garden .... أخميم ٢٠٢٥

a. next week **b.** a week ago **c.** a week **d.** every week

24. He .... a cup of milk every morning; it was his habit. بنها ٢٠٢٥

a. used to drink **b.** is used to drinking **c.** drink **d.** always drinks

Exercise 04 Language Level 2

25. Rawan used to be lazy, but now she .... الاسكندرية ٢٠٢٣

a. does no longer **b.** is no longer **c.** no longer does **d.** no longer is

26. When .... this house built? الغربية ٢٠٢٣

a. does **b.** did **c.** was **d.** will

27. My brother used to live in the Netherlands, but now he .... lives there. القليوبية ٢٠٢٤

a. any longer **b.** no longer **c.** anymore **d.** none

28. My father's car .... last week. قها ٢٠٢٤

a. was fixing **b.** fixed **c.** was fixed **d.** has fixed

29. I'd rather Mona .... her time. البحر الأحمر ٢٠٢٣

a. wasted **b.** not waste **c.** doesn't waste **d.** didn't waste

30. Unlike now, I .... drink black coffee. جنوب الجيزة خدمات ٢٠٢٤ دمياط ٢٠٢٤ الزيتون ٢٠٢٣

a. didn't use to **b.** wasn't used to **c.** use **d.** was used to

31. My grandparents .... a holiday last summer. العمرانية ٢٠٢٤

a. never had **b.** never has **c.** have never had **d.** didn't had

32. It's time Gamal .... football with us. بلقاس ٢٠٢٣

a. play **b.** played **c.** plays **d.** playing

33. Before joining the university, I .... living away from my family. سوهاج ٢٠٢٣

a. used **b.** didn't use to **c.** used to **d.** wasn't used to

34. My father always walked to work when he was young. This means that .... ملوي ٢٠٢٤

a. he is still walking **b.** he no longer walks **c.** he used to walk **d.** both "B and C"

35. My little sister used to be lazy when she was young. This means that .... قنا ٢٠٢٣

a. she is still lazy **b.** she isn't active **c.** she is no longer lazy **d.** she is crazy

36. I wish my father .... alive now. سوهاج ٢٠٢٤

a. is **b.** has been **c.** is being **d.** were

37. Ali would rather all his close friends .... up smoking soon as it is disastrous. القليوبية ٢٠٢٤

a. give **b.** giving **c.** gave **d.** had given

38. My uncle .... القوص ٢٠٢٤

a. anymore smokes **b.** does not smoke anymore

c. anymore smoking **d.** does not any smoke more

39. My friend didn't use to sleep early. This means .... سوهاج ٢٠٢٤

a. he never sleeps now **b.** he sleeps early now

c. he isn't sleeping now **d.** he doesn't sleep early now

40. He .... to sit down until he had apologised. طنطا ٢٠٢٢ البحيرة ٢٠٢٣

a. didn't allow **b.** don't allow **c.** wasn't allowed **d.** was allowed

41. A: Does he smoke? B: No, but he .... سنورس ٢٠٢٣

a. is used to **b.** used to do **c.** is used to doing **d.** used to be

42. I'd rather you .... out alone late at night. LM

a. not going **b.** didn't go **c.** not to go **d.** haven't gone

43. **Peter no longer .... as he used to.** LM

a. has smoked **b.** smoking **c.** smoked **d.** smokes

44. **He felt exhausted as he has never been used to .... such hard work.** دمياط ٢٠٢٤

a. doing **b.** did **c.** do **d.** done

45. **Ahmed cut his hand and .... to hospital for treatment.**

a. goes **b.** went **c.** has gone **d.** have gone

46. **Did you go to the party yesterday or .... you busy?** اهناسيا ٢٠٢٥

a. do **b.** did **c.** was **d.** were

47. **Have you watched this film yet? – Yes, I .... it just now.** سوهاج ٢٠٢٥

a. have **b.** have watched **c.** watched **d.** have had

48. **I don't speak Spanish. I wish I ....** شبين القناطر ٢٠٢٥

a. don't **b.** didn't **c.** do **d.** did

49. **Fortunately, the news .... as bad as we had expected.** القنايات ٢٠٢٥

a. wasn't **b.** weren't **c.** hasn't been **d.** haven't been

50. **He used to be naughty, but now he ....** القنايات ٢٠٢٥

a. doesn't **b.** isn't **c.** didn't **d.** is

51. **How long ago .... your last visit to Luxor?** قوسنا ٢٠٢٥

a. did **b.** has **c.** was **d.** had

Exercise 04 Language Level 3

52. **One of our windows .... last night.**

a. were broken **b.** is broke **c.** broken **d.** was broken

53. **A: Did you go to yesterday's party? B: No, I ....** بني مزار ٢٠٢٤

a. didn't invite **b.** wasn't invited **c.** invited **d.** hadn't invited

54. **Were you studying English alone? - No, I .... good at it.** أسيوط أبنوب ٢٠٢٤

a. wasn't being **b.** didn't be **c.** weren't **d.** wasn't

55. **Mona .... at school yesterday as she was absent.** غرب شبرا الخيمة ٢٠٢٤

a. didn't see **b.** doesn't see **c.** wasn't seen **d.** isn't seen

56. **She .... the money she needed.** المنوفية ٢٠٢٣

a. wasn't given **b.** didn't give **c.** gave **d.** gives

57. **As a boy, Mr Mohammed .... for his good behaviour.** اسوان ٢٠٢٣

a. used to be praised **b.** was praising **c.** used to praise **d.** praised

58. **I wish you .... your car here. It's illegal.** الاسكندرية ٢٠٢٤

a. had parked **b.** parked **c.** didn't park **d.** haven't parked

59. **Rami used to go to the school library and .... the books he needed.** LM

a. borrows **b.** borrow **c.** borrowed **d.** will borrow

60. **Has the road been paved? - Yes, it .... last week.** LM

a. paved **b.** was paved **c.** has paved **d.** has been paved

61. **You brother .... for Cairo just now.** دمياط ٢٠٢٤

a. has left **b.** had left **c.** left **d.** is leaving

62. **My watch .... down last week.**

a. broke **b.** broken **c.** was broken **d.** had broken

63. **He .... as a shop assistant for ten years only. Now, he is a worker in a factory.** LM

a. has worked **b.** had worked **c.** worked **d.** works

64. **I wish .... a new car.**

a. buy **b.** to buy **c.** buying **d.** bought

65. **Who .... ?** بني سويف ٢٠٢٣
a. were the complaints made by? **b.** did you make the complaints?
c. were you made the complaints? **d.** was the complaint made?

66. **Father is used to buying tasty sweets for us. This sentence means:** أبو حماد ٢٠٢٣
a. This no longer happens. **b.** This never happened.
c. This is a present habit. **d.** This was a past habit.

67. **Which of the following is correctly structured?** نقادة ٢٠٢٥
a. Was Ali being very tired yesterday? **b.** Did Ali be very tired yesterday?
c. Ali was very tired yesterday? **d.** Was Ali very tired yesterday?

68. **I didn't use to live alone , that means ....** الواسطى ٢٠٢٥
a. I live alone. **b.** I lived alone.
c. I no longer live alone. **d.** I used to live alone

69. **Lutfy .... for exceeding the limit speed.** قوسنا ٢٠٢٥
a. fined **b.** has fined **c.** have been fined **d.** was fined

70. **As a student, our teacher .... for his good manners.** طامية ٢٠٢٥
a. used to praise **b.** was praising **c.** praised **d.** used to be praised

2) Rewrite the sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning.

1. **She played the piano when she was a child.** (used to) SB R. 1
2. **He didn't play tennis at all.** (never) SB R. 1
3. **He cleaned his room yesterday.** (His room)
4. **I didn't buy a new phone last month.** (A new phone)
5. **I saw her in the park yesterday.** (seen)
6. **Did the students answer the questions?** (Were)
7. **He went to school on foot when he was young.** (go)
8. **There wasn't a hospital in this village.** (didn't use)
9. **I had long hair when I was at school.** (used to)
10. **We first printed our book in 2019.** (ago)
11. **They used to get up early.** (no longer)
12. **They used to get up early.** (any longer)
13. **She no longer eats pasta.** (used to)

Giants
سلسلة GIANTS العمالقة
انتظروا!!!!!!
كتاب مراجعة العمالقة
للصف الاول الثانوي
العمالقة

Unit 1

Egypt's Heritage

Lessons
3 Now Starts Long Ago
4 Where Pride Begins

Key Vocabulary

inherit (v)	يرث	admire (v)	يعجب بـ	wisdom (n)	حكمة
communication (n)	تواصل	admiration (n)	اعجاب	magnificent (adj)	رائع
vision (n)	رؤية	value (n/v)	قيمة/ يقيم	leading (adj)	رائد / بارز
roots (n)	جذور	advance (n/v)	تقدم/ يتقدم	embrace (v)	يحتضن / يتقبل
strength (n)	قوة	achievement (n)	انجاز	construction (n/v)	بناء
mighty (adj)	قوى / ضخم	convenient (adj)	ملائم / مناسب	responsibility (n)	مسئولية

Main Vocabulary

develop (v)	يتطور	expression (n)	تعبير	amaze (v)	يدهش/ يذهل
access (n/v)	وصول / يصل الى	poet (n)	شاعر	celebrate (v)	يحتفل
knowledge (n)	معرفة	thinker (n)	مفكر	greatness (n)	عظمة
visualize (v)	يتصور / يتخيل	record (n/v)	تسجيل/ رقم قياسى/ يسجل	hook (n)	خطاف/ جملة جاذبة
advice (n)	نصيحة	united (adj)	متحد / موحد	thesis (n)	أطروحة/ فكرة رئيسية
wise (adj)	حكيم	treasure (n/v)	كنز / يقدر	beliefs (n)	معتقدات
valuable (adj)	قيم / ذو قيمة	reflect (v) on	يتأمل / يفكر	rephrase (v)	يعيد صياغة
pleasure (n)	سعادة	shared (adj)	مشترك	evidence (n)	دليل
figure (n)	شكل/ شخصية/ رقم	influence (n/v)	تأثير / يؤثر	creativity (n)	إبداع
non-fiction (n)	واقعى / غير خيالى	society (n)	مجتمع	display (n/v)	عرض/ يعرض
entire (adj)	كلى/ كامل	imagine (v)	يتخيل	traditions (n)	تقاليد
respect (n/v)	احترام/يحترم	survival (n)	بقاء/ نجاة	funding (n)	تمويل
scene (n)	مشهد	impressive (adj)	مبهر	cultural (adj)	ثقافى
motivate (v)	يحفز / يشجع	insight (n)	فهم / بصيرة	background (n)	خلفية
benefit (n/v)	فائدة/ يستفيد	lead (v)	يقود / يحيا	route (n)	مسار/ طريق
improve (v)	يحسن / يتحسن	leader (n)	قائد	habit (n)	عادة

Collocations

gain admiration	يكتسب بلاعجاب	make progress	يحقق تقدم
develop mathematics	يطور الرياضيات	record knowledge	يسجل المعرفة
visualize scene	يتخيل المشهد	give advice	يعطى نصيحة
honor the past	يكرم الماضى	face challenge	يواجه تحدى
do revision	يقوم بالمراجعة	prove greatness	يثبت عظمته
build our tomorrow	يبنى الغد	compare pride to	يشبه الفخر بـ

Expressions & Prepositions

work with vision	يعمل وفقا لرؤية	take part in	يشارك فى
a center for	مركز لـ	pass down	يورث

call to action	دعوة للعمل	examples of	امثلة على
a gift to the world	هدية للعالم	pretend to	يتظاهر بـ
think about	يفكر فى	pick up	يلتقط / يوصل
meeting point	نقطه تلاقى	a home for	موطن لـ
give respect and admiration	يعطي احترام واجاء	stay united	يبق متحدين
key to	مفتاح لـ	make us proud	يجعلنا فخورين
in conclusion	في الخاتمة	connect .... to	يوصل .... بـ

Definitions

advance	يتقدم	▸ to move forward or make progress in something
leading	رائد / بارز	▸ most important or successful in a particular field
root	جذر / اصل	▸ the part of a plant that grows under the ground / the origin of something or someone
achievement	انجاز	▸ something successfully completed
inherit	يرث	▸ to receive money or property from someone after they die
value	قيمة	▸ the worth or usefulness of something the beliefs that are important to a person or group
embrace	يتقبل	▸ to accept or support something willingly, such as an idea, belief, or change

Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym	Antonym
achievement	انجاز	success / accomplishment	failure / defeat / loss
achieve	يحقق	accomplish / reach /attain	fail / give up / abandon
respect	يحترم	honor / esteem / regard	disrespect / insult / dishonor
roots	جذور	basis / foundation / origin	top / surface / ending
wisdom	حكمة	knowledge / insight / intelligence	foolishness / ignorance / stupidity
influence	تأثير	impact / effect / power	weakness / helplessness
values	قيم	principles / standards / morals	corruption / dishonesty
advance	يتقدم	progress / develop / improve	decline / retreat / decrease
leading	بارز / رائد	dominant / main / outstanding	insignificant / minor /ordinary
magnificent	رائع	splendid / wonderful / glorious	ordinary / poor / ugly
mighty	عظيم / قوي	powerful / strong / great	weak / small / powerless

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
create	يبدع / يبتكر	creativity	ابداع	creative	مبدع / خلاق
achieve	يحقق	achievementt	انجاز	achievable	قابل للتحقيق
imagine	يتخيل	imagination	خيال	imaginary	خيالى
admire	يعجب	admiration	اعجاب	admirable	جدير بالإعجاب / رائع

Language Notes

Notice the Difference

heritage	تراث	⇔	**inheritance**	ميراث
wisdom	حكمة	⇔	**wise**	حكيم
affect	يؤثر	⇔	**effect**	تأثير
teach	يعلم	⇔	**learn**	يتعلم
admire	يعجب	⇔	**respect**	يحترم
compare to	يشبه	⇔	**compare with**	يقارن
take part	يشارك	⇔	**take place**	يحدث
human	بشر	⇔	**humane**	عطوف
rise	يرتفع (الأسعار/الشمس)	⇔	**raise**	يرفع / يربى / يجمع
believe	يعتقد	⇔	**belief**	اعتقاد / ايمان/ عقيدة
desert	صحراء	⇔	**dessert**	تحلية
advice	نصيحة	⇔	**advise**	ينصح
vision	رؤية	⇔	**version**	نسخة
phrase	جملة	⇔	**rephrase**	يعيد صياغة
impressive	مبهر	⇔	**impressed**	منبهر

scene & scenery

scene	مشهد في فيلم او مسرحية	▶ The scene at the play was lively.
scene	مسرح جريمة / مكان حدث	▶ Evidence was collected from the crime scene.
scenery	منظر طبيعي	▶ The scenery was breathtaking in the mountains.

achieve , achievement & achievable

achieve	يحقق	▶ She worked hard to achieve her goals.
achievement	انجاز	▶ Winning the award was a great achievement.
achievable	يمكن تحقيقه	▶ Success is achievable with hard work.

inherit , inheritance & heritage

inherit	يرث	▶ They will inherit the family business.
inheritance	ميراث	▶ He received a large inheritance from his aunt.
hertitage	تراث	▶ Egypt celebrates its cultural heritage every year

poet / poem & poetry

poet	شاعر	▶ Poets express their feelings through words.
poem	قصيدة	▶ The poem she wrote touched everyone's heart.
poetry	شعر	▶ He studied poetry to better understand emotions.

Reading

Where Pride Begins

Before you start:

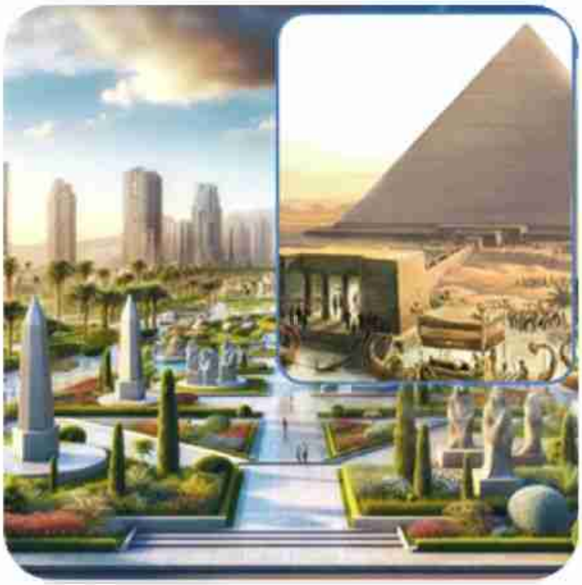
1) Ask and answer the following questions:

1. Mention some names of ancient Egyptian Queens?
2. Why do you think it's important for a country to remember its history and heritage?

2) Read the following passage.

Pride(1) is not something that appears in a single day. It grows slowly, like a tree, from strong roots of history, culture, and shared(2) values. For Egyptians, these roots run deep and continue to give us strength. Our country is one of the oldest and greatest civilizations(3) in the world, and its story continues to inspire not only Egyptians, but people everywhere. True pride is built through connection to the past and responsibility(4) for the future.

In ancient times, Egypt was a leader in human progress and knowledge. Our ancestors built the mighty(5) pyramids and the magnificent(6) temples along the Nile – monuments that still amaze(7) the world today. They developed writing systems, advanced mathematics, and important medical knowledge. These achievements were not only for Egypt; they became gifts(8) to the entire world, proving the greatness and creativity of our people. Their heritage shows that Egyptians have always worked with vision and determination(9). Egypt was also a center for culture and learning. Great authors(10), poets, and thinkers shared their ideas and recorded their knowledge in writing. Their works reflected the values, traditions, and beliefs of the Egyptian society and influenced people for generations. Through stories, wisdom(11) and art, Egypt became a place where culture was preserved and celebrated. This role, as a home for creativity and expression, gave our nation respect and admiration(12) from other civilizations.



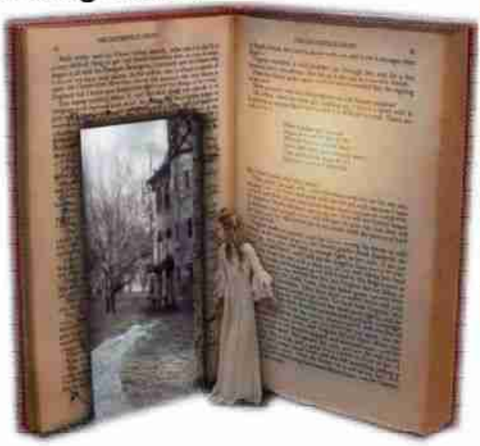
١) الفخر
٢) مشترك
٣) حضارة
٤) مسئولية
٥) قوى
٦) رائع
٧) يذهل
٨) هدايا
٩) اصرار
١٠) مؤلفين
١١) حكمة
١٢) اعجاب
١٣) متحد

True pride begins when we understand our history, protect our culture, and work hard for the future. It is not only about what we have inherited, but also about what we create for the generations to come. When we honor our past, stay united(13), and build our tomorrow with determination, we stand exactly where pride begins.

On Lesson 5 SB page 23

Reading is one of the most valuable(1) habits a person can develop. It gives us knowledge, helps us relax, and even improves our communication(2) skills. People who read regularly often find it easier to express themselves and understand others.

First, reading improves our vocabulary and grammar. When we read books, magazines, or even articles online, we see new words in context . This helps us understand their meanings and how to use them correctly Over time(3), this can make our speaking and writing skills much stronger. Another important benefit(4) is that reading develops our thinking skills .



Stories make us imagine(5) and visualize(6) scenes(7) in our minds. Non-fiction(8) books teach us facts and ideas we may not learn elsewhere Both types of reading help us become more creative(9) and better at solving problems.

In conclusion(10), reading is not just a way to spend time; it is a tool that shapes our minds, improves our language, and connects us to(11) the world.

Whether for study or pleasure, picking up(12) a book can open new doors. Everyone should try to make reading a regular habit(13) in their life.

١) قيم
٢) تواصل
٣) بمرور الوقت
٤) فائدة
٥) يتخيل
٦) يتصور
٧) مشهد
٨) واقعي
٩) مبدع
١٠) ختاما
١١) يصلنا ب
١٢) يلتقط
١٣) عادة

Listening

Long ago, people lived in ways very different from today. They depended mainly on the land, growing crops(1), and raising animals for survival(2). Families lived close to nature, often using simple tools(3) and working together to produce what they needed. Communities were small and traditions were passed down through stories, songs, and daily practices(4). As time moved forward, inventions(5) began to change human life. The discovery(6) of writing allowed people to record knowledge and history. The use of metal(7) tools made farming and building easier. Great civilizations rose, building cities, temples, and trade routes(8) that connected distant lands.

While our ancestors were struggling hard to survive, their minds never stopped thinking till progress happened step by step. Now, life has become much faster and more complex(9). Technology allows us to communicate across the world in seconds, travel long distances in hours, and access(10) information with a single click. Yet, the wisdom and lessons from long ago still shape who we are.

By remembering the past and learning from it, we can build a future that respects history while embracing(11) progress.

١) محصول
٢) بقاء/ نجاة
٣) أدوات
٤) ممارسات
٥) اختراعات
٦) اكتشاف
٧) معدن
٨) مسار
٩) معقد
١٠) يصل الى
١١) يحتضن

Exercise on Key Vocabulary

1. Our ancestors'......... in writing and medicine were gifts to the world. sb
   a. conclusions b. evidences c. achievements d. contexts
2. Modern museums protect our cultural .... sb
   a. valuable b. heritage c. advance d. admiration
3. After her father's death, she was surprised to .... a large sum of money.
   a. honor b. inherit c. inspire d. respect
4. The fireworks display on New Year's Eve was a .... show of colors and lights.
   a. magnificent b. achievement c. admiration d. pleasure
5. It's important to teach children the .... of honesty and kindness at a young age.
   a. merchants b. statements c. identities d. values
6. Parents have a great .... to teach their children the values of our society.
   a. inheritance b. responsibility c. fiction d. communication
7. He learned the .... of being kind to others.
   a. root b. fiction c. value d. material
8. Understanding your .... can help you better appreciate your heritage.
   a. decorations b. roots c. merchants d. admirations
9. They're working hard to make .... on the new project..
   a. leading b. background c. tradition d. progress
10. She is the .... expert in her field of research.
    a. leading b. leader c. leadership d. lead
11. He showed his .... when he lifted the heavy box.
    a. weakness b. civilization c. monument d. strength
12. The students made great progress and .... to the next grade.
    a. declined b. reduced c. located d. advanced
13. the tourists .... the beautiful architecture of the old temple.
    a. hated b. admired c. disliked d. advanced
14. She has a clear .... of where she wants to be in five years.
    a. site b. version c. vision d. sight
15. The elders of the community are known for their .... and knowledge.
    a. root b. merchant c. wisdom d. advance
16. .... comes from consistently working hard and never giving up.
    a. Greatness b. Monument c. Conclusion d. Fiction
17. Today we use .... technology like computers and satellites to make life easier and faster.
    a. ancient b. advanced c. cultural d. responsibility
18. She takes pride in her......... , which is a result of hard work and dedication.
    a. monument b. admiration c. achievement d. responsibility
19. The Nile is a........river that flowed through Egypt and helped to build our civilization.
    a. weak b. value c. mighty d. vision
20. Learning about our .... helps us understand our roots.
    a. heritage b. conclusion c. impressive d. statement
21. She received .... for her excellent performance at work.
    a. admiration b. preservation c. crossroad d. civilization

Exercise on Main Vocabulary

22. Families .... birthdays with cakes and gifts.
a. celebrate b. exchange c. require d. gather

23. It's .... to shop online from home if you want to save time.
a. honor b. determined c. shared d. convenient

24. The museum's .... collection includes ancient jewelry.
a. background b. treasure c. preservation d. knowledge

25. I had to......... my question to make it easier to understand.
a. phrase b. inherit c. root d. rephrase

26. Social media has a huge .... on young people today.
a. influence b. affect c. valuable d. heritage

27. .... books provide real-life information on various topics.
a. Fiction b. Non-fiction c. Imaginary d. Scene

28. It's important to......... others' opinions, even if you disagree.
a. rephrase b. disrespect c. ignore d. respect

29. A good leader knows how to......... the team to do their best.
a. **beat** b. motivate c. host d. record

30. Our teacher is a very......... man who gives good advice.
a. unaware b. wise c. shared d. immense

31. She .... herself winning the race and felt more confident.
a. visualized b. ignored c. thought d. restored

32. Practising every day helped him .... at playing the guitar.
a. decline b. access c. improve d. value

33. Learning a second language can .... your career opportunities.
a. require b. respect c. admire d. benefit

34. The movie opened with a dramatic......... in the forest.
a. sight b. scene c. figure d. vision

35. The mirror......... everything in front of it.
a. reflects b. visualizes c. imagines d. expresses

36. The story had a great .... that made everyone want to read more.
a. determination b. knowledge c. advance d. hook

37. Her talent to solve difficult puzzles always .... me.
a. amazes b. ignores c. rephrases d. imagines

38. The art gallery......... beautiful paintings by local artists.
a. benefited b. displayed c. imagined d. advised

39. She worked hard to complete her......... on climate change.
a. treasure b. value c. heritage d. thesis

40. Some......... have written timeless poems about love and life.
a. poets b. poems c. merchants d. articles

41. His .... into the problem helped the team find a solution quickly.
a. sight b. site c. insight d. heritage

42. Tourists admire the architecture of the ancient temple, it is truly ....
a. impressive b. impressed c. impression d. impressively

43. We have .... interests, which makes it easy to spend time together.
a. different b. shared c. capable d. figure

Exercise 04 Expressions, Prepositions, Derivatives & Language Notes

44. The teacher .... advice to the students on how to improve their essays.
a. took **b.** did **c.** gave **d.** made

45. He stayed up late to .... revision for his final exams.
a. do **b.** make **c.** take **d.** express

46. She took .... in the volunteer project to clean up the local park.
a. on **b.** part **c.** place **d.** over

47. Ancient knowledge are passed .... from generation to generation.
a. in **b.** off **c.** over **d.** down

48. This museum is home .... a rich collection of ancient artifacts.
a. for **b.** in **c.** about **d.** on

49. .... conclusion, it's clear that education is essential for growth.
a. At **b.** On **c.** For **d.** In

50. They......... admiration for their teamwork and success in the competition.
a. won **b.** gained **c.** did **d.** took

51. I need to pick .... some books from the library for my research.
a. in **b.** off **c.** with **d.** up

52. Take a moment to think .... what you want to achieve in life.
a. in **b.** for **c.** about **d.** on

53. Cleopatra is a famous .... figure known for her leadership in Egypt.
a. historian **b.** historical **c.** history **d.** historically

54. The country is .... progress in solving environmental issues.
a. taking **b.** doing **c.** having **d.** making

Choose the (Two) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given.

55. We all .... what our teachers and parents do. زفتي ٢٠٢٥
a. ignore **b.** appreciate **c.** value **d.** disrespect **e.** neglect

56. There are a lot of students taking part in the race. The antonym of "take part" is ....
a. divide **b.** attack **c.** share **d.** avoid **e.** abandon

57. I wanted to improve my French. The synonyms of the word "improve" are .... شبين ٢٠٢٥
a. decline **b.** describe **c.** enhance **d.** dig **e.** develop

58. Scientists are trying to eliminate the............of burning oil on the environment. الاسكندرية ٢٠٢٥
a. impact **b.** safety **c.** respect **d.** development **e.** influence

59. Eating a lot of sweets is a major cause of tooth decay. The synonym of "major" are ....
a. leading **b.** minor **c.** secondary **d.** important **e.** chef

60. She felt proud of her achievement. The synonyms of "achievement" are ....
a. success **b.** failure **c.** defeat **d.** accomplishment **e.** loss

61. We must work together to achieve success. The antonym of "achieve" is ....
a. accomplish **b.** fail **c.** give up **d.** succeed **e.** improve

62. He always respects his elders.The synonyms of the word "respect" are ....
a. insult **b.** dishonor **c.** honor **d.** disrespect **e.** regard

63. Wisdom often comes with age and life experiences. The synonym "wisdom" is ....
a. knowledge **b.** insight **c.** ignorance **d.** stupidity **e.** pride

64. Technology continues to advance rapidly. The antonym of "advance" is ....
a. progress **b.** develop **c.** decline **d.** decrease **e.** protect

65. The mighty lion roared in the jungle. The antonym of "mighty" is ....
a. magnificent **b.** powerless **c.** powerful **d.** weak **e.** great

الماضى المستمر Past Continuous

Affirmation الإثبــــات

الفاعل + was / were + (v + ing)

- They **were watching** TV yesterday evening.
- Jana **was preparing** dinner.

Negation النفـــــى

الفاعل + wasn't / weren't + (v + ing)

- They **weren't watching** TV yesterday evening.
- Jana **wasn't preparing** dinner.

Question الســـؤال

was / were + الفاعل + (v + ing)... ?

- **Was** Jana **cooking** dinner?

✓ Yes, she **was**.   ✗ No, she **wasn't**.

Passive المبنى للمجهول

مفعول + was / were + being + P.P.

- TV **was being watched** yesterday evening.
- Dinner **was being prepared** by Jana.

Key Words الكلمات الدالة

while	بينما	**While** he was leaving, the phone rang. **While** playing football, I fell. فى حالة عدم وجود فاعل.
as		**As** I was watching TV, my father came.
just as		**Just as** she was studying, the light went off.
when	عندما	**When** the phone rang, he was leaving.
during	خلال / أثناء	**During** the party, I received many presents.
on	عندما	**On** hearing the news, I was having dinner.
مدة زمنية **yesterday**	أمس	Jana was studying **at seven yesterday**.

Uses الاستخدامات

① التعبير عن حدث كان مستمرا فى وقت معين فى الماضى.

★ He **was playing** all morning yesterday.

② التعبير عن حدث كان مستمرا فى الماضى عندما وقع حدث آخر.

★ While I **was having** lunch, the phone **rang**.

③ التعبير عن حدثين كانا مستمرين فى نفس الوقت فى الماضى.

★ While she **was preparing** dinner, he **was watching** TV.

بينما While

حدث قطع حدث

1) (was / were) + ing , V + ed / تصريف ٢ أو شاذ ٢

▸ While I **was working** in the garden, I **hurt** my back.

حدثان فى نفس الوقت

2) (was / were) + ing , (was / were) + ing

▸ While I **was studying** English, my mother **was cooking**.

إذا كان الفعل الاساسي v.be نستخدم ماضى بسيط بعد while

3) فاعل (was / were) (صفة/مكان) , V + ed / تصريف ٢ أو شاذ

▸ While I **was** in Banha, I **met** an old friend of mine.

عدم وجود فاعل (بشرط أن يكون الفاعل واحـد في الجملتين)

4) V + ing , V + ed / تصريف ٢ أو شاذ

▸ While **painting** my house, I **fell** off the ladder.

يمكن أن ياتي حرف جر بعد while

5) While + حرف جر , V + ed / تصريف ٢ أو شاذ

▸ **While in** the office, he **received** a call from his wife.

While = as = just as ▸ Just as I **was walking** home, I **saw** an accident.

When → ماضى بسيط past simple → ماضى مستمر past continuous

ماضى مستمر past continuous ← **When** → ماضى بسيط past simple

During → اسم noun → ماضى بسيط past simple

On → عدم وجود فاعل V + ing → ماضى بسيط past simple

Important Notes

- يمكن أن يكون الحدثين مع while - when فى الماضى المستمر:

★ **While** Jana **was watching** TV, Toka **was studying** English. حدثان مستمران

★ **When** I **was** first **interviewing** people, I **was asking** too many questions.

- يمكن استخدام On بدلاً من when ويأتى بعدها V + ing: (لتوضيح توالى الأحداث)

★ **On arriving**, he **found** the light on.

- يمكن استخدام during بدلاً من while ويأتى بعدها noun:

★ **During the game**, he **got** hurt.

- لا نستخدم الماضى المستمر مع أفعال الحالة (التملك - الإدراك - الشعور - ....) الا اذا استخدمت بمعني اخر.

like / love / hear / see / smell / ....

★ I tried the cake to see how it **tasted**. (**was tasting** ×)

- لا نستخدم الماضى المستمر لوصف أحداث متكررة فى الماضى.

★ When I was a child, I **walked** to school. (**was walking** ×)

- يمكن أن نستخدم بعد when (v + ing) فى المعلوم أو(P.P) في المجهول.

★ When **eating** fast food, I felt ill.

★ When **told** about my new job, I was very pleased.

Exercise on Language Level 1

1. **They .... football when it started to rain.** SB R. 1
a. play **b.** are playing **c.** played **d.** were playing

2. **They .... a movie when the lights went out.** SB R. 1
a. watch **b.** were watching **c.** watched **d.** are watching

3. **He .... his homework at 8 PM last night.** SB R. 1
a. do **b.** did **c.** was doing **d.** does

4. **I .... for the bus when it began to snow.** SB R. 1
a. wait **b.** was waiting **c.** waited **d.** am waiting

5. **They .... the car when it started to rain.** SB R. 1
a. were washing **b.** wash **c.** washed **d.** are washing

6. **Joury was tidying her room while Adam .... TV.** SB
a. watching **b.** watches **c.** watched **d.** was watching

7. **Just as Rodayna was going home, she .... her friends.** SB
a. were meeting **b.** was meeting **c.** met **d.** meets

8. **When Ahmed .... home, mother was serving lunch.** SB
a. was arriving **b.** arrived **c.** arrives **d.** arriving

9. **While .... a movie, I fell asleep.** SB
a. were meeting **b.** was meeting **c.** watched **d.** watching

10. **While we .... in the park, our children were playing around us.** SB
a. were **b.** were being **c.** being **d.** are

11. **.......... the match, the player fell and broke his leg.** SB
a. When **b.** While **c.** During **d.** On

12. **Mr. Ramy was calling his wife when he .... his mobile.** SB
a. droping **b.** dropped **c.** was droping **d.** drops

13. **When I returned home, mother .... lunch.** ملوي ٢٠٢٤
a. was prepared **b.** was preparing **c.** prepare **d.** preparing

14. **Yesterday evening, I .... for my English test when all the lights went out.** بني مزار ٢٠٢٤
a. revising **b.** was revised **c.** was revising **d.** had revised

15. **.......... the flight to London, I was reading an interesting novel.** قها ٢٠٢٤
a. When **b.** While **c.** During **d.** As

16. **While he was playing football, he .... his leg.** سوهاج اخميم ٢٠٢٤
a. breaking **b.** broke **c.** breaks **d.** was broken

17. **What .... yesterday morning when I phoned you?** الخانكة ٢٠٢٤ شرق طنطا ٢٠٢٤
a. have you done **b.** did you do **c.** are you doing **d.** were you doing

18. **While I .... for the train on the station, I met one of my old friends.** سوهاج طما ٢٠٢٤
a. waited **b.** wait **c.** was waiting **d.** waiting

19. **While my mother was preparing lunch, I .... my homework.** جنوب الجيزة ٢٠٢٤ قنا ٢٠٢٤
a. was doing **b.** done **c.** have done **d.** doing

20. **All day yesterday, my mother .... the flat and so she was so tired.** القليوبية ٢٠٢٤
a. had cleaned **b.** was cleaning **c.** is cleaning **d.** has cleaned

21. **.......... seeing the snake, she screamed and ran away.** القليوبية ٢٠٢٤
a. During **b.** While **c.** On **d.** Before

22. **.......... I was talking on the phone, the doorbell rang.** دمياط ٢٠٢٤
a. On **b.** While **c.** After **d.** Before

23. **Just as Kareem .... football, he met an old friend.** المنيا ٢٠٢٤
a. was playing **b.** playing **c.** were playing **d.** play

24. **What .... at 8 p.m. yesterday?** وسط اسكندرية ٢٠٢٤
a. were you doing **b.** had you done **c.** are you doing **d.** have you done

25. **My mother was preparing lunch while my sister .... the laundry.** بنها ٢٠٢٤ سوهاج ٢٠٢٤
a. was done **b.** did **c.** is doing **d.** was doing

26. **Just as I .... to school, I saw a policeman helping an old woman cross the street.** LM
a. was going **b.** have gone **c.** going **d.** am going

27. **When Rana came home, her sister .... the dishes.** المنتزة ٢٠٢٤
a. was washed **b.** is washing **c.** was washing **d.** has washed

28. **When the phone rang, I .... my lunch.** الفيوم٢٠٢٢
a. had **b.** am having **c.** was having **d.** will have

29. **I was watching TV .... my father returned from the office.** LM
a. while **b.** when **c.** just as **d.** since

30. **At the time my father arrived, we .... chess.**
a. were played **b.** were playing **c.** are playing **d.** played

31. **From 7 to 9 yesterday, I .... a certain task as I was asked.**
a. did **b.** had done **c.** was doing **d.** have done

Exercise 04 Language Level 2

32. **I entered the office and looked around. Most people .... at their office.** المحلة ٢٠٢٣ نقادة ٢٠٢٤
a. worked **b.** works **c.** were working **d.** work

33. **I saw a lot of tourists while .... in Luxor.**
a. was **b.** was being **c.** being **d.** had been

34. **While I .... ill, I lost a lot of weight and became so thin.** دمنهور ٢٠٢٣
a. was **b.** was being **c.** am **d.** had been

35. **I borrowed my friend's car while mine ....** القوصية ٢٠٢٤
a. was fixing **b.** was being fixed **c.** fixing **d.** fixed

36. **I was injured while .... a tree in the garden.** اسيوط منازل ٢٠٢٤
a. climbing **b.** was climbing **c.** climbed **d.** is climbing

37. **I couldn't answer the phone because I .... a shower.** وسط طنطا ٢٠٢٤
a. was taking **b.** took **c.** have taken **d.** take

38. **While studying, he .... asleep.** السنطة ٢٠٢٤
a. fall **b.** fallen **c.** fell **d.** falls

39. **Last night the police arrested him, but he could prove that he.....at the time of the crime.**
a. has worked **b.** worked **c.** will work **d.** was working

40. **When I went to the workshop, my car .... , so I had to wait.** المحلة ٢٠٢٤
a. repaired **b.** was repairing **c.** had repaired **d.** was being repaired

41. **Just as the dinner .... , my brother was watching a play.** دمياط ٢٠٢٤
a. was preparing **b.** was being prepared **c.** was prepared **d.** is preparing

42. **I couldn't help her because I .... for the exam while she was doing the housework.** LM
a. revised **b.** was revising **c.** am revising **d.** will be revising

43. **While the party .... , we were busy sending invitations to our friends.** العجمي ٢٠٢٣
a. was prepared **b.** was been prepared **c.** was being prepared **d.** is prepared

44. **It was not polite of him to interrupt what I ....**
a. was saying **b.** am saying **c.** will say **d.** says

45. **While the match .... , we heard about our uncle's death.**
a. is played **b.** was playing **c.** playing **d.** was being played

Exercise 04 Language Level 3

46. While .... my friends, my father knocked the door. سوهاج ٢٠٢٤
a. I was texting **b.** texted **c.** was being texted **d.** texting

47. .... Alex, I met my friend by chance. المنيا ٢٠٢٣
a. While **b.** During **c.** While in **d.** Just as

48. While .... , the baby was laughing to the doctor. جرجا ٢٠٢٣ بني سويف ٢٠٢٣ زفتى ٢٠٢٥
a. examining **b.** was examining **c.** being examined **d.** examined

49. On seeing the fire, the man .... the fire brigade. شربين ٢٠٢٣
a. had called **b.** was called **c.** was calling **d.** called

50. She did some shopping during .... to Port Said. الاسكندرية ٢٠٢٣
a. visiting **b.** was visiting **c.** visited **d.** a visit

51. .... with my friends, I am over the moon.
a. When **b.** During **c.** Ever **d.** While

52. I, as well as my friends, ... much yesterday morning.
a. chatted **b.** was chatting **c.** were chatting **d.** had chatted

53. .... on holiday, I met some friends of mine. قنا ٢٠٢٣
a. During **b.** When **c.** While **d.** Having

54. .... visiting hours, we got an entrance ticket for the hospital to see my uncle.
a. On **b.** During **c.** After **d.** While

55. .... doing our homework, we handed it out to our teacher.
a. On being **b.** On **c.** Having been **d.** Having

56. .... done, our homework was handed out to our teacher.
a. On being **b.** On **c.** Have been **d.** Having

57. While .... dinner, a stranger knocked on the door of my flat by mistake. LM
a. am having **b.** having **c.** I was having **d.** had

58. While I was studying English and .... to music, my mother was cooking.
a. listened **b.** was listening **c.** were listening **d.** listening

59. .... the meeting she was attending, she received some good news. ملوي ٢٠٢٥
a. During **b.** While **c.** As **d.** b & c

60. While I was cooking, my husband was washing the car. This means ....
a. I cooked first **b.** the two actions were at the same time
c. the two actions were in different times **d.** my husband washed the car first

5) Rewrite the sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning.

1. He was reading a book at 8 p.m. yesterday. (A book)
2. They were playing football when it started to rain. (while)
3. I visited them while they were playing cards. (When)
4. She was cooking dinner when her sister arrived. (as)
5. They were playing chess and suddenly the lights went out. (just as)
6. They were talking loudly when the teacher came in. (On)
7. She was cleaning the kitchen and broke a glass. (while)
8. I was walking in the street and I met my old friend. (when)
9. The singer came on stage and the audience started clapping. (just as)
10. My father came during my study. (having)
11. While I was staying here, I didn't go out. (during)
12. We didn't see Jana during the concrt. (While)

لاحظ ما يأتي بعد ⊂ recommend , suggest & advise

خاص
بالطلاب المتفوقين

recommend + مفعول + to + المصدر → يوصي / يرشح
recommend + فعل + ing → يوصي / يرشح
recommend + فاعل + should / مصدر → يوصي / يرشح

be + recommended + to + المصدر → في المجهول

★ I **recommended** Ali **to visit** Alex.
★ I **recommended visiting** Alex.
★ I **recommended** that Ali (**should**) **visit** Alex.
★ Ali **was recommended to visit** Alex.

suggest + فعل + ing → يوصي / يرشح
suggest + مصدر + فاعل → يوصي / يرشح
suggest + فاعل + should + مصدر → يوصي / يرشح

be + suggested + to + المصدر → في المجهول

★ I **suggest visiting** Alex.
★ I **suggest** that Ali (**should**) **visit** Alex.

advise + فعل + ing → ينصح
advise + فاعل + to + مصدر → ينصح

be + advised + to + المصدر → في المجهول

★ I **advise** you **to read** this novel.
★ I **advise reading** this novel.

1. Experts recommend .... food production to face the increasing population.
a. to double b. double c. doubling d. doubled
2. Experts recommend us .... food production to face the increasing population.
a. to double b. double c. doubling d. doubled
3. My friend recommended that I .... quickly for the next exam.
a. revise b. revising c. should revise d. a & c
4. I suggest .... the lesson again since you've made a lot of mistakes.
a. revises b. revise c. revising d. to revise
5. He suggested that she .... a study plan for this year.
a. do b. making c. doing d. make
6. The match is suggested .... due to bad weather.
a. to be cancelled b. should be cancelled. c. cancelling d. will be cancelled
7. The doctor advised me .... the medicine regularly.
a. take b. taking c. to take d. took
8. The doctor advised .... the medicine regularly.
a. take b. taking c. to take d. took
9. I was advised .... the medicine regularly by the doctor.
a. take b. taking c. to take d. took

Essay المقـــال

An essay is a series of paragraphs that talk about one subject.

المقال هو مجموعة من الفقرات التى تتحدث عن موضوع واحد.

يتكون المقال من ثلاثة أجزاء رئيسية:

1 Introduction المقدمة
2 Body الموضوع
3 Conclusion الخاتمة

تحتوي كل فقرة سواء كانت فقرة المقدمة أو فقرة الموضوع أو فقرة الخاتمة علي:

1 Topic Sentence الجملة الرئيسية
2 Supporting Sentences الجمل الداعمة
3 Concluding Sentence الجملة الختامية

1 The Introduction المقدمـــة

- It is the first paragraph in the essay.	المقدمة هى أول فقرة فى المقال.
- It is only one paragraph.	وتكون عبارة عن برجراف واحد.
- It catches the reader's attention.	تجذب انتباه القارئ للموضوع.
- It introduces the thesis statement.	تقدم الأطروحة (العبارة الافتتاحية).
- It gives the reader background.	تعطى للقارئ الخلفية أو المعلومات الأساسية.

أجـــزاء المقدمـــة

Hook = Attention grabber جملة جذب الانتباه

- A hook is the first sentence in the introduction.

هو أول جملة في المقدمة.

- A **hook** is an **opening statement** in an essay that **attempts** to **grab the reader's attention** want to continue reading the essay.

هى الجملة الافتتاحية فى المقال وتهدف إلى جذب انتباه القارئ ليستمر فى القراءة وقد تكون:

جملة عامة حكمة مثل شعبى إقتباس

Thesis Statement الأطروحة (العبارة الافتتاحية)

- A thesis statement is the **main idea** or **central argument** of the essay.

هي الجملة التي تعبِّر عن الفكرة الأساسية للمقال.

- It tells the reader what the essay is **about** and what the **writer's position** is.

توضح للقارئ ما الذي ستتناوله الفقرات القادمة و ما رأي الكاتب.

يمكن أن نبدأ المقدمة بإحدى هذه الروابط:

expressions for Introduction
تعبيرات في بداية المقدمة

First of all,
Firstly,
To begin with,
We all agree that

2 The Body (bulk) الموضـــوع

- ★ The body is the middle paragraphs between the introduction and the conclusion.

✍ متن الموضوع هو الفقرات الوسطى بين المقدمة والخاتمة.

- ★ They are paragraphs of support for the thesis. فقرات تدعم الموضوع.
- ★ They contain facts, data, evidences, comments, analysis, examples, pros and cons.

✍ يحتوى متن المقال على حقائق، بيانات، دلائل، تعليقات، تحليل، مميزات، عيوب، امثلة.

✍ يمكن أن نبدأ الموضوع بإحدى هذه الروابط:

expressions for the body
تعبيرات في بداية متن الموضوع

In addition, Moreover,
Furthermore, Besides that
Not only….., but also….
On the one hand,
On the other hand,

3 The Conclusion الخاتمـــة

- ★ The conclusion is the last paragraph of the essay.

✍ الخاتمة هى الفقرة الأخيرة من المقال.

- ★ It is only one paragraph.

✍ وتكون عبارة عن برجراف واحد.

- ★ It restates the introductory paragraph.

✍ تعيد الخاتمة صياغة الفقرة التمهيدية.

- ★ It summarizes the main points and restates the thesis in a new way.

✍ تلخّص الأفكار الرئيسية وتعيد صياغة الجملة الرئيسية بطريقة جديدة.

- ★ The conclusion summarises the ideas of the body and the introduction.

✍ تلخص الخاتمة أفكار صلب الموضوع والمقدمة.

- ★ It signals the end of the essay. It is a brief review of the main body.

✍ تشير إلى نهاية المقال. تعطى مراجعة ملخصة لصلب الموضوع الأساسى.

✍ يمكن أن نبدأ الخاتمة بإحدى هذه الروابط:

conclusion transitions
روابط الخاتمة

To summarize, = To sum up,
In conclusion, = To conclude,
In short, = In summary,
Finally, = All in all = On the whole

انتظروااااا
كتاب الزتـــونة
للمرحلـة الثانويـة
العمالقة
سلسلة
Giants
GIANTS العمالقة

Exercise 04 Writing

1. **The role of the body paragraph in an essay is to ....**
a. introduce the main idea **b.** provide detailed support for the thesis
c. restate the thesis statement **d.** present the conclusion

2. **What is the primary purpose of the introduction in an essay?**
a. To provide background information **b.** To summarize the conclusion
c. To present the main argument **d.** To include unrelated details

3. **"In short, using e-books is the best way to avoid cutting down trees to make paper." This can be a/an .... of an essay.**
a. introduction **b.** body **c.** conclusion **d.** greeting

4. **You summarise the content of your essay when you ....**
a. develop the main idea. **b.** write the elements of your essay in detail.
c. write the conclusion of your essay. **d.** make the end open.

5. **A hook ....**
a. states the thesis **b.** paraphrases what I write
c. graps the reader's attention to read the essay **d.** summarizes what I write

6. **In the .... , you can restate the introductory paragraph.**
a. body **b.** conclusion **c.** thesis **d.** topic sentence

7. **The introductory paragraph of an essay requires the topic, thesis and ....**
a. summary **b.** hook **c.** supporting details **d.** opinion

8. **"To sum up, changing your habits is the result of many several tiny changes to your daily life." This sentence can be considered a part of .... of an essay.**
a. a start **b.** a conclusion **c.** an introduction **d.** a body

9. **"Moreover, it is not a good idea to skip breakfast as it has several health benefits." This sentence can be considered a part of .... of an essay.**
a. a body **b.** a conclusion **c.** an introduction **d.** a summary

10. **Which section of an essay provides a summary of the main points?**
a. Introduction **b.** Body **c.** Conclusion **d.** Thesis statement

11. **Which section of an essay wraps up the main points and provides a final perspective on the topic?**
a. Introduction **b.** Body paragraphs **c.** Conclusion **d.** Thesis statement

12. **Which option best describes the purpose of a conclusion in an essay?**
a. To introduce a new topic or idea. **b.** To provide explanations and details.
c. To provide a summary of the main points. **d.** To state the main idea.

13. **A/An .... is the last paragraph of an essay.**
a. introduction **b.** body paragraph **c.** thesis **d.** closing

14. **When you conclude your essay, you should ....**
a. review your supporting ideas. **b.** ask the reader to choose the end.
c. include your supporting ideas. **d.** refer to the sentence of introduction.

15. **Each essay contains ....**
a. a topic sentence **b.** conclusion **c.** introduction and body paragraphs **d.** b & c

16. **Where should the thesis statement be restated?**
a. In the introduction. **b.** In the conclusion.
c. In the body paragraphs. **d.** After conclusion.

1. **Sport is important because it helps to teach students different skills like leadership, patience, teamwork, and social skills.** بني مزار ٢٠٢٤

   أ- إن الرياضة مهمة لأنها تساعد على تعليم الطلاب مهارات مختلفة مثل القيادة والصبر وجهد الفريق والمهارات الإجتماعية.

   ب- الرياضة مهمة لأنها تساعد على تعليم الطلاب مهارات مختلفة مثل القيادة والصبر والعمل الجماعي والمهارات الإجتماعية.

   ج- الرياضة مهمة لأنها تساعد على تعليم الطلاب مهارات مختلفة مثل القيادة والمثابرة والعمل الجماعي والمهارات الإجتماعية.

   د- الرياضة مهمة لأنها تساعد على تعليم الطلاب مواهب مختلفة مثل التقييد والصبر والعمل الجماعي والمهارات الإجتماعية.

2. **Social media is a double edged weapon. We must use it carefully to avoid all its dangers.** المنيا ٢٠٢٤

   أ- تعتبر وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي سلاح ذو حدين. يجب علينا ان نستخدمها بحرص لكي نتجنب كل مخاطرها.

   ب- تعتبر وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي سلاح. يجب علينا ان نستخدمها بحرص لكي نتجنب كل مخاطرها.

   ج- تعتبر وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي سلاح ذو حدين. يجب علينا أن نستخدمها لكي نتجنب كل مخاطرها.

   د- تعتبر وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي ذو حدين. يجب علينا ان نستخدمها بحرص لكي نتجنب كل مخاطرها.

3. **Be positive and optimistic because pessimism leads to worry, stress and failure.** ملاوي ٢٠٢٤

   أ- لاتكن إيجابيا ومتفائلا لأن التفاؤل يؤدي إلى القلق والتوتر والفشل.

   ب- كن إيجابيا ومتفائلا لأن التشاؤم يؤدي إلى القلق والتوتر والنجاح.

   ج- كن إيجابيا ومتفائلا لأن التشاؤم يؤدي إلى القلق والتوتر والفشل.

   د- كن إيجابيا ومتفائلا لأن التشاؤم لايؤدي إلى القلق والتوتر والفشل.

٤. **تلعب النوادي الرياضية دوراً هاماً في المجتمع، فهي تقدم خدمات مفيدة للشباب وتساعدهم على قضاء أوقات فراغهم .** سوهاج ٢٠٢٤

a. Sports club plays an important rule in society, and they also provide useful services to young people, and help them spend their free time.

b. Sports club plays an unimportant role in society, and they also provide useful services to young people, and help them spend their free time.

c. Sports clubs play an important role in society, and they also provide harmful services to young people, and help them spend their free time.

d. Sports clubs play an important role in society, and they also provide useful services to young people, and help them spend their free time.

٥. **علينا أن نستغل أوقات الفراغ في ممارسة الهوايات المفيدة .** سوهاج ٢٠٢٤

a. We should misuse our free time to practise new hobbies.

b. We shouldn't use our free time to practise new hobbies.

c. We should use our free time to discover new hobbies.

d. We should use our free time to practise useful hobbies.

٦. **تتأثر البيئة بالنشاط البشري في شتى مناحي الحياة، لهذا السبب يعد الإنسان أهم عنصر في الحفاظ على البيئة أو تدميرها.** دمياط ٢٠٢٤

a. The environment is affecting by human activity in various walks of life. For this reason, the man is the most Important element in preserving or destroying the environment.

b. The environment is affected by human activity in various walks of life. For this reason, man is the most important element in preserving or destroying the environment.

c. The environment is infected by human activity in various walks of life. For this reason, man is most important element in deserving or destroying the environment.

d. The environment is affected by human creativity in various walks of life. For this reason, man is the most important element in deserving or destroying the environment.

General Exercises on Unit 1

A Vocabulary and Structure

Choose the (2) correct answers out of the (5) options given:

1. **We need harmony in our society to live peacefully. The opposite of harmony is ....**
   a. unity **b.** balance **c.** agreement **d.** disagreement **e.** conflict
2. **Pride in your work leads to success. The synonym of pride is ....**
   a. honor **b.** dignity **c.** shame **d.** dishonor **e.** shyness

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. **When his grandfather passed away, Ali managed to .... a large fortune.**
   a. borrow **b.** lend **c.** inherit **d.** buy
4. **The students showed great .... for their teacher's patience and hard work.**
   a. admiration **b.** anger **c.** shame **d.** fear
5. **Winning the gold medal was the greatest .... of her career.**
   a. loss **b.** achievement **c.** mistake **d.** weakness
6. **The old man's .... helped the young people solve their problems.**
   a. ignorance **b.** carelessness **c.** pride **d.** wisdom
7. **Language and traditions are important parts of a nation's ....**
   a. problem **b.** conflict **c.** identity **d.** difficulty
   Parents often make great .... to ensure a better future for their children.
   a. sacrifice **b.** mistake **c.** opportunity **d.** benefit
8. **When he was in Cairo, he always .... along the Nile.**
   a. walked **b.** was walking **c.** walks **d.** 'll walk
9. **He used to be a taxi driver. Now he ....**
   a. doesn't **b.** didn't **c.** isn't **d.** hasn't
10. **The police arrested him while he .... the scene of the crime.**
    a. left **b.** had left **c.** has left **d.** was leaving
11. **.......... at home when she smashed the glass window?**
    a. Were you being **b.** Did you be **c.** Were you **d.** Be you
12. **Ten years ago, we .... in a house by the river.**
    a. lived **b.** will live **c.** live **d.** living
13. **My father .... to use a computer when he was ten years old.**
    a. wasn't used **b.** uses **c.** didn't use **d.** was used
14. **The careless driver .... on his phone when his car ran into a tree.**
    a. has talked **b.** was talking **c.** had talked **d.** is talking
15. **A/An .... is another name for the attention-grabber sentence.**
    a. body **b.** closing **c.** introduction **d.** hook
16. **He couldn't answer the phone because he .... a shower.**
    a. had **b.** has had **c.** was having **d.** had had

B Reading Comprehension

Read the following passage, then answer the questions: الغربية ٢٠٢٢

Decent Life or 'Haya Karima' is the motto of the initiative launched recently as a national project aiming to improve the quality of life for the people in the Egyptian countryside, and raise the efficiency of the services provided to them. Most villages in Egypt suffer shortage in some development services and facilities such as clean water networks, sanitation, gas, electricity, schools and hospitals. The initiative deals with developing agricultural projects in various areas within Egypt. It provides marketing and investing solutions to these lands in addition to all relevant businesses associated with the project including the division of lands and proposing it to investors, small farmers and the youths for the cultivation and

development of these lands. The aim is to achieve sustainable development in this area through developing regional communities and attracting the Egyptian investors and other small farmers and the youths to live and work in it. Regarding the countryside development, Egypt seeks to treat the wastewater which is dumped into sea or lakes, with the treated water to be reused in new projects across Sinai. Thus a total of 100,000 feddans will be ready for agricultural use in Sinai using the treated water.

17. Which one is a suitable title to the passage?
a. Cultivating lands **b.** Haya karima, A decent life
c. Treating wastewater **d.** Getting investors

18. According to the text, 100,000 feddans will be ready for agricultural use in Sinai if..........
a. sea water is used **b.** we dug a canal by the Nile
c. wastewater is treated **d.** water is wasted

19. The underlined pronoun 'them' refers to the ....
a. lands **b.** investors **c.** projects **d.** people

20. What does the underlined word "associated" mean?
a. connected **b.** organized **c.** excited **d.** relaxed

21. According the passage, the project of Haya Karima ....
a. won't be helpful to the Egyptians **b.** aims to improve the countryside
c. aims to improve the city **d.** aims to build new community

22. Pick a word from the text that means 'environmentally friendly' ....
a. launched **b.** national **c.** dumped **d.** sustainable

23. In your opinion, to attract Egyptian investors, the project must ....
a. give them the land for nothing **b.** provide them with gas
c. achieve sustainable development **d.** treat wastewater for them

C Writing

Translate the following sentences:

24. Making people happy is one of the values that create affection among them. It doesn't take much effort to put a smile on someone's face. الشرقية ٢٠٢٣

أ. إسعاد الناس أحد القيم التي تخلق المودة بينهم. لن تحتاج إلى جهد كبير لرسم ابتسامة على وجه شخص ما.
ب. إسعاد الناس أحد القيم التي تخلق الراحة بينهم، لن تحتاج إلى جهد كبير لرسم ابتسامة على وجه شخص ما.
ج. إسعاد النلس أحد القيم التي تخلق المودة بينهم، لن تحتاج إلى جهد كبير لطلب ابتسامة من وجه شخص ما.
د. إسعاد الناس أحد القيم التي تخلق الراحة بينهم، فستحتاج إلى جهد كبير لرسم ابتسامة على وجه شخص ما.

٢٥. إن الاحتباس الحرارى هو الزيادة فى درجة الحرارة فى النظام المناخى للأرض. فهو مظهر رئيسى للتغير المناخى. الشرقية ٢٠٢٣

a. Global warming is the long-term rise in the average heat of the Earth's climate system. It is a major aspect of climate change.
b. Global warming is the long-term rise in the average temperature of the Earth's climate system. It is a major aspect of climate change.
c. Global warning is the long-term rise in the average heat of the Earth's climate system. It is a major aspect of climate change.
d. Global warming is the long-term rise in the average heat of the Earth's weather system. It is a major aspect of climate change.

Rewrite the sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning.

26. I was eating lunch and the bell rang. (While)
27. He entered the room and everyone kept silent. (On)

Answer the following questions:

28. Why did the villagers think Santiago was unlucky?
29. In what ways does Santiago represent courage even before the big journey begins?

Write an essay of about 150 words on the following topic:

Egypt's Heritage

1) Complete the following dialogue: (2 Marks)

أزهر الجيزة ٢٠٢٣

Ali: Have you ever travelled to a foreign country?
Eid: ❶ ....
Ali: ❷ ....?
Eid: I enjoyed the beauty of France and the different culture there.
Ali: ❸ ....?
Eid: I stayed there with a host family.
Ali: How long did you stay there?
Eid: ❹ ....

2) Read the following passage, then answer the questions: (5 Marks)

أزهر الجيزة ٢٠٢٣

Before the internet, people wrote letters and many people had pen- friends. These were people they didn't always meet, but people choose to write about their lives. The letters sometimes took a long time to arrive. But pen-friends were very popular. An example is Nellie Robinson and Daphne Meech. These two Australian women are now ninety years old. They first decided to write to each other in 1930, and are now perhaps the longest two people ever to be pen-friends. Nellie first had pen-friends when she was ten, but only one pen-friend continued to write to her. Like Nellie, Daphne lived on a farm and the two women enjoyed writing about their lives. As well as letters, they sent each other black and white photos. They didn't meet until 1962, thirty years after their first letter.

ⓐ Answer the following questions:

1. How did people communicate before the internet?
....
2. What did the two women enjoy?
....
3. What nationality were the two women?
....

ⓑ Choose the correct answer:

4. Daphne lives on a ....
a. firm b. form c. farm d. country
5. The two women met after .... years of their first letter.
a. three b. thirty c. thirteen d. a couple

3) ⓐ Translate into Arabic: (1 Mark)

أزهر الجيزة ٢٠٢٣

Talking to people from different places or people with different opinions and experiences help you learn a lot about the world.

....

ⓑ Translate into English: (1 Mark)

أزهر الجيزة ٢٠٢٣

أصبحت السياحة في مصر مصدر هام للتنمية المستدامة.

....

Unit 2 : Articles Of Faith أركان الايمان

A) Choose the right answer:

1. Belief in Allah is the .... of faith.
   a. stone **b.** cornerstone **c.** corner **d.** car
2. There is only one God worthy of ....
   a. partnership **b.** workshop **c.** worship **d.** friendship
3. In accordance with the prophet (PBUH), the second article of faith is the belief in ....
   a. The Angels **b.** The Divine Books **c.** Allah **d.** The Messengers
4. To believe in Allah is to believe in all this except his ....
   a. Partnership **b.** existence **c.** attributes **d.** lordship
5. Monotheism is the .... that there is only one God.
   a. relieve **b.** belief **c.** disbelief **d.** disbelieve
6. Angels do not sleep, eat or ....
   a. marry **b.** worship **c.** obey Allah **d.** pray
7. Angels were created for the .... of worshipping Allah.
   a. purpose **b.** prose **c.** prize **d.** purse.
8. Angels were created from ....
   a. wood **b.** fire **c.** light **d.** mud
9. The Angel of death takes people's .... to God when they die.
   a. blood **b.** legs **c.** money **d.** Souls
10. Angels have .... roles.
   a. the same **b.** no **c.** similar **d.** different

B) Answer the following questions:

1. What is monotheism?
2. How can a Muslim properly believe in Allah?
3. What were angles created from?
4. How do angles differ from humans?
5. What were angels created for?

C) Translate the following:

1. All Islamic beliefs and practices revolve the proper belief in Allah.
2. Belief in the existence of angels is one of the fundamental articles of faith in Islam.

٣. الملائكة خلق من مخلوقات اللّه تعالى، خلقهم اللّه عز وجل من نور.

٤. الإيمان باللّه هو أهم محاور الإيمان، وأهم شروطه الإيمان بأركانه الستة.

Unit 2

Hands Help, Hearts Care

Learning Outcomes

Reading

- Reading short texts about helping others and community.
- Identify key details of a text about volunteering and serving communities.

Language

- Using modal verbs for suggestion, advice, invitations and prohibition.

Listening

- Identify the main idea of a text.
- Identify specific details of a text.

Writing

- Writing a descriptive essay.

Speaking

- Expressing varied social roles in community service.

Unit 2

Hands Help, Hearts Care

Lessons
1 The Warm Bread
2 Planting Trees, Growing Myself

Key Vocabulary

fade (v)	يتلاشى / يبهت / يختفي تدريجيًا	optimism (n)	التفاؤل	sapling (n)	شتلة
irresistible (adj)	لا يقاوم	slip (v)	ينزلق / يتدهور	stare (v)	يحدق
community (n)	مجتمع	light up (v)	يبتهج	kindness (n)	طيبة / عطف
isolate (v)	يعزل	transform (v)	يتغير	mirror (n/v)	مرآة/ يعكس
isolated (adj)	منعزل	volunteer (n/v)	متطوع / يتطوع	mood (n)	مزاج
overwhelm (v)	يرهق / يثقل	teamwork (n)	عمل جماعى	mirror her mood	يعكس حالتها المزاجية
overwhelmed	مرهق / مثقل/ مغمور	confidence (n)	ثقة	support (v/n)	دعم/ يدعم

Main Vocabulary

campaign (n)	حملة	lifelong (adj)	مدى الحياة	meaningful (adj)	ذو مغزى
hug (n/v)	حضن/ يحضن	growth (n)	نمو	habit (n)	عادة
licence (n)	رخصة	require (v)	يتطلب	knock (n/v)	طرقة / يطرق
tap (n/v)	صنبور / ينقر	renew (v)	يجدد	oven (n)	فرن
responsibility (n)	مسئولية	serve (v)	يقدم / يخدم	warm (adj)	دافئ
speak up (ph.v)	يتحدث بصوت عالى	service (n)	خدمة	skill (n)	مهارة
wrap (v)	يلف / يغلف	corner (n)	ركن	bitter (adj)	مرير
difference (n)	فرق	act (n/v)	تصرف / يتصرف	upstairs (adv)	بالاعلى
relationship (n)	علاقة	bake (v)	يخبز	gentle (adj)	رقيق
grade (n/v)	درجة / صف / يصنف / يقيم	celebration (n)	احتفال	cloth (n)	قماش
polite (adj)	مؤدب	personality (n)	شخصية	soft (adj)	ناعم
depend (v)	يعتمد	neighbor (n)	جار	bread (n)	خبز
personal (adj)	شخصى	shade (n)	ظل	friendly (adj)	ودود
stressed (adj)	متوتر / واقع تحت ضغط	dig (v)	يحفر	farmer (n)	مزارع
recycling (n)	إعادة التدوير	quality (n)	جودة	hole (n)	حفرة
pride (n)	الفخر	worries (n)	مخاوف	care (n/v)	اهتمام / يهتم

Collocations

give time	يعطى وقتا لـ	make a difference	يشكل فارق
support each other	يدعم بعضهم البعض	serve others	يخدم الاخرين
do work	يؤدى العمل	plant saplings	يزرع شتلات
join a project	يلتحق بمشروع	feel overwhelmed by	يشعر بالارهاق من
take a shower	ياخذ دشا	give help	يقدم المساعدة

Expressions & Prepositions

a small act of kindness	فعل صغير من افعال الطيبة	a knock at	طرقة على
stay in my mind	يعلق بالذهن	stare at	يحدق بـ
have little contact with	قليل التواصل مع	fill with	يملا بـ
tree-planting project	مشروع لزراعة الاشجار	depend on	يعتمد علي
invite her in for tea	تدعوها للدخول لتناول الشاى	carry on	يستمر فى
keep thinking about	يستمر بالتفكير فى	speak up	يتحدث بصراحة / يرفع صوته بالرأي
fill her with optimism	يغمرها بالشعور بالتفاؤل والأمل	chat about	يتحدث عن
heart grows bigger	يزداد قلبه سعةً / يمتلئ بالمشاعر	sit by the window	يجلس بجانب النافذة
her worries began to fade	بدأت مخاوفها تتلاشى	feel isolated	يشعر بالعزلة

Definitions

community	مجتمع	▸ people who live in the same area or have something in common
volunteer	متطوع	▸ a person who works without pay to help others
transformed	متحول	▸ completely changed in a positive way
saplings	شتلات	▸ young trees
support	دعم	▸ to give help or encouragement to someone
confidence	ثقة	▸ belief in your own abilities
irresistible	لا يقاوم	▸ so attractive that it is impossible to refuse or avoid
stare	يحدق بـ	▸ to look at someone or something for a long time without moving your eyes

Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym	Antonym
irresistible	لا يقاوم	attractive/ tempting/ appealing	resistible/avoidable/ unattractive
slip	ينزلق/ يتدهور	get worse/ fall/ slide	get better/ succeed/ hold
optimism	التفاؤل	hopefulness/ positivity/ hope	pessimism/ despair/ negativity
overwhelm	يغمر/ يثقل	overcome/ overpower	underwhelm/ comfort
stare	يحدق	gaze/ glare / peer	glance/ blink/ avoid
support	دعم / يدعم	assist/ help/ encourage	discourage/ resist/ abandon
transform	يحول	change/ alter / modify	preserve / keep / maintain
fade	يتلاشى / يبهت / يختفي تدريجيا	disappear / decline/ vanish	brighten / flourish/ appear
care	اهتمام / يهتم	concern/ attention/ compassion	disregard / carelessness

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
resist	يقاوم	resistance	مقاومة	irresistible	لا يقاوم
isolate	يعزل	isolation	عزلة	isolated	منعزل
recycle	يعيد تدوير	recycling	اعادة التدوير	recyclable	قابل لاعادة التدوير
support	يدعم	support	دعم	supportive	داعم
volunteer	يتطوع	volunteer	متطوع	voluntary	تطوعى

Language Notes

Notice the Difference

optimism	التفاؤل	pessimism	تشاؤم
stare	يحدق	star	نجم
isolate	يعزل (بعيدا عن الناس)	insulate	يعزل (حرارة او كهرباء)
transform	يحول	transport	ينقل
cloth	قماش	clothes	ملابس
confidence	ثقة	confident	واثق
optimism	التفاؤل	optimistic	متفائل
require	يتطلب	acquire	يكتسب
bitter	مرير / لاذع	better	افضل
serve	يخدم	service	خدمة
upstairs	بالأعلى	downstairs	بالأسفل
slip	ينزلق	spill	يسكب
mood	مزاج	moody	مزاجي
responsible	مسؤول	responsibility	المسؤولية
stressed	متوتر	stressful	مُسبب للتوتر

optimistic, optimist & optimism

optimistic$^{(adj)}$	متفائل	▸ I'm feeling **optimistic** about our chances.
optimist$^{(n)}$	متفائل (شخص)	▸ He is an **optimist**; he believes everything will turn out well.
optimism$^{(n)}$	التفاؤل	▸ With her **optimism**, she inspired the whole team.

transform, transfer, transport, & transplant

transform	يغير	▸ The new technology will **transform** the way we work.
transfer	يحول / يرسل	▸ I need to **transfer** some money to my savings account.
transport	ينقل / نقل	▸ Trucks are used to **transport** goods across the country.
transplant	يزرع (اعضاء)	▸ The doctors **transplanted** the heart into the patient.

grow, growing & growth

grow	ينمو	▸ Plants need sunlight and water to **grow**.
growing	متنامى / متزايد	▸ He's excited about his **growing** collection of books.
growth	نمو	▸ Regular exercise is important for healthy **growth**.

cloth, clothe & clothes

cloth	قماش	▸ She used a **cloth** to clean the table.
clothe	يلبس	▸ Parents **clothe** their children with care.
clothes	ملابس	▸ I need to buy new **clothes** for the winter.

Reading

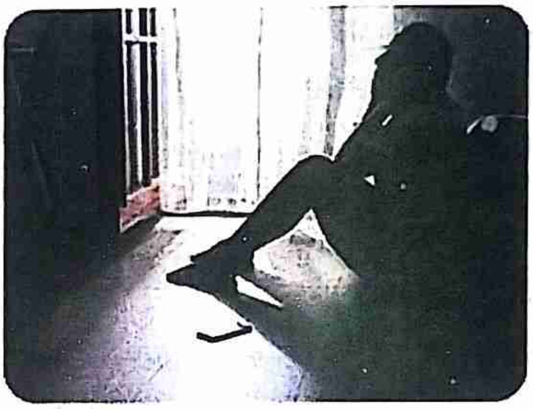
" The Warm Bread "

Before you start: ➲ Think and discuss in pairs:

1) Answer the following questions.

1. Do you think a small act of kindness can change someone's day? Why / Why not?
2. What are things that usually make you feel better when you are sad or stressed?

2) Read the following article



١) درجات
٢) تنخفض
٣) منهمك/ مهموم
٤) يجلس بالقرب
٥) يحدق
٦) مزاج
٧) جار
٨) مغطى بـ
٩) قماش
١٠) لا يقاوم
١١) يلف
١٢) قلق
١٣) طيبة
١٤) ابتهج
١٥) تفاؤل

It was a difficult week for Sama. Her **grades**(1) were slipping(2), and she felt **overwhelmed**(3) by all her schoolwork. On Thursday afternoon, she **sat by**(4) her window, **staring**(5) at the grey sky that seemed to **mirror her mood**(6). She hadn't spoken to many people lately and felt **isolated** from her friends. Then, there was a **knock** at the door. It was Mrs. Aya, the friendly **neighbor**(7) who lived **upstairs**. She held a small basket **covered with**(8) a clean white **cloth**(9) still warm from the oven. "I **baked** some fresh bread this morning," Mrs. Aya said warmly. "I thought you might like some."

The smell was **irresistible**(10), **wrapping**(11) around Sama like a gentle **hug**. Sama smiled for the first time in days and **invited her in for tea**. They sat together, chatting about small things school, plants, and Mrs. Aya's garden, while the **soft** sound of rain **tapped** on the window. Slowly, Sama felt her **worries**(12) began to **fade**. Before leaving, Mrs. Aya said, "Sometimes, the smallest **kindness** (13) can **make a big difference**." Sama kept thinking about those words. She decided to help her younger cousin with homework that evening. Seeing her cousin's face **light up**(14) filled her with **optimism**(15). She realized that kindness doesn't just make others feel better; it can change your own heart, too.

Answer the following questions:

1. Why was Sama having a difficult week?
2. How did Mrs. Aya try to help Sama?
3. What change happened in Sama's feelings during the visit?
4. What lesson did Sama learn from this experience?

Listening

My name is Ahmed, and I'm 17 years old. Last year, I joined a community(1) tree-planting project in my village. At first, I only wanted to get volunteering(2) hours for school. But what happened during the project truly transformed(3) me. We worked in teams to dig(4) holes, plant saplings(5), and water them. It was hard work under the hot sun, but we laughed (6)a lot and supported(7) each other.

١) مجتمع
٢) التطوع
٣) يحول
٤) يحفر
٥) شتلات
٦) يضحك
٧) يدعم
٨) عمل جماعي
٩) بيئة
١٠) ثقة
١١) مسؤلية
١٢) نمو
١٣) مدى الحياة
١٤) ذو مغزى

I learned the meaning of real teamwork(8)- not just working together, but caring if someone was tired or needed water. One day, an old farmer came to watch. He said, I haven't seen green like this in 20 years. His words stayed in my mind. I realized we weren't just planting trees- we were making a difference to the environment (9)and to people's lives.

After three months, I felt different. I had more confidence(10) to speak up, and I cared more about my community. Volunteering taught me responsibility(11)- those trees depend on us. I even started a recycling corner at school.

Now, I believe volunteering isn't only about helping others. It's also about personal growth(12). You give time, but you get so much more- skills, friends, and pride. I will continue volunteering because it has become a lifelong(13) habit. And yes, it's meaningful(14). When you serve others, your heart grows bigger.

انتظروا!!!!!
كتاب مراجعة العمالقة
للصف الاول الثانوي
العمالقة
Giants

Exercise 04 Key Vocabulary

1. **Sama felt .... by her schoolwork and falling grades.** **SB**
a. overwhelmed **b.** optimism **c.** irresistible **d.** meaningful

2. **Spending so much time alone made her feel ....** **SB**
a. irresistible **b.** kindness **c.** isolated **d.** light up

3. **The smell of the bread was so .... that she smiled immediately.** **SB**
a. bad **b.** irresistible **c.** terrible **d.** isolated

4. **Schools play an important .... in society.** **SB R.1**
a. reel **b.** rule **c.** roll **d.** role

5. **The news of her acceptance into the program "filled her with optimism about the future". The phrase "filled her with optimism" means ....** **SB R.1**
a. Gave her food **b.** Made her hopeful **c.** Made her tired **d.** Gave her money

6. **Her worries began to .... as she talked with Mrs. Aya.She felt a lot better.** **SB**
a. bitter **b.** mirror **c.** wrap **d.** fade

7. **Helping her cousin filled her with a sense of .... about the future.** **SB**
a. knock **b.** optimism **c.** mood **d.** isolated

8. **Sama's help caused her cousin's face to ....** **SB**
a. worry **b.** light up **c.** support **d.** bitter

9. **Sama wasn't happy to see her grades ....** **SB**
a. improve **b.** spell **c.** renew **d.** slip

10. **The old photographs began to .... , making it hard to see the details.**
a. fade **b.** improve **c.** carve **d.** require

11. **The offer was .... , and he couldn't turn it down.**
a. bitter **b.** teamwork **c.** irresistible **d.** shade

12. **A simple idea can .... into a successful business with hard work.**
a. transport **b.** transform **c.** depend **d.** transplant

13. **The island was .... from the mainland, making it difficult to access.**
a. isolated **b.** neighborhood **c.** nearby **d.** upstairs

14. **She likes to .... because it allows her to make a positive impact.**
a. require **b.** stare **c.** volunteer **d.** restore

15. **The success of the project was due to the excellent .... of all members.**
a. difference **b.** teamwork **c.** conflict **d.** knock

16. **He needed the .... of his friends to get through the difficult times.**
a. support **b.** conflict **c.** community **d.** resistance

17. **His kindness and generosity .... the hearts of those around him.**
a. candy **b.** fade **c.** light up **d.** history

18. **His new book is a/an.........blend of clever humor and heartwarming characters.** **SB R.1**
a. isolated **b.** irresistible **c.** urgent **d.** misfortunate

19. **It's rude to .... at someone for too long without speaking.**
a. renew **b.** seem **c.** fade **d.** stare

20. **His .... helped inspire others to keep fighting for their dreams.**
a. conflict **b.** optimism **c.** pessimism **d.** irresistible

21. **.......... can help you meet new people and learn new skills.**
a. Difference **b.** Volunteering **c.** Emergency **d.** Monument

22. Be careful not to .... while walking on wet floors.
a. serve b. bake c. stare d. slip

23. My grandfather planted an apple .... in his garden.
a. corner b. service c. sapling d. licence

Exercise 9h Main Vocabulary

24. She received a big......... from her family when she returned home from college.
a. hug b. grade c. mood d. wrap

25. Over the years, her business showed remarkable .... and success.
a. service b. growth c. mood d. conflict

26. His .... of waking up early helped him stay productive throughout the day.
a. tradition b. skill c. service d. habit

27. The new job position .... at least five years of experience in the field.
a. inquires b. enquires c. requires d. acquires

28. The cookies were baking in the ...., filling the kitchen with a sweet smell.
a. fridge b. environment c. campaign d. oven

29. It's important to .... when you see something wrong.
a. speak up b. light up c. give up d. pick up

30. He .... his jacket tightly around himself to keep warm.
a. tore b. slipped c. wrapped d. tapped

31. The .... between success and failure often lies in perseverance.
a. environment b. difference c. bridge d. forest

32. The .... breeze made the afternoon feel perfect for a walk.
a. violent b. immense c. empty d. gentle

33. She received the highest .... in the class for her project.
a. grade b. degree c. mood d. hug

34. He wrapped the gift in colorful .... before handing it over.
a. slip b. mood c. corner d. cloth

35. She is known for her optimistic .... and positive attitude.
a. fade b. personality c. history d. environment

36. He had a .... passion for teaching since he was a little child.
a. lifelong b. long life c. national d. voluntary

37. She wanted to .... her passport before the upcoming trip.
a. slip b. stare c. contact d. renew

38. His .... about the upcoming exam kept him awake all night.
a. support b. growth c. worries d. hug

39. You can .... on her to get the job done right.
a. depend b. ignore c. mirror d. fade

40. They have a close......... built on mutual respect and trust.
a. difference b. relationship c. growth d. campaign

41. She planned a .... for her friend's birthday with a surprise party.
a. relationship b. growth c. lack d. celebration

42. It's important to be .... when meeting someone for the first time.
a. worried b. mirror c. polite d. bitter

43. Plastic and paper should be .... to protect the planet.
a. recycled b. torn c. dug d. served

44. Eyad was in a good .... all morning after getting the good news.
a. affect b. grade c. mood d. growth

Exercise 04 Expressions, Prepositions, Derivatives & Language Notes

45. She works hard every day to .... a difference in the lives of her students.
a. make b. require c. take d. keep

46. They......... each other through both the good times and the bad ones.
a. disable b. knock c. tap d. support

47. She was excited to .... a project that aimed to clean up local parks.
a. make b. join c. carry d. knock

48. You can .... overwhelmed by life's challenges, but it's important to stay focused.
a. feel b. take c. have d. make

49. He heard a knock .... the door and quickly ran to answer it.
a. in b. off c. with d. at

50. That moment will .... in my mind as one of the happiest times of my life.
a. stay b. give c. take d. make

51. He .... little contact with his childhood friends since they moved away.
a. takes b. has c. does d. knocks

52. He wore gloves to protect his hands .... the cold.
a. on b. of c. in d. from

53. Please,fill this bottle .... clean water.
a. with b. in c. of d. for

Choose the (Two) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given.

54. Productivity in the factory has slipped quite noticeably in the last year. The synonym of the underlined word "slipped" is .... **SB R.1**
a. got better b. got worse c. escaped d. succeeded e. fallen

55. The smell of freshly baked cookies was irresistible. The synonym of "irresistible" is ..
a. unattractive b. avoidable c. attractive d. resistible e. tempting

56. She always looked at life with optimism. The antonym of "optimism" is ....
a. wisdom b. ignorance c. pessimism d. despair e. positivity

57. She felt overwhelmed by the number of tasks she had to complete. The synonym of the underlined word "overwhelm" is ....
a. relax b. comfort c. underwhelm d. overpower e. overcome

58. His hard work helped transform his life. The synonym of "transform" is ....
a. change b. alter c. preserve d. fix e. keep

59. Over time, the memories of their childhood began to fade. The synonym of "fade" is ....
a. disappear b. brighten c. flourish d. decline e. appear

60. She didn't care what others thought of her, staying true to herself. The synonym of the underlined word "care" is ....
a. concern b. disregard c. destroy d. dislike e. look after

61. I think her kindness is one of her strong points. The synonym of "kindness" is ....
a. care b. cruelty c. passion d. urgency e. equity

62. Her charm was irresistible, and everyone in the room admired her. The antonym of "irresistible" is ....
a. resistible b. avoidable c. tempting d. attractive e. appealing

إسداء النصح باستخدم يجب ولا يجب
Giving Advice: Should & Shouldn't

✍ نستخدم should / shouldn't للنصيحة لنقول أن شيء ما جيداً (ينبغي فعله) أو غير جيد (لا ينبغي فعله).

✍ بعد should / shouldn't يأتي الفعل في المصدر (بدون أى إضافات وبدون to).

✍ تأتى should / shouldn't مع جميع الضمائر والأسماء سواء كانت مفرد أو جمع.

- ★ You should always wash your hands after you've touched the cat.
- ★ Tourists should wear sun cream when it's very hot.
- ★ You shouldn't walk too much in the sun.
- ★ You shouldn't touch that. It's dirty!
- ★ In summer, tourists should wear a hat and ought not to sit in the sun.

✍ يتكون السؤال بـ (هل) كالآتى (ويكون معناه "هل يجب ...؟")

Should + فاعل + مصدر + تكملة الجملة... ?

★ Should you go to school every day? ➾ Yes, I should. ➾ No, I shouldn't.

✍ يتكون السؤال بأداة استفهام كالآتى:

أداة استفهام + should / shouldn't + subject + verb... ?

★ What should I try doing?
➾ You should definitely try some windsurfing.

✍ لاحظ صيغة المبنى للمجهول كالآتى:

مفعول + should / shouldn't + be + P.P.

- ★ You should eat a lot of vegetables and fruits as they are healthy. (active)
- ★ A lot of vegetables and fruits should be eaten as they are healthy. (passive)

✍ هناك بعض المصطلحات الأخرى التى نستخدمها فى النصيحة والتى تحل محل should و shouldn't.

Should	Shouldn't
You ought to + inf.	You ought not to + inf.
If I were you, I would + inf.	If I were you, I wouldn't + inf.
I advise you to + inf.	I advise you not to + inf.
My advice to you is to + inf.	My advice to you is not to + inf.
You had better + inf.	You'd better not + inf.
It is better to + inf.	It is better not to + inf.
It is advisable for ..... to + inf.	It is inadvisable for ..... to + inf.
It is desirable for ...... to + inf.	It is undesirable for ..... to + inf.
It is important for ... to + inf.	It is important for ... not to + inf.
It will be a good idea to + inf.	It will be a good idea not to + inf.

نستخدم:

Modal verbs of regret (blame)

should (ought to) have + P.P. /
shouldn't (ought not to) have + P.P.

للتعبير عن اللوم أو الندم علي فعل أو عدم فعل شيء في الماضي.

- You **shouldn't have arrived** late for your exam.
- I'm sorry! I **ought to have come** on time.

الإلـــــزام والضـــــرورة
Obligation & Necessity

نستخدم must / mustn't (للتعبير عن الإلزام أو الضرورة أو التحريم).

بعد must / mustn't يأتى الفعل فى المصدر (بدون أى إضافات وبدون to).

تأتى must / mustn't مع جميع الضمائر والأسماء سواء كانت مفرد أو جمع.

لاحظ استخدامات:

must / mustn't + inf.

★ You **must** follow the traffic rules.	القواعد و القوانين
★ I **must work** hard for the exams next week.	إلزام شخصي
★ I **must buy** a present for my mother.	مشاعر قوية
★ You **must come** to my party tonight.	دعوة قوية
★ They **mustn't eat** that cheese. It's green! - You **must stop** smoking.	نصيحة قوية
★ We **must buy** souvenirs for our friends here.	تذكرة بفعل شيء

يتكون السؤال بـ (هل) كالآتى (ويكون معناه "هل يجب ...؟")

Must + فاعل + مصدر + ...تكملة الجملة... ?

★ **Must** I turn right here?
- Yes, you **must**.

يتكون السؤال بأداة استفهام كالآتى:

أداة استفهام + must / mustn't + subject + verb... ?

★ What **must** I do to avoid traffic fines?
- You **must** stick to the rules.

لاحظ صيغة المبنى للمجهول كالآتى:

مفعول + must / mustn't + be + P.P.

★ I **must buy** a present for my mother. (active)
★ A present **must be bought** for my mother. (passive)

يمكننا استبدال must بالتعبيرات التالية:

must + مصدر =
It's necessary
It's a necessity
It's a must
It's obligatory
It's lawful
+ for .... to + inf.

- ★ You **must** turn right.
- ★ It is **obligatory for** you **to** turn right.
- ★ It is **a must for** you **to** turn right.
- ★ It is **necessary for** you **to** turn right.
- ★ It is **a necessity for** you **to** turn right.

✍ لاحظ الفرق بين **must** و **a must**:

- ★ You **must** turn right.
- ★ It is **a must** for you **to** turn right.

فعل مساعد بمعنى يجب ويأتى بعده المصدر

(اسم بمعنى ضرورة / يمكن ان يأتي بعدها to)

✍ لاحظ الفرق بين **necessary** و **a necessity**:

- ★ It is **necessary** for you **to** turn right.
- ★ It is **a necessity** for you **to** turn right.

صفة بمعني ضروري

اسم بمعنى ضرورة

✍ يمكننا استبدال **mustn't** بالتعبيرات التالية:

mustn't + مصدر =

It's not allowed to + inf.	ليس مسموحاً أن
It's not permitted to + inf.	ليس مسموحاً أن
It's forbidden to + inf.	محرم
It's prohibited to + inf.	من الممنوع
It's banned to + inf.	من الممنوع
It's against the law to + inf.	ضد القانون أن
It's illegal to + inf.	غير قانوني أن

- ★ You **mustn't** park your car here.
- ★ It is **not allowed to** park your car here.
- ★ It is **forbidden to** park your car here.
- ★ It is **prohibited to** park your car here.
- It is **against the law to** park your car here.
- It is **not permitted to** park your car here.
- It is **banned to** park your car here.
- It is **illegal to** park your car here.

✍ يمكننا أيضا استخدام **mustn't** للتعبير عن نصيحة قوية / الالتزام الشخصى.

- ★ You **mustn't** waste your time.
- ★ I **mustn't** leave my bedroom untidy.

✍ يمكننا أيضا استخدام **can't** للتعبير عن عدم السماح بالقيام بشيء ما.

- ★ You **can't** smoke in hospitals.

Enrich your language

(have to / has to / need to)

✍ نستخدم **have to / has to / need to** للتعبير عن إلزام مفروض علينا.

✍ بعد **have to / has to / need to** يأتى الفعل فى المصدر (بدون أى إضافات).

✍ تأتى **has to / needs to** مع المفرد و **he - she - it**.

✍ تأتى **have to / need to** مع الجمع و **we - they - I - you**.

⇨ We **have to** go to school on time.
We **need to** go to school on time.

⇨ She **has to** get a passport to travel to London.

✍ فى حالة النفى نستخدم:

don't have to / doesn't have to
don't need to / doesn't need to / needn't **+ inf.**

- ★ She **doesn't have to** hurry, she isn't late for school.
- ★ They **don't have to** buy bread; there is much in the fridge.

✍ يتكون السؤال بـ (هل) كالآتى (ويكون معناه "هل يجب ....؟")

Do / Does + فاعل + have to / need to + inf. ... ?

★ Do you have to hurry? ➾ Yes, we do. ➾ No, we don't.

✍ يتكون السؤال بأداة استفهام كالآتى:

أداة استفهام + do / does + فاعل + have to / need to + inf. ... ?

★ What does he have to do to avoid traffic fines?
➾ He has to stick to the rules.

✍ لاحظ صيغة المبنى للمجهول كالآتى:

مفعول + have to / has to / need to + be + P.P.

★ I have to buy a present for my friend. (active)
★ A present has to be bought for my friend. (passive)

✍ للتعبير عن الضرورة فى الماضى نستخدم:

had to + inf.

★ I couldn't go out because I had to do my homework.
★ We had to do computer studies when we were at prep school.

✍ فى حالة النفى نستخدم:

didn't have to + inf.

★ She didn't have to hurry, she wasn't late for school.
★ We didn't have to do computer studies when we were at primary school.

✍ لاحظ أن:

had to + مصدر = It was necessary (for + ضمير مفعول / فاعل) to + مصدر

★ I had to do my homework, so I couldn't go out.
= It was necessary for me to do my homework.

① تعبر didn't have to عن أن الشيء كان غير ضرورى لذلك لم يفعله الشخص.
اما needn't have + p.p. تعبر عن أن الشخص فعل الشيء على الرغم انه كان غير ضرورى.

★ He didn't have to get up early. (so he didn't get up early)
★ He needn't have got up early. (but he got up early)

② نستخدم التركيب be to بمعنى يجب للتعبير عن الضرورة (am - is - are + to + inf.).

★ Nadia is to admit that she is lazy.

③ نستخدم التركيب need to be + P.P للتعبير عن المبني المجهول و يساوي need+ ing

★ This room needs to be cleaned.
= This room needs cleaning.

انتظروا!!!!!
كتاب مراجعة العمالقة
للصف الأول الثانوي
العمالقة
Giants
سلسلة GIANTS العمالقة

Exercise 04 Language Level 1

1. You .... smoke here. It's against the rules. **SB R.1**
   a. must b. mustn't c. should d. shouldn't
2. Students .... wear uniforms at this school. **SB R.1**
   a. must b. mustn't c. should d. shouldn't
3. You .... take an umbrella. It might rain. **SB R.1**
   a. must b. mustn't c. should d. shouldn't
4. You .... eat fast food every day. It's unhealthy. **SB R.1**
   a. must b. mustn't c. should d. shouldn't
5. Children .... play near busy roads. **SB R.1**
   a. must b. mustn't c. should d. has to
6. He .... get more sleep. He looks tired. **SB R.1**
   a. must b. mustn't c. will d. shouldn't
7. You .... be late for the interview. It's important. **SB R.1**
   a. must b. mustn't c. should d. has to
8. You .... ignore your homework. **SB R.1**
   a. must b. doesn't have to c. should d. shouldn't
9. Citizens .... respect the national laws. **SB**
   a. should b. must c. shouldn't d. mustn't
10. We .... stay late at work. The manager orders us. **SB**
    a. have to b. should c. don't have to d. shouldn't
11. You .... vote in elections if you want your voice to be heard. **SB**
    a. don't have to b. shouldn't c. mustn't d. must
12. Students .... treat their teachers and classmates politely. **SB**
    a. must b. mustn't c. don't have to d. shouldn't
13. You .... wear a helmet when riding a motorbike. It's the law. **SB**
    a. mustn't b. shouldn't c. must d. should
14. People .... recycle to protect the environment. **SB**
    a. should b. mustn't c. has to d. shouldn't
15. You .... eat so much sugar. It's not healthy. **SB**
    a. have to b. must c. should d. shouldn't
16. You .... take an umbrella. It's going to rain. **SB**
    a. mustn't b. should c. has to d. shouldn't
17. I .... finish this report by 5 pm. **SB**
    a. have to b. mustn't c. shouldn't d. has to
18. Which of the following sentences is structurally correct? **SB R.1**
    a. You must to study if you want to succeed
    b. You must be study if you want to succeed.
    c. You must study if you want to succeed.
    d. You must to study if you want succeed.
19. Which of the following sentences is structurally correct? **SB R.1**
    a. You should to drink more water. b. You should drank more water
    c. You should drink more water. d. You should drunk more water.
20. You .... smoke in a petrol station. **الاسماعيلية ٢٠٢٤**
    a. shouldn't b. must c. mustn't d. don't have to

21. You .... sleep in the same bedding without cleaning it for many days. القشن ٢٠٢٤
a. should b. needn't to c. mustn't d. must

22. You .... use your cellphone during your drive. It's banned. القناطر ٢٠٢٤ البحر الأحمر ٢٠٢٣
a. should b. mustn't c. must d. needn't

23. Drivers .... stop their cars when the traffic lights are red. صان الحجر ٢٠٢٤
a. mustn't b. must c. shouldn't d. needn't

24. Drivers .... exceed the speed limit while driving. منفلوط ٢٠٢٤
a. should b. shouldn't c. must d. mustn't

25. When you come to our town again, you .... come and see us. ميت سلسيل ٢٠٢٤
a. must b. has to c. ought d. should to

26. When you go to Egypt, you .... visit the Pyramids. They are fantastic! أبو تشت ٢٠٢٤
a. needn't b. must c. have d. need to

27. You .... take photographs here; it is a military area. دمياط ٢٠٢٤
a. mustn't b. shouldn't c. must d. should

28. We .... speak when the teacher's speaking. It is not allowed. الصالحية ٢٠٢٤
a. don't have to b. mustn't c. shouldn't d. oughtn't to

29. We .... respect and obey the law to live peacefully. سيدى غازى ٢٠٢٤
a. must b. needn't c. don't have to d. mustn't

30. There is a "No Smoking" sign. We .... smoke here. الجيزة ٢٠٢٤
a. shouldn't b. should c. mustn't d. must

31. It is advisable not to throw this tool away. You .... keep it. أولاد صقر ٢٠٢٤
a. mustn't b. might c. shouldn't d. must

Exercise 04 Language Level 2

32. It isn't .... to climb the trees here. You mustn't climb them. كفر الدوار ٢٠٢٣ البلينا ٢٠٢٤
a. allowed b. banned c. permission d. forbidden

33. Emam Ashour hurt his shoulder during the match and .... go to hospital for treatment.
a. should b. needs to c. had to d. has to

34. Do you .... tell your parents about your fault? ديرب نجم ٢٠٢٤
a. have to b. need c. should d. must

35. It's a .... to get a doctor at once. غرب الزقازيق ٢٠٢٤
a. necessary b. must c. should d. advice

36. You .... to eat cheese and drink milk to get calcium. نقادة ٢٠٢٤
a. must b. should c. ought d. mustn't

37. It is "No parking" here. You ...... to park in this area or you will pay a fine. العياط ٢٠٢٤
a. must b. mustn't c. aren't allowed d. needn't

38. There's a lot of dust on the bookshelf. You .... clean your room more often. سوهاج ٢٠٢٤
a. must b. mustn't c. have d. shouldn't

39. I've already watered the plants; you .... to do it again. شربين ٢٠٢٤
a. needn't b. shouldn't c. don't need d. mustn't

40. It is necessary to wear your uniform. You .... wear it. العمرانية ٢٠٢٤
a. should b. has to c. oughtn't d. have to

41. It's a/an .... for all of us to protect the country from any danger. قويسنا ٢٠٢٤
a. necessary b. must c. has to d. importance

42. **Tourists .... take their passports with them when they go abroad.** روكسي ٢٠٢٤

a. don't have to   d. needn't   c. must   d. mustn't

43. **Yesterday, I .... to stand on the bus as it was full.** طما ٢٠٢٤

a. had   b. have   c. must   d. needn't

44. **Our boss is so serious, so we all .... be in the office at 7.30.** ملوى ٢٠٢٤

a. must   b. have to   c. should   d. can

45. **Is it a/an .... to take this medicine?** السويس ٢٠٢٤ البحر الأحمر ٢٠٢٤

a. advise   b. unnecessary   c. necessary   d. must

46. **Drivers .... wear a seat belt while driving into the city.** الحسينية ٢٠٢٤

a. need   b. might   c. must have   d. have to

47. **He .... get up early because it was a holiday yesterday, so he slept till late.** روض الفرج ٢٠٢٤

a. needn't have   b. didn't have to   c. mustn't   d. shouldn't

48. **.......... you play music loudly? I have to concentrate on my study.** شرق الاسكندرية ٢٠٢٤

a. Can   b. Could   c. Ought to   d. Must

49. **Emad cut his leg and .... go to hospital for treatment.** الفيوم ٢٠٢٣

a. should   b. needs to   c. had to   d. has to

50. **I can give you a lift to the airport. You .... to take a taxi.** الوادي الجديد ٢٠٢٣

a. don't need   b. must   c. needn't   d. have

51. **Ali lost all his money, so he .... borrow some from a friend.** القوصية ٢٠٢٣

a. had to   b. needn't   c. didn't have to   d. has to

52. **Mohammed .... take his sunglasses because it was cloudy.** البلينا سوهاج ٢٠٢٣

a. had to   b. needn't   c. must   d. didn't have to

53. **You .... promote your career skills; it is highly recommended.** ƐM

a. shouldn't   b. had to   c. would prefer   d. ought to

54. **They all .... be careful to avoid danger on the working site last time.** ƐM

a. have to   b. had to   c. needed   d. should

55. **It .... necessary to check out before 12 p.m., so I had to leave on time.** ƐM

a. is   b. will be   c. was   d. wasn't

Exercise 04 Language Level 3

56. **.......... drive a car without holding a driving license: it's against the law.** طوخ ٢٠٢٤

a. Never   b. Do   c. Doesn't   d. Won't

57. **I think you .... sleep early and get up early to be healthy. I only advise you.** العياط ٢٠٢٤

a. ought   b. can't   c. might   d. had better

58. **We .... run to the museum because it was already closed when we got there.**

a. needn't have   b. doesn't have to   c. don't have to   d. don't need to

59. **She .... do this work today because she can do it tomorrow.** البلينا ٢٠٢٤

a. mustn't   b. doesn't have to   c. needn't   d. b & c

60. **You must try some of this cake. This's a/an ....** قليوب ٢٠٢٤

a. warm invitation   b. law   c. deduction   d. strong reminder

61. **A: I've got a cold. B: Then you'd .... stay in bed.** قليوب ٢٠٢٤

a. have to   b. need to   c. should   d. better

62. **Your essay has some mistakes. It .... again.** الدلنجات ٢٠٢٣ الفيوم ٢٠٢٤

a. should revise   b. should have revised   c. shouldn't be revised   d. should be revised

63. **Why must school rules .... ?** منيا القمح ٢٠٢٤
a. follow **b.** followed **c.** be followed **d.** be following

64. **I don't know what .... to solve this problem; I need your urgent advice.** EM
a. should I do **b.** did I have to do **c.** I should do **d.** I needn't do

65. **I advise my brother not to stay up late. This means he .... stay up late.** EM
a. would rather **b.** should **c.** ought not **d.** had better not

66. **The car .... You are starting to lose control.** كفر الدوار ٢٠٢٢
a. must be stopped **b.** should not stop **c.** must stop **d.** should have stopped

67. **You .... cut down that tree, it was so beautiful.** أسيوط ٢٠٢٢
a. shouldn't **b.** mustn't **c.** shouldn't have **d.** didn't have to

68. **You .... to the factory yesterday as it was an official holiday.** شبين القناطر ٢٠٢٢
a. needn't go **b.** had to **c.** needn't have gone **d.** mustn't go

69. **You mustn't eat too much salt. This is ....** ههيا ٢٠٢٢
a. a rule or law **b.** advice **c.** suggestion **d.** very strong advice

70. **You missed a great party last night. You .... come. Why didn't you?**
a. must **b.** shouldn't **c.** should have **d.** should

71. **It is .... get up early.**
a. better to **b.** better **c.** must **d.** necessity

72. **Why must you mispronounce my name every time? This is a ....**
a. prohibition **b.** necessity **c.** criticism **d.** suggestion

73. **You mustn't smoke in sleeping rooms. This is a ....**
a. prohibition **b.** necessity **c.** criticism **d.** suggestion

74. **You needn't answer all the questions. Answer 2 out of 6. Needn't here expresses ....**
a. lack of necessity **b.** necessity **c.** prohibition **d.** impossibility

75. **Why did he get up early? He .... got up so early. He could have stayed in bed longer.**
a. had to **b.** must have **c.** needn't have **d.** needn't

76. **"You must have dinner with me." This shows ....**
a. an invitation **b.** a strong advice **c.** a must **d.** a recommendation

77. **I .... the room because my mother had already done it. I found it clean and well-kept.**
a. needn't have cleaned **b.** mustn't clean
c. didn't have to tidy **d.** needn't clean

78. **I really must buy my friend a present on his birthday party. This shows ....**
a. lack of necessity **b.** regret **c.** inner feeling **d.** ability

Rewrite the sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning.

1. **It's necessary to wear a seat belt.** **(must) SB R.1**
2. **It's a bad idea to eat junk food every day.** **(shouldn't) SB R.1**
3. **It's important to apologize when you're wrong.** **(should) SB R.1**
4. **It's necessary to lock the door at night.** **(must) SB R.1**
5. **It's a bad idea to drive without a licence.** **(shouldn't) SB R.1**
6. **It's recommended to exercise regularly.** **(should) SB R.1**
7. **It's important to protect public property.** **(should) SB**
8. **It's a good idea to learn about your country's history.** **(should) SB**
9. **It is necessary to obey traffic rules.** **(must) SB**
10. **It's not allowed to cheat in exams.** **(mustn't) SB**
11. **It was necessary for him to wear a uniform.** **(had to)**

Unit 2

Hands Help, Hearts Care

Lessons
3 Voluntary work
4 Serving the Community in Times of Danger

Key Vocabulary

rescue (n/v)	انقاذ/ ينقذ	duty (n)	واجب	serve (v)	يخدم/ يقدم(طعام..)
protect (v)	يحمى	flood (n/v)	فيضان/ يفيض	service (n)	خدمة
obligation (n)	إلزام	risk (n/v)	مخاطرة/ يخاطر	reward (n/v)	مكافأة/ يكافئ
emergency (n)	طوارئ	risky (adj)	خطير	visible (adj)	مرئى
trust (n/v)	ثقة/ يثق	leadership (n)	قيادة	community (n)	مجتمع

Main Vocabulary

firefighter (n)	رجل اطفاء	comfort (n/v)	راحة/ يريح / يواسي	rustling (n)	حفيف (صوت احتكاك خفيف)
trap (n/v)	فخ/ يوقع بالفخ	truth (n)	حقيقة	paid (adj)	مدفوع
heat (n/v)	حرارة/ يسخن	breathe (v)	يتنفس	texture (n)	نسيج / ملمس
accident (n)	حادثة	skin (n)	جلد	participate (v)	يشارك
burning (adj)	مشتعل/ حارق	assist (v)	يساعد	partner (n)	شريك
empathy (n)	تعاطف	financial (adj)	مالى	society (n)	مجتمع
patience (n)	صبر	employment (n)	توظيف/ عمل	voluntary (adj)	تطوعى
satisfaction (n)	رضاء	practical (adj)	عملى	worth (n/v/adj)	قيمة/ يستحق/ذو قيمة
motivation (n)	تحفيز	professional (n/adj)	محترف	responsibility (n)	مسئولية
wealth (n)	ثروة	expect (v)	يتوقع	matter (n/v)	قضية/ يهم
essential (adj)	ضرورى/ جوهرى	source (n)	مصدر	elderly (adj)	كبير السن
background (n)	خلفية	connection (n)	صلة/ علاقة	social (adj)	اجتماعى
cooperate (v)	يتعاون	respect (n/v)	يحترم / احترام	individual (n/adj)	فرد/ فردى
cooperation (n)	تعاون	teamwork (n)	عمل جماعى	effort (n)	جهد
shake (v)	يهز	pride (n)	فخر	guide (n/v)	مرشد /يرشد
safety (n)	سلامة	kindness (n)	طيبة	helmet (n)	خوذة
strengthen (v)	يقوي / يعزز	drowning (n)	الغرق	sob (n/v)	يبكي بشدة / بكاء شديد
fear (n)	خوف	ladder (n)	سلّم	choice (n)	اختيار
contribution (n)	مساهمة	lifeguard (n)	منقذ بحري / منقذ سباحة	crowded (adj)	مزدحم
value (n/v)	قيمة/ يقيم	scenario (n)	سيناريو		

Collocations

develop empathy	ينمي تعاطف	face a challenge	يواجه تحدى
bring joy and comfort	يتسبب فى البهجة و الراحة	make a difference	يحدث فرقًا
give practical skills	يعطى مهارات عملية	create pride	يتسبب في الفخر
take risk	يخاطر	build social connections	يبنى روابط اجتماعية
take action	يتصرف	gain personal skills	يكتسب مهارات شخصية
share experiences	يشارك الخبرات	suffer a loss	يعانى خسارة
experience danger	يتعرض للخطر/يواجه الخطر	serve the community	يخدم المجتمع

Expressions & Prepositions

community service	خدمة المجتمع	put out	يطفى/ يخمد
in times of danger	في أوقات الخطر	participate in	يشارك في
develop empathy and patience	ينمي التعاطف والصبر	stay with you forever	يبقى معك للأبد
measured in money	يقاس بالمال	rescue from	ينقذ من
a source of satisfaction	مصدر رضا	paid employment	وظيفة مدفوعة الأجر
expect financial rewards	يتوقع مكافات مالية	voluntary work	عمل تطوعي
freshly-cut grass	عشب طازج	believe in	يؤمن ب
no matter the cost	لا يهم التكلفة	argue for	يناصر من اجل
worth every risk	يستحق المخاطرة	argue against	يعارض ضد
problem-solving	حل المشكلات	wait for	ينتظر

Definitions

rescue	ينقذ/ انقاذ	▶ to save someone from danger
risky	خطير	▶ involving the possibility of danger or loss (not safe)
obligation	الزام	▶ something you must do
emergency	طوارئ	▶ a sudden, dangerous situation
trust	ثقة/ يثق	▶ to believe in someone or something
protect	يحمى	▶ to keep safe
duty	واجب	▶ something you have to do because it is your job or it is morally right

Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym	Antonym
emergency	طوارئ	crisis, urgency, disaster	safety, security, peace
obligation	الزام	commitment, duty, responsibility	freedom, choice, option
protect	يحمى	defend, guard, preserve	harm, endanger, attack
risk	خطر/ يخاطر	danger, threat, hazard	safety, security, assurance
risky	خطير	dangerous, hazardous, unsafe	safe, secure, harmless
rescue	ينقذ	save, recover, free	abandon, harm, endanger
truth	حقيقة	fact, reality, accuracy	dishonesty, deception, lie
trust	ثقة/ يثق	faith, confidence, belief	doubt, suspicion, mistrust
empathy	تعاطف	compassion, understanding, sympathy	coldness, cruelty, insensitivity
practical	عملى	useful, realistic, sensible	impractical, unrealistic, theoretical
essential	ضرورى	vital, necessary, important	unnecessary, optional, trivial
wealth	ثروة	riches, fortune, prosperity	poverty, destitution, need
cooperate	يتعاون	collaborate, assist, unite	oppose, resist, hinder

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
protect	يحمى	protection	حماية	protective	وقائى
risk	يخاطر	risk	خطر	risky	خطير
trust	يثق	trust	ثقة	trusted	موثوق
motivate	يحفز	motivation	تحفيز	motivated	محفز
comfort	يريح	comfort	راحة	comfortable	مريح
burn	يحرق	burn	حرق	burning	مشتعل/ حارق

Language Notes

Notice the Difference

teach	يعلم	**learn**	يتعلم
across	عبر	**cross**	يعبر
guide	يرشد/ مرشد	**guard**	حارس/ يحرس
wealth	ثروة	**wealthy**	ثرى
visible	مرئى	**virtual**	افتراضى
flood	فيضان	**drought**	جفاف
expect	يتوقع	**except**	ماعدا
drown	يغرق (الكائنات الحية)	**sink**	يغرق (تغمره المياة)
professional	محترف (يشتغل كوظيفة)	**amateur**	هاوي (يمارس للمتعة)
strength	قوة	**strengthen**	يقوى
patience	صبر	**patient**	مريض/ صبور

win, beat, gain & earn

win	يفوز / يكسب (كأس / مباراة / .....)	▶ AL Ahly will **win** the cup. I hope so. ▶ He **won** a prize in a competition (for literature).
beat	يهزم /يتغلب على (شخص أو فريق)	▶ Egypt could **beat** France.
gain	يكتسب /يحصل على شيء معنوي مفيد (خبرة / معرفة / معلومات / شهرة) وتشير إلى زيادة في الوزن والسرعة والكمية	▶ You **gained** much information from the meeting. ▶ Aya **gained** 3 kilos in weight last month. ▶ The plane **gained** speed to take off.
earn	يكسب (قوت / رزق) مقابل عمل	▶ People work hard to **earn** money.

breath, breathe, breeze & breathing

breathe	يتنفس	▶ Remember to **breathe** deeply.
breath	نفس / شهيق	▶ Take a deep **breath**.
breathing	التنفس / عملية التنفس	▶ **Breathing** exercises help relaxation.
breeze	نسيم خفيف	▶ A cool **breeze** is blowing.

reward, rewarding & award

reward	مكافأة مقابل جهد أو فعل جيد	▶ He was **rewarded** for helping the old man.
award	جائزة رسمية	▶ She received an **award** for her painting.
rewarding	مجزي / مرضي	▶ Teaching children is very **rewarding**.

visible, invisible , visual & virtual

visible	مرئى(يمكن رؤيته)	▶ The stars are **visible** at night.
invisible	غير مرئى	▶ Air is **invisible**, but we need it to live.
visual	بصرى	▶ The movie had great **visual** effects.
virtual	افتراضى	▶ We had a **virtual** meeting on Zoom.

☜ فعل help ياتى بعده المصدر مع to او بدون to:

- ★ Toka **helped** Jana **do** her homework.
- ★ Toka **helped** Jana **to do** her homework.

Reading

" Serving the Community in Times of Danger "

Before you start: ➲ Think and discuss in pairs:

1) Answer the following questions.

1. What does "community service" mean to you?
2. Can helping others ever be dangerous?
3. Would you risk your safety to protect others? Why or why not?

2) Read the following passage

My name is Radwan, and I work as a firefighter(1) in Alexandria. Many people think our job is just putting out(2) fires, but it's much more than that. We rescue(3) people from car accidents, help during floods(4), and sometimes save animals trapped in dangerous places.

The truth is, our work can be risky(5). I have entered burning buildings where smoke made it hard to see and breathe. I've stood on(6) shaking ladders in the middle of the night, with the heat almost burning my skin. Sadly, I have also seen lives lost before we could reach them. These moments stay with me forever.

Yet, we do it because we believe in obligation(7) – the duty to help each other, no matter the cost. In every emergency(8), we must act quickly, stay calm, and trust(9) our training. We don't think about fear in those moments; we think about the people waiting for(10) us. I am proud to serve(11) my community. I know that my work saves lives, and that is worth(12) every risk. When you help others, you are not just doing a job – you are protecting(13) hope itself.

١) رجل مطافى
٢) يطفئ
٣) ينقذ
٤) فيضان
٥) خطير
٦) يقف على
٧) الزام
٨) طوارئ
٩) يثق
١٠) ينتظر
١١) يخدم
١٢) يستحق
١٣) يحمى

Listening

Voluntary work is an important part of building stronger communities and better societies. Unlike paid employment(1), voluntary work is done freely, without expecting financial rewards(2). People of all ages can participate, from young students to retired (3) professionals, and their contributions make a visible difference in the lives of others.

One of the main values of voluntary work is that it teaches responsibility. When a person gives time to help others, they learn that their actions matter. For example, students who volunteer(4) in hospitals or schools develop empathy (5) and patience.

They realize that even simple tasks, like reading stories to children or assisting elderly(6) patients, bring joy and comfort. Everyone has to remember that helping others is essential. Voluntary work also strengthens social connections. People from different backgrounds meet.

They must cooperate(7) and share experiences. This cooperation builds understanding and respect across cultures. Moreover, volunteering often gives individuals practical(8) skills such as teamwork, problem-solving, and leadership which later help them in professional life.

Finally, voluntary work is a source(9) of personal satisfaction(10) so we all should participate in it. Knowing that one's efforts have supported others creates pride and motivation.

It proves that true wealth is not only measured in money, but also in kindness and service.

١) توظيف / عمل
٢) مكافآت
٣) متقاعد
٤) متطوع / يتطوع
٥) تعاطف
٦) مسن / كبار السن
٧) يتعاون
٨) عملي / واقعي
٩) مصدر
١٠) رضا / إشباع

Exercise 04 Key Vocabulary

1. She showed enormous courage when she .... him from the fire. **SB R-1**
   a. pretend b. reserved c. dropped d. rescued
2. .... is a sudden and dangerous situation that needs quick action. **SB R-1**
   a. Emergency b. Responsibility c. Community d. Reservation
3. Going out in the storm was very.......... . **SB**
   a. safe b. easy c. risky d. comfortable
4. The lifeguard was able to .... the child from drowning. **SB**
   a. ignore b. rescue c. leave d. hurt
5. We .... our teachers to guide us. **SB**
   a. doubt b. suspect c. forget d. trust
6. Wearing a uniform is not a choice, it is a/an .... **SB**
   a. obligation b. forget c. hobby d. weakness

7. **A fire in a crowded building is a serious ....** **SB**
a. holiday b. emergency c. routine d. plan

8. **Wearing a helmet will help .... you during an accident.** **SB**
a. harm b. endanger c. ignore d. protect

9. **It is the soldier's .... to defend his country.**
a. duty b. help c. risk d. trust

10. **At the school canteen, students line up and wait for the worker to .... them food.**
a. improve b. serve c. renew d. slip

11. **As a student, you have an .... to attend classes regularly.**
a. obligation b. operation c. opinion d. emergency

12. **Crossing a busy street without looking is a big ....**
a. role b. reward c. rest d. risk

13. **The coach gave the team a day off as a/an .... for winning the match.**
a. reward b. request c. record d. award

14. **In case of fire, students must leave the building quickly through the .... exit.**
a. risky b. voluntary c. emergency d. rusty

15. **Children usually .... their parents to guide them.**
a. try b. trust c. conflict d. trade

16. **At night, the road signs were not easily .... because of the heavy fog.**
a. visible b. valuable c. virtual d. violent

17. **During the earthquake, the firemen tried to......... the people trapped under the building.**
a. repair b. survive c. rescue d. isolate

18. **The mobile phone company promised to improve its internet .... in rural areas.**
a. obligation b. emergency c. season d. service

19. **The team succeeded because the coach showed strong .... during the final match.**
a. membership b. workshop c. leadership d. scholarship

20. **During the festival, the whole .... gathered in the main square.**
a. emergency b. community c. service d. communication

21. **The river rose so high that it caused a .... in the nearby villages.**
a. drought b. flight c. flood d. reward

22. **It is very .... to drive fast on an icy road.**
a. voluntary b. risky c. respectful d. ready

23. **Wearing a helmet can .... you from head injuries while riding a bike.**
a. trap b. improve c. worth d. protect

Exercise 04 Main Vocabulary

24. **When the building caught fire, the .... arrived quickly to put it out.**
a. firefighter b. farmer c. fisherman d. photographer

25. **The kind words of his teacher gave him great .... before the exam.**
a. concert b. comfort c. contact d. conflict

26. **The students liked the .... lesson because they could do experiments themselves.**
a. traditional b. political c. visible d. practical

27. **The hunter set a/an .... to catch the wild animal.**
a. emergency b. pride c. trap d. source

28. **It is always better to tell the .... than to lie.**
a. truth b. trial c. trouble d. trick

29. The doctor told him to .... deeply before the check-up.
a. bring **b.** breath **c.** break **d.** breathe

30. He found new .... in a big company after finishing university.
a. experiment **b.** operation **c.** employment **d.** trap

31. Students were asked to .... in the school sports day.
a. reward **b.** participate **c.** risk **d.** respect

32. They used water to stop the .... car.
a. bright **b.** shaking **c.** broken **d.** burning

33. The nurse will .... the doctor during the operation.
a. assist **b.** reward **c.** arrest **d.** trap

34. Good nurses show .... when they care about how patients feel.
a. money **b.** noise **c.** empathy **d.** mountain

35. Many families face .... difficulties when prices go up.
a. historical **b.** financial **c.** delicious **d.** environmental

36. In a healthy ...., people respect the rights of others.
a. community **b.** responsibility **c.** emergency **d.** drowning

37. He felt great .... when his hard work was rewarded with success.
a. emergency **b.** accident **c.** employment **d.** satisfaction

38. He is a .... football player who earns money for playing.
a. friendly **b.** amateur **c.** professional **d.** teenager

39. Food, water, and air are .... for human life.
a. essential **b.** colourful **c.** trivial **d.** noisy

40. The speech of the coach gave the players strong .... to win the match.
a. difference **b.** motivation **c.** holiday **d.** campaign

41. This course gives students .... skills they can use in real life.
a. imaginary **b.** useless **c.** theoretical **d.** practical

42. The film is really .... watching; it gives a strong message.
a. boring **b.** wasteful **c.** worth **d.** meaningless

43. Regular practice will .... your English vocabulary.
a. participate **b.** expect **c.** strengthen **d.** cooperate

44. Students should .... with their teachers to achieve success.
a. cooperate **b.** fight **c.** ignore **d.** disturb

45. .... is necessary to win in football matches.
a. Difference **b.** Teamwork **c.** Emergency **d.** Silence

46. The Nile is the main .... of water in Egypt.
a. imaginary **b.** useless **c.** pride **d.** source

47. The man was saved from .... by the lifeguard.
a. drowning **b.** wealth **c.** sinking **d.** running

48. After hearing the bad news, she started to .... quietly.
a. participate **b.** shout **c.** sob **d.** sing

Exercise 04 Expressions, Prepositions, Derivatives & Language Notes

49. Reading stories helps children .... empathy for others.
a. make **b.** develop **c.** take **d.** lose

50. During the meeting, each student had to .... experiences with the group.
a. disable **b.** hide **c.** do **d.** share

51. Volunteers visit hospitals to .... joy and comfort to patients.
a. make b. bring c. carry d. push

52. Winning the match will .... pride among the players.
a. feel b. take c. create d. make

53. You should never .... a risk without thinking carefully.
a. take b. do c. develop d. create

54. Every student must .... a challenge while learning new things.
a. stay b. face c. escape d. gain

55. The company had to .... a loss after the fire.
a. suffer b. celebrate c. enjoy d. deny

56. Firefighters often .... danger when saving people.
a. lose b. experiment c. leave d. experience

57. Firefighters arrived quickly to .... the fire before it spread.
a. turn on b. put out c. bring in d. build up

58. All students are encouraged to participate .... the school sports day.
a. in b. of c. on d. with

59. The lifeguard managed to rescue the boy .... drowning.
a. of b. from c. for d. on

60. Some scientists argue .... using plastic bags because they harm the environment.
a. for b. with c. against d. in

Choose the (Two) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given.

61. During the storm, the family had to leave the house because of an emergency. The synonym of the underlined word "emergency" is......... .
a. peace b. crisis c. safety d. urgency e. security

62. The firefighters managed to rescue the child from the burning house. The synonym of the underlined word "rescue" is ....
a. endanger b. harm c. save d. abandon e. recover

63. The fire alarm was not a real emergency; it was just a test. The antonym of the underlined word "emergency" is ....
a. urgency b. disaster c. security d. peace e. crisis

64. Students have no obligation to join the trip; it's optional. The antonym of the underlined word "obligation" is ....
a. responsibility b. duty c. commitment d. option e. choice

65. Vaccines protect people from dangerous diseases. The synonym of the underlined word "protect" is ....
a. guard b. defend c. harm d. endanger e. attack

66. He refused to take any risk and stayed at home. The antonym of the underlined word "risk" is ....
a. safety b. danger c. threat d. security e. hazard

67. Skydiving is a very risky sport. The synonym of the underlined word "risky" is ....
a. harmless b. secure c. unsafe d. safe e. dangerous

68. The witness always tell the truth in court. The synonym of "truth" is ....
a. reality b. deception c. lie d. fact e. dishonesty

69. He didn't trust her story. The antonym of the underlined word "trust" is ....
a. mistrust b. doubt c. faith d. confidence e. believe

70. The students enjoyed the practical science lesson. The synonym of "practical" is ....
a. applicable b. theoretical c. impractical d. realistic e. unrealistic

تستخدم must + inf. للتعبير عن إلزام شخصي والمشاعر القوية والأمنيات وعمل الدعوات والنصيحة القوية وتذكير أنفسنا بشيء.

★ I **must work** hard for the exams next week.	الزام شخصي
★ I **must buy** a present for my mother.	مشاعر قوية
★ You **must come** to my party tonight.	دعوة قوية
★ You **must stop smoking**.	نصيحة قوية

لاحظ الاختلاف بين
must - have to
need to

تستخدم have to / has to + infinitive مع القواعد أو عندما لا تمتلك اختيار لفعل شيء ما (مضطر إلى).

- ★ We **have to go** to school every day.
- ★ My father **doesn't have to** work today because it is a holiday.
- ★ We **don't have to** get up early. It's a holiday.

تستخدم need to + inf. للتعبير عن الحاجة إلى شيء معين ونفيها :don't need to / needn't + inf.

- ★ Hassan **needs to** go to the bank after he finishes work.
- ★ I **don't need to buy** / **needn't buy** a new pen. I've already got one.

must
mustn't
should
shouldn't
needn't
+ مصدر بدون to

do - don't
does - doesn't
did - didn't
will - won't
+ have to / need to

have
has
had
need(s)
+ to مصدر
to اجباري

had to+ inf.
didn't have to + inf.
needn't have + P.P
should have + P.P
الماضي

don't have to
= don't need to
= needn't
+ مصدر
عدم الضرورة

have to
has to
had to
need to
should (shouldn't)
must (mustn't)
be + P.P
المجهول

Exercise On Language Level 1

1. A visitor to a hospital .... smoke. It is banned. المنتزة أول ٢٠٢٤
   a. needn't b. mustn't c. must d. don't have to
2. A visitor to a hospital .... stop smoking there. It's banned. مطروح ٢٠٢٤
   a. must b. mustn't c. have to d. needn't
3. She doesn't .... take this medicine because she isn't ill. وسط المحلة ٢٠٢٤
   a. need b. must c. have to d. can
4. People .... smoke in public places. It's forbidden. فاقوس ٢٠٢٤
   a. must b. should c. shouldn't d. mustn't
5. "You .... never smoke again. It is very dangerous for you," the doctor said. أشمون ٢٠٢٤
   a. must b. mustn't c. oughtn't d. ought
6. We .... in a gas station. It's against the law. الشيخ زايد ٢٠٢٤
   a. doesn't have to smoke b. have to smoke c. shouldn't smoke d. mustn't smoke
7. It is forbidden to smoke here. You .... smoke here. شمال سيناء ٢٠٢٣
   a. mustn't b. must c. have to d. had to
8. It is illegal to break the law; we all .... obey it. EM
   a. mustn't b. oughtn't c. must d. ought
9. You .... to eat a lot of sweets; this isn't healthy. EM
   a. shouldn't b. ought not c. mustn't d. needn't
10. You .... keep away from uncovered electric wires or you will be electrocuted. EM
    a. ought not b. mustn't c. ought d. must
11. You .... forget to use a tissue when you sneeze. فوة كفر الشيخ ٢٠٢٣
    a. mustn't b. aren't c. didn't d. haven't
12. You .... wash your hands after working in the garden. البلينا سوهاج ٢٠٢٣
    a. ought b. mustn't c. should d. shouldn't
13. Student: What .... I do to keep healthy?
    Teacher: I advise you to eat healthy food and do more sports. EM
    a. ought b. mustn't c. should d. did

Exercise On Language Level 2

14. Old cans and bottles must .... غرب شبرا ٢٠٢٤
    a. be recycling b. recycle c. be recycled d. recycling
15. Yesterday, I .... stay at home with my little sister as my parents weren't out. سمالوط ٢٠٢٤
    a. must b. didn't have to c. need to d. had to
16. You .... to go to the supermarket. There is enough food in the refrigerator. الاسكندرية ٢٠٢٣
    a. needn't b. doesn't have c. don't need d. mustn't
17. They are not here. They .... leave early. الباجور ٢٠٢٤
    a. had to b. needn't c. must d. should have
18. It's a .... to turn right. Don't turn left. دكرنس ٢٠٢٤
    a. necessary b. must c. should d. mustn't
19. This shirt is very tight, you .... to try another one. شبرا ٢٠٢٤
    a. should b. ought c. must d. are banned
20. You .... to take a taxi. I can give you a lift. إسنا ٢٠٢٤
    a. needn't b. don't need c. shouldn't d. doesn't have

21. He has plenty of time, so he .... hurry. اطفيح ٢٠٢٤
a. doesn't need b. don't need to c. hasn't got d. needn't

22. I .... do the shopping because my mother was sick. البلينا ٢٠٢٤
a. must b. have to c. didn't have to d. had to

23. Students mustn't use their mobile phones during the lessons. This means it's ....
a. forbidden b. not necessary c. necessary d. optional

24. You .... buy a pen. I'll lend you one. الاسماعيلية ٢٠٢٣
a. have b. needn't c. don't have to d. b and c

25. You .... do the shopping now. I'll do it later. أسيوط ٢٠٢٣
a. mustn't b. needn't c. must d. have to

26. It's .... to smoke in a factory. الشرقية ٢٠٢٣
a. necessary b. useful c. good d. banned

27. I advise you .... unhealthy food. EM
a. not eat b. to not eat c. not to eat d. don't eat

28. Your car must .... ; it is no longer safe for the journey. EM
a. to be rechecked b. been rechecked c. recheck d. be rechecked

29. You .... go to bed early to be in good health. EM
a. would like b. would prefer c. had better d. prefer

30. You .... eat this food as it smells bad. It is harmful. طما ٢٠٢٤
a. must b. should c. mustn't d. don't have to

31. Is it a/an .... to wear gloves before I start work in this factory? EM
a. necessary b. must c. advisable d. advice

Exercise 04 Language Level 3

32. We .... enough time, so we needn't hurry, so let's walk. شبين القناطر ٢٠٢٤
a. don't have b. no longer have c. still have d. have no

33. You should take some rest. It's ....
a. advisable b. necessity c. a must d. inadvisable

34. Hany shouldn't have talked rudely to his teacher. This means Hany.......... to his teacher. الدلنجات ٢٠٢٣
a. didn't talk rudely b. talked politely c. talked rudely d. doesn't talk rudely

35. Cars .... in front of the entrance of houses, this is not allowed. القوصية ٢٠٢٣
a. mustn't be parked b. shouldn't be parked
c. must to park d. must park

36. You must come and have dinner with me. This is a .... طوخ ٢٠٢٤
a. must b. necessity c. warm invitation d. suggestion

37. The car .... after such a terrible accident. I had to pay a lot of money. EM
a. had to repair b. can't have been repaired
c. must repair d. had to be repaired

38. I really want to be in shape. Can you tell me what .... ? بسيون ٢٠٢٤
a. I have to do b. do I have to do c. have I to do d. must I do

39. 'You mustn't eat foods with a lot of salt or fat in them." This shows .... EM
a. possibility b. strong advice c. lack of necessity d. probability

40. No one .... to take this medicine since they are very well. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
a. has b. don't have c. have d. doesn't have

41. The driver .... take a side road.
a. are to b. need c. is to d. have to

42. "I needn't have bought sweets". This means that the speaker .... sweets. إسنا ٢٠٢٣

a. bought
b. didn't buy
c. had to buy
d. should have bought

43. She had already had her lunch. You .... her all these sandwiches. غرب طنطا ٢٠٢٤ القاهرة ٢٠٢٣

a. don't need to buy
b. needn't have bought
c. needn't buy
d. didn't have to buy

44. Aya had extra groceries at home. She .... any more so she didn't buy. كفر الشيخ ٢٠٢٤

a. doesn't have to buy
b. mustn't buy
c. needn't have bought
d. didn't have to buy

45. You .... more sugar: the juice became too sweet. EM

a. didn't have to add
b. had to add
c. mustn't have added
d. needn't have added

46. You mustn't park outside the entrance. 'mustn't' is used here to talk about ....

a. criticism and blame
b. rules and laws
c. no obligation
d. invitation

47. All the tasks .... before the end of this month. جرجا ٢٠٢٣

a. should have finish
b. should have been finished
c. should finish
d. shouldn't finish

48. Your writing is full of mistakes. You .... it carefully. شبرا ٢٠٢٤

a. needn't have checked
b. should have checked
c. must have checked
d. didn't have to check

49. This building is cracked. It .... or someone may be killed. غرب المنصورة ٢٠٢٤

a. must evacuate
b. must be evacuated
c. should be evacuated
d. should evacuate

50. I advise my brother not to stay up late. This means he .... stay up late. قلين ٢٠٢٤

a. would rather
b. should
c. ought not
d. had better not

51. It's better .... your keyboard frequently. الإبراهيمية ٢٠٢٤

a. clean
b. cleaning
c. to clean
d. to cleaning

52. Which of the following doesn't show lack of necessity? EM

a. You needn't hurry; you aren't late.
b. It isn't important to rewrite your composition.
c. We don't have to sleep early; tomorrow is a holiday.
d. She had to tell the police about that accident.

53. Which of the following doesn't show prohibition? قلين ٢٠٢٤

a. You mustn't lean against the door of the metro.
b. You aren't allowed to take photographs here.
c. You needn't buy more bread today.
d. You aren't permitted to drive your car without wearing a seat belt.

54. Which of the following doesn't show advice? EM

a. It's advisable to wear cotton clothes in the winter.
b. You should follow these tips to avoid making mistakes.
c. It's very necessary to follow the coach's instructions.
d. You ought to be more careful when crossing the street.

55. Which of the following doesn't show necessity? EM

a. It's necessary to hurry to catch the train.
b. You should work hard to achieve more progress.
c. The teacher orders us to follow school rules.
d. It's a must to take the medicine on time.

1) Causative السببية

القاعدة دي معناها مش أنا اللي عملت الحاجة دي..لا دا شخص هو اللي عملها مكانى.

فاعل +
make - let – have + مفعول + inf. → مصدر بدون to
get / allow / force / cause + مفعول + to + مصدر
have – get + مفعول + P.P → (المبنى للمجهول)

- ★ He didn't let them smoke.
- ★ He didn't allow them to smoke.
- ★ Too much rain causes the river to flood.
- ★ I got my room cleaned.

1. The government shouldn't let anyone .... in public places.
   a. smoke b. to smoking c. to smoke d. smoking
2. The government shouldn't allow anyone .... in public places.
   a. smoke b. to smoking c. to smoke d. smoking

خاص بالطلاب المتفوقين

3. We know what .... the lake get polluted.
   a. gets b. makes c. causes d. allows
4. We know what .... the lake to get polluted.
   a. lets b. makes c. causes d. reasons
5. I always get my car .... every month.
   a. check b. to check c. checking d. checked

2) make & be made to لاحظ الفرق بين

فاعل + make + مفعول + مصدر / مفعول + V.be + made to + مصدر

- ★ Toka makes Jana tidy her room.
- ★ Jana is made to tidy her room.

6. I was made .... my homework again.
   a. do b. to do c. done d. doing
7. A lot of students .... repeat their homework again because they did it wrong.
   a. were made to b. made to c. made d. was made

لاحظ ما يأتى بعد allow

فاعل + allow + مفعول + to + inf. / فاعل + allow + ing أو اسم → بدون مفعول

فاعل + v.be + allowed + to + inf. → في المجهول

- ★ My father doesn't allow my relatives to smoke in our flat.
- ★ My relatives aren't allowed to smoke in our flat.
- ★ My father doesn't allow smoking in our flat.

8. Do your parents allow you .... out late at weekends?
   a. stay b. to stay c. to staying d. staying
9. Do your parents allow .... out late at weekends?
   a. stay b. to stay c. to staying d. staying
10. Are you allowed .... out late at weekends?
   a. stay b. to stay c. to staying d. staying

Writing

A descriptive essay

Definition

- A descriptive essay is writing that makes the reader imagine they are in the place or situation.

المقال الوصفي هو كتابة تجعل القارئ يتخيل أنه داخل المكان أو الموقف.

Tructure

1. **Introduction** – introduce the topic and why it matters.

   المقدمة: قدّم الموضوع ولماذا هو مهم

2. **Body Paragraphs** – describe using senses (sight, hearing, smell, taste, touch).

   الفقرات: استخدم الحواس الخمس في الوصف (البصر، السمع، الشم، التذوق، اللمس)

3. **Conclusion** – summarize and express your feeling.

   الخاتمة: لخص وشارك شعورك

Senses

Sight	البصر	colors, shapes, size.
Hearing	السمع	noises, whispers, music.
Smell	الشم	flowers, salty air, food.
Taste	التذوق	sweet, salty, spicy.
Touch	اللمس	soft, rough, cold, warm.

Language Tools

- Use adjectives (describing words) → "tall trees, cold wind".
- Use adverbs (describing actions)→ she cried softly.

استخدم الصفات (للوصف) والظروف (لتوضيح الأفعال)

السمات الرئيسية للمقال الوصفى

Key Characteristics of a Descriptive Essay

Feature السمة	Description الوصف
Focused Topic موضوع مركّز	Talks about one main subject in detail. يتحدث عن موضوع واحد رئيسي بتفصيل
Sensory Language لغة الحواس	Uses words that make you see, hear, smell, taste, or feel something. يستخدم كلمات تجعلك ترى أو تسمع أو تشم أو تتذوق أو تشعر بشيء
Imagery الخيال التصويري	Helps the reader picture things clearly in their mind يساعد القارئ على تخيّل الأشياء بوضوح في ذهنه
Organized Structure بنية منظمة	Ideas are in order (by place, time, or theme). الأفكار مرتبة حسب المكان أو الزمن أو الموضوع
Figurative Language اللغة المجازية	Uses creative comparisons like similes and metaphors يستخدم مقارنات إبداعية مثل التشبيهات والاستعارات
Emotional Impact الأثر العاطفي	Shares a feeling or mood, like happiness, peace, or sadness. ينقل شعورًا أو مزاجًا مثل السعادة أو السلام أو الحزن

Exercise 09 Writing

1. **What should a descriptive essay include to make it vivid?**
   - **a.** Opinions only
   - **b.** Sensory details and imagery
   - **c.** Only facts
   - **d.** Long definitions
2. **A descriptive essay mainly ....**
   - **a.** argues
   - **b.** describes
   - **c.** explains
   - **d.** compares
3. **Which of the following is a good hook for a descriptive essay?**
   - **a.** The room was silent, but the air buzzed with tension.
   - **b.** I don't know what to say.
   - **c.** This is a normal day.
   - **d.** Let's skip this.
4. **The purpose of a descriptive essay is to create ....**
   - **a.** a story
   - **b.** an image
   - **c.** a debate
   - **d.** a rule
5. **Each body paragraph describes ....**
   - **a.** many topics
   - **b.** a conclusion
   - **c.** one aspect
   - **d.** background
6. **Sensory details use ....**
   - **a.** adjectives
   - **b.** numbers
   - **c.** names
   - **d.** jokes
7. **The conclusion should ....**
   - **a.** add new topics
   - **b.** summarize the feelings
   - **c.** rules
   - **d.** start the essay again
8. **What is the purpose of a thesis statement in a descriptive essay?**
   - **a.** To list daily activities
   - **b.** To hint at the main feeling you want to convey
   - **c.** To tell an unrelated story
   - **d.** To explain scientific facts
9. **A hook in the introduction is ....**
   - **a.** a summary
   - **b.** an attention grabber
   - **c.** a detail
   - **d.** a conclusion
10. **The first part of a descriptive essay is the ....**
    - **a.** body
    - **b.** conclusion
    - **c.** introduction
    - **d.** example
11. **A focused topic means ....**
    - **a.** one subject in detail
    - **b.** many subjects
    - **c.** no subject
    - **d.** general ideas
12. **A good conclusion leaves ....**
    - **a.** a question
    - **b.** a number
    - **c.** a lasting image
    - **d.** a joke
13. **The main purpose of a descriptive essay is to ....**
    - **a.** tell a story
    - **b.** give instructions step by step
    - **c.** argue for or against an opinion
    - **d.** describe a person, place, or thing in deta
14. **Which of the following is MOST important in a descriptive essay?**
    - **a.** Using dates and numbers
    - **b.** Using only facts and statistics
    - **c.** Using short and direct sentences only
    - **d.** Using detailed sensory language (sight, sound, smell, touch, taste)
15. **What should the conclusion of a descriptive essay do?**
    - **a.** Introduce new ideas
    - **b.** Repeat the introduction word by word
    - **c.** Summarize the main impressions and feelings
    - **d.** Provide a list of vocabulary used

Exercise 04 Translation

١. **إنني أحب وأحترم من هم أكبر مني سناً حيث أنهم أكثر حكمة وخبرة. كما أقدر أيضاً دور الشباب في بناء الأوطان**

a. I am loved and respect the old as they are wise and experience, and I also appreciate the youth's role in building countries.

b. I am like and respect older as they are wise and experienced, and I also appreciate the youth's role in building countries.

c. I love the oldest as they are wise and less experienced, and I also appreciate the youth's role in building countries.

d. I love and respect my elders as they are wiser and more experienced, and I also appreciate the youth's role in building up countries.

٢. **ينبغي على كل مواطن صالح أن يؤدي دوره بإتقان حتى يتحقق التقدم والاستقرار.** المحلة ٢٠٢٤

a. Every good citizen should perform his role perfectly to achieve progress and stability.

b. Every good member should perform their role perfectly to achieve progress and instability.

c. Every good citizen should perform his rule perfectly to achieve progress and instability.

d. Every good citizen should perform their role perfectly to achieve progress and stability.

٣. **على الحكومة أن تقوم بإنشاء مشروعات مختلفة لكي لا نتأثر بمشكلة البطالة التي تواجه معظم دول العالم.**

a. The government must set up different projects so that we can affect the problem of unemployment that most world countries face.

b. The government must set up different projects in order to we cannot be affected by the problem of unemployment that most world countries face.

c. The government must set up different projects so that we cannot be affected by the problem of unemployment that faces most world countries.

d. The government must set up different projects so that we cannot be affected by the problem of unemployment that face most world countries.

4. **Every citizen must perform his duties before he demands his rights. The right and the duty are two sides of the same coin.** وسط اسكندرية ٢٠٢٤

أ- على كل مواطن أن يؤدي واجباته بعد أن يطالب بحقوقه، الحق والواجب وجهان لعملة واحدة.

ب- على كل مواطن ألا يؤدي واجباته إلا بعد أن يطالب بحقوقه الحق والواجب وجهان لعملة واحدة.

ج- على كل مواطن أن يؤدي واجباته قبل أن يطالب بحقوقه الحق والواجب وجهان لعملة واحدة.

د- على كل مواطن ألا يؤدي واجباته قبل أن يسأل عن بحقوقه، الحق والواجب وجهان لعملة واحدة.

5. **Ambition and patience are very important personal qualities that we need to have to be able to achieve success.** قطور ٢٠٢٤

أ- الطموح والصبر صفات عامة هامة جدا نحتاج أن نتصف بها لنتمكن من تحقيق الثروة.

ب- الطموح والصبر صفات شخصية هامة جدا لا نحتاج أن نتصف بها لنتمكن من تحقيق النجاح.

ج- الطموح والصبر صفات شخصية هامة جدا نحتاج أن نتصف بها لنتمكن من تحقيق النجاح.

د- الطموح والصبر صفات عامة نحتاج أن نتصف بها لنتمكن من تحقيق الثروة.

6. **Education is no doubt the cornerstone of the progress of a nation. When a country invests in education, it signs a contract with welfare and prosperity.** قليوب ٢٠٢٤

أ- التعليم بكل شك هو حجر العمود الفقري لتطور الدولة عندما تستثمر الدولة في التعليم فإنها توقع عقدا مع الرفاهية والحرية.

ب- التعليم بلا شك هو حجر الأساس لتقدم الدولة عندما تستثمر البلاد في التعليم فإنها توقع عقدا مع الرفاهية والازدهار.

ج- التعليم بلا شك هو حجر الزاوية لتقدم الأمة عندما تستثمر دولة ما في التعليم فإنها توقع عقدا مع الرفاهية والازدهار.

د- مع كل شك التعليم هو حجر الزاوية لتقدم الأمة عندما تستثمر دولة في التعليم فإنها توقع عقدا مع الرفاهية والازدهار.

7. **Egypt is trying to improve its economic status by attracting foreign investments and building great projects. This is beginning to show progress.** الحسينية ٢٠٢٤

أ- تحاول مصر تحسين وضعها الاقتصادي من خلال تنمية الاستثمارات الأجنبية وبناء المشروعات الكبرى وبدأ هذا في توضيح التقدم

ب- تحاول مصر تحسين موضعها الاقتصادي من خلال جذب الاستثمارات الأجنبية وبناء المشروعات الكبرى وبدأ هذا في تفسير التقدم

ج- تحاول مصر تحسين وضعها الاقتصادي من خلال جذب الاستهلاكات الأجنبية وبناء المشروعات الكبرى وبدأ هذا في إظهار التقدم

د- تحاول مصر تحسين وضعها الاقتصادي من خلال جذب الاستثمارات الأجنبية وبناء المشروعات الكبرى وبدأ هذا في إظهار التقدم

General Exercises on Unit 2

A Vocabulary and Structure

Choose the (2) correct answers out of the (5) options given:

1. The witness always tells the truth in court. The synonym of "truth" is ....
   a. reality **b.** deception **c.** lie **d.** fact **e.** dishonesty
2. She always looked at life with optimism. The antonym of "optimism" is ....
   a. wisdom **b.** ignorance **c.** pessimism **d.** despair **e.** positivity

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. Schools play an important .... in society. SB R
   a. reel **b.** rule **c.** roll **d.** role
4. His new book is a/an .... blend of clever humor and heartwarming characters. SB R
   a. isolated **b.** irresistible **c.** urgent **d.** misfortunate
5. She showed enormous courage when she .... him from the fire. SB R-
   a. pretend **b.** reserved **c.** dropped **d.** rescued
6. .... is a sudden and dangerous situation that needs quick action. SB R-
   a. Emergency **b.** Responsibility **c.** Community **d.** Reservation
7. You should .... vegetables before you cook them. العجمي ٢٠٢٤
   a. wash **b.** be washed **c.** to wash **d.** washing
8. Drivers ..... use their mobile phones while they are driving. it can cause death. قوص ٢٠٢٤
   a. needn't **b.** mustn't **c.** can't **d.** won't
9. Every student .... waste their time before the exams. طوخ ٢٠٢٤
   a. must **b.** needn't **c.** mustn't **d.** should
10. No noise; patients need rest. You .... keep quiet. LM
    a. shouldn't **b.** must **c.** mustn't **d.** ought
11. You .... attend my sister's wedding ceremony. I'll be so happy if you come. بلبيس ٢٠٢٤
    a. may **b.** can **c.** should **d.** must
12. You .... water the plants, I have already watered them. منوف ٢٠٢٤
    a. need **b.** don't need **c.** needn't **d.** don't have
13. Descriptive writing mainly appeals to the reader's:
    a. logic **b.** emotions and senses **c.** political opinion **d.** memory only
14. A good descriptive essay should start with:
    a. conclusion **b.** a clear introduction that sets the scene
    c. background statistics **d.** only a list of adjectives

B Reading Comprehension

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Are you into skiing? Is winter your favorite time of year? If you like snow and ice, maybe you should stay at the Ice Hotel in Quebec, Canada. But, you can only check in to this hotel during the winter. Why? Because this hotel is made entirely of ice and snow! This amazing hotel is built every December. It has 32 rooms, and 80 people can stay there each night. The hotel has a movie theater, an art gallery, and a church. Of course, all of these parts of the hotel are made of ice. In fact, all the furniture, art, lights, and even plates and drinking glasses are made of ice. Because this hotel is so unusual, it has become very popular. People from all over the world come to the Ice Hotel to look at the fantastic ice art, drink and eat from designer ice dishes, and experience the unique atmosphere. Some couples have even gotten married in the hotel's ice church.

However, all the guests keep their winter coats on! Because of all the ice, the temperature inside the hotel is always between -2 and -5°C. Surprisingly, sleeping is not a problem in the freezing cold hotel rooms. Every guest gets a special cold-weather sleeping bag and some fur blankets. These keep them cozy and warm until morning.

15. What is the main idea of this reading?
a. How the Ice Hotel is built
b. What makes the Ice Hotel special
c. Why the Ice Hotel is made of ice
d. The services of the Ice Hotel

16. What can you do in the hotel?
a. Watch a movie.
b. Get married.
c. Eat an interesting meal.
d. All of the above.

17. Why is sleeping NOT a problem at the hotel?
a. The rooms are warm.
b. The temperature is -2oC.
c. The sleeping bags are warm.
d. The furniture is warm.

18. In which part of the hotel would you probably find the ice plates?
a. The church b. The restaurant c. The rooms d. The art gallery

19. What do you think happens to this hotel in the spring?
a. It freezes. b. It melts. c. It stays open. d. It moves.

20. "Are you into" in the passage means ....
a. Are you against skiing?
b. Are you able to ski
c. Are you interested in skiing?
d. Do you know anything about skiing?

21. Which of the following is true according to the passage?
a. More than 80 people can stay there each night.
b. The hotel is built every year.
c. The hotel has a movie theater, an art gallery, and a pool.
d. Sleeping is a problem in the hotel.

C Writing

Translate the following sentences:

22. Thanks to the internet, the world has become a small village in which you can know anything.

إدارة الحسينية ٢٠٢٢

أ. لقد أصبح العالم قرية صغيرة حيث يمكنه معرفة كل شيء بفضل الانترنت.
ب. شكرا للإنترنت لقد أصبح العالم قرية صغيرة أين يمكنك معرفة أي شيء.
ج. بفضل الانترنت، لقد أصبح العالم قرية صغيرة حيث لا يمكنك معرفة كل شيء.
د. لقد أصبح العالم قرية صغيرة حيث يمكنك معرفة أي شيء بفضل الانترنت.

٢٣. لقد عمل بجد مؤخرًا حتى يكسب مال ويوفر احتياجات عائلته اليومية. إدارة الحسينية ٢٠٢٢

a. He has worked hard lately to wins money and safe his familys' everyday needs.
b. He works hard recently until earn money and save his family's every day needs.
c. He worked hardly late in order to earn money and safe his familys' every day needs.
d. He has worked hard recently in order to earn money and provide his family's everyday needs.

Rewrite the sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning.

24. It's not a good idea to waste water. (shouldn't) **SB**
25. It isn't necessary for you to come early. (don't have to)

Answer the following questions :

26. What did Santiago believe about luck?
27. How did the boy help prepare the boat for the journey?
28. How does this chapter prepare readers for the great challenge to come?

Write a descriptive essay of (120 – 150) words about the following:

"My Grandpa's House"

أزهر القليوبية ٢٠٢٣

1) Complete the following dialogue: (2 Marks)

Ali: Hello, Hisham. Are you home?
Hisham: Hello, Ali. Yes, ❶ ....?
Ali: My mother is in hospital and I need ❷ ....
Hisham: ❸..! How much?
Ali: ❹ ....
Hisham: Ok. Give me five minutes.

أزهر القليوبية ٢٠٢٣

2) Read the following passage, then answer the questions: (5 Marks)

It was late and Sara wasn't expecting visitors, she sat alone in her room, with only her laptop and books for company. Her phone was off and she wasn't checking her email. There were too many people in her life with too many problems. And Sara was trying to write her first short story. She imagined wild adventures in distant lands full of exciting people, but Sara knew that she had to keep it simple. As she looked at empty screen, an idea began to be built in her imagination. It was a simple idea and people would understand. She began to type. The words came easily, filling the screen. Then the lights went out and Sara sat in the dark. Now there is only one question :did she remember to save her work?

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What did Sara try to do?

....

2. What did Sara imagine?

....

3. Did Sara sit in the dark? Why?

....

B. Choose the correct answer:

4. Distant means ....
a. busy b. remote and far c. near d. next
5. Sara's phone was ....
a. off b. on c. of d. from

3) A. Translate into Arabic: (1 Mark)

Young people are able to share in doing voluntary work in different fields.

....

....

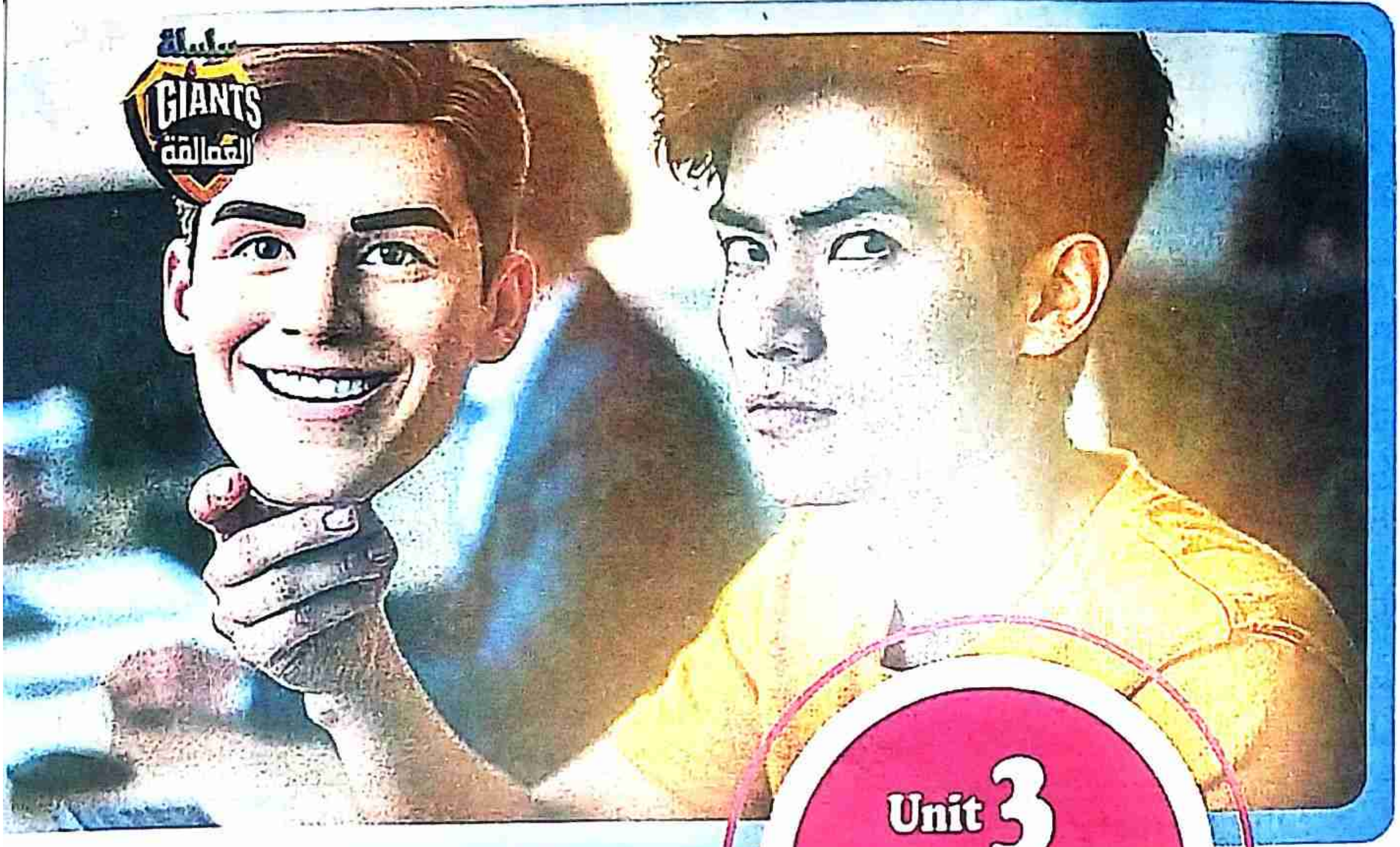
أزهر الجيزة ٢٠٢٣

B. Translate into English: (1 Mark)

علمني والدي درسًا عظيما أن النجاح يحتاج إلى العمل الجاد.

....

....



Unit 3

Truth Vs. Lies

Learning Outcomes

Reading

Reading short texts and conversations about:
Truth trap.
False news and ideas.

Language

Conditional zero, first, and second.

Listening

Listening to a text about wise choice in a world full of traps.

Writing

A paragraph about fake news and fake platforms.

Speaking

Talking about real-life and online situations.
Giving advice for a friend who is in a trouble.

Unit 3 Truth Vs. Lies

Lessons
1. When Appearances lie
2. Wise Choices in a World Full of Traps

Key Vocabulary

pressure (n\v)	يضغط علي / ضغط	deceive (v)	يخدع / يوهم	explanation (n)	شرح / تفسير
pause (n\v)	يتوقف مؤقتًا / وقفة	clothing (n)	ملابس	reputation (n)	سمعة
exploit (v)	يستغل / يستفيد من	tactics (n)	أساليب / تكتيكات	scam (v\n)	احتيال / يحتال علي
exploitation (n)	استغلال	verify (v)	يتحقق من / يؤكد صحة	betray (v)	يخون
supportively (adv)	بدعم / بطريقة داعمة	favor (n)	معروف / مصلحة	dishonesty (n)	عدم الأمانة
				interaction (n)	تفاعل / تواصل

Key Expressions

be caught in a trap	يقع في فخ	wolf in sheep's clothing	ذئب في ثياب حمل
trust but verify	ثق ولكن تأكد	too good to be true	جيد بشكل غير معقول

Main Vocabulary

put on (v)	يرتدي / يتظاهر	message (n\v)	رسالة / يراسل	pretend (v)	يتظاهر
honest (adj)	صادق / أمين	workplace (n)	مكان العمل	trap (n\v)	فخ / مصيدة / يحتجز
genuine (adj)	أصيل / حقيقي	confidential (adj)	سري / موثوق به	prevent (v)	يمنع
wise (adj)	حكيم	behavior (n)	سلوك	source (n)	مصدر
details (n)	تفاصيل	harmful (adj)	ضار	warning (n)	تحذير
boundary (n)	حد	emotion (n)	عاطفة	confirm (v)	يؤكد
exist (v)	يوجد / يعيش	emotionally (adv)	عاطفيا	intend (v)	ينوي
patience (n)	صبر	stuck (adj)	عالق / محتجز	theft (n)	سرقة
reliable (adj)	موثوق	grand (adj)	عظيم	notice (v)	يلاحظ
private (adj)	خاص / شخصي	risk (n)	خطر	paperwork (n)	أوراق رسمية /معاملات
owe (v)	يدين بـ / يكون مدينا بـ	guilty (adj)	مذنب	truthful (adj)	صادق / مخلص
victim (n)	ضحية	trick (n\v)	يخدع / خدعة	rush (v)	يسرع - يندفع
profit (n\v)	ربح / يربح	teenager (n)	مراهق	spread (v)	ينشر / ينتشر
properties (n)	ممتلكات / خصائص	secret (n\adj)	سر / سري	platform (n)	منصة - رصيف
fake (adj)	مزيف	cautious (adj)	حذر	disappear (v)	يختفي
advisor (n)	مستشار	physically (adv)	جسديا	embarrass (v)	يُحرج
appearance (n)	مظهر / هيئة	guard (n\v)	يحرس / حارس	apply (v)	يطبق / يتقدم بطلب
intention (n)	نية	push (v)	يدفع	suffer (v)	يعاني
clear (adj)	واضح	unsure (adj)	غير واثق	consider (v)	يعتبر / يفكر في
face-to-face (adj/adv)	وجها لوجه	suspicious (adj)	مثير للشبهة	lie (n\v)	يكذب / كذبة
stranger (n)	غريب	realise (v)	يدرك	fit in (v)	يندمج / يصبح ملائما
hesitate (v)	يتردد	psychologist (n)	أخصائي نفسي	create (v)	ينشئ

Collocations

win a prize	يفوز بجائزة	suffer consequences	يتحمل العواقب
verify facts	يوثق الحقائق	spread stories	ينشر قصص

sign a contract	يوقع عقدا	return a favor	يرد معروفا
set a trap	ينصب فخا	make money	يجني أموالا
take advantage	يستغل / يستفيد من / ينتهز الفرصة	keep secrets	يحفظ الأسرار
feel betrayed	يشعر بالخيانة	exploit data	يستغل البيانات
copy tactics	يقلد إسلوبا	build friendships	يكون صداقات

Expressions & Prepositions

that sounds like a red flag	هذا يبدو كإنذار خطر	trust in	يثق بـ
personal data	بيانات شخصية	put on a friendly face	يتظاهر بالود
believe in the goodness of people	يؤمن بخير الناس	suffer from	يُعاني من
ask for details	يطلب تفاصيل	write down	يدوّن / يكتب
be caught in	يُخبَس / يقعَ في (فخ)	rely on	يعتمد على
be sure about	يكونَ متأكدًا من (شيء)	in the end	في النهاية
exploit ... for ...	يستغل ... من أجل ...	in return	في المقابل
keep his promises	يفي بوعوده	be tricked into	يُخدع ليقوم بـ...
healthy boundaries	حدود صحية	face-to-face interactions	تفاعلات وجهاً لوجه
turn out to be	يتضح أنه / يصبح في النهاية	take control of	يسيطر علي / يستولي على
act with honesty	يتصرف بصدق	for free	مجانا
fake platforms	منصات مزيفة	close friends	أصدقاء مقرّبون

Definitions

betray	يخون	▶ to be disloyal or unfaithful to someone
deceive	يخدع	▶ to make someone believe something that is not true.
exploit	يستغل	▶ to take unfair advantage of someone or something for personal gain
interaction	تفاعل	▶ the act of communicating or working together with someone
supportively	بدعم	▶ in a way that provides help, encouragement, or approval
wolf in sheep's clothing	ذئب في ثياب حمل	▶ people who appear harmless but are actually dangerous or deceitful
too good to be true	جيد بشكل غير معقول	▶ something so good that it is hard to believe it is real
reputation	سمعة	▶ the beliefs or opinions that are generally held about someone or something
scam	عملية نصب / احتيال	▶ a dishonest scheme or fraud to get money or advantage
tactics	أساليب / تكتيكات	▶ planned methods used to achieve a particular goal
caught in a trap	وقع في فخ	▶ to be tricked or deceived into a difficult situation
trust, but verify	ثق، لكن تحقق	▶ a principle of trusting someone but also checking to make sure they are honest

Derivatives

Verb		**Noun**		**Adjective**	
trust	يثق	trust	ثقة	trustworthy	جدير بالثقة
rely	يعتمد	reliance	اعتماد	reliable	موثوق
deceive	يخدع	deception	خداع	deceptive	خادع / مضلل

embarrass	يحرج	embarrassment	احراج	embarrassing	محرج
exploit	يستغل	exploitation	استغلال	exploitable	قابل للإستغلال
disappear	يختفي	disappearance	اختفاء	disappearing	مختفي
apply	يطبق	application	تطبيق	applicable	قابل للتطبيق

Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym	Antonym
trust	ثقة	reliance / faith / confidence	distrust / doubt / suspicion
honest	صادق	truthful / sincere / upright	dishonest / deceitful
deceive	يخدع	mislead / trick / fool	reveal / expose / inform
exploit	يستغل	abuse/ manipulate / misuse	protect / help / support
betray	يخون	backstab / deceive / mislead	be loyal / support / protect
aware	واع	conscious / alert / mindful	unaware / ignorant / oblivious
reliable	موثوق	trustworthy / dependable	unreliable / untrustworthy /
kindness	لطف	generosity / compassion / friendliness	cruelty/ harshness / meanness
scam	عملية نصب / احتيال	fraud / swindle / trick	honesty /truthfulness/ integrity

Language Notes

Notice the Difference

make a promise	يعد/ يقطع وعداً	⇔	keep a promise	يفي بالوعد
real = genuine	حقيقي	⇔	fake = unreal	غير حقيقي / مزيف
interaction	تفاعل / تواصل / تداخل	⇔	interruption	انقطاع / مقاطعة / توقف
trap	فخ / مصيدة	⇔	trip	رحلة
borrow	يستعير ، يستلف	⇔	lend	يُسلف
supportive	داعم / مشجع / موالي	⇔	supportively	بدعم / بشكل مشجع وموالي
owe	يدين بـ / يكون مدينًا	⇔	own	يَملك / خاص به
publish	ينشر (رسمي)	⇔	spread	ينشر (غير رسمي أو شائعات)
value	يقدر أو قيمة	⇔	valuable	ثمين / قيم
cloth	قماش (لا تعد)	⇔	clothes	الملابس (تعامل جمع دائماً)

support, supporter, supportive, & supportively

support(v)	يدعم / يساند	▸ Parents should **support** their children.
support(n)	دعم / مساندة	▸ She gave me great **support** during hard times.
supporter(n)	مؤيد / مشجع	▸ He is a strong **supporter** of the team.
supportive(adj)	داعم / مُساند	▸ My friends are always **supportive**.
supportively (adv)	بشكل داعم	▸ She spoke **supportively** to encourage me.

lie & lay

lie (lied – lied)	يكذب	▸ She has **lied** many times.
lie (lay – lain)	يستلقي / يتمدد	▸ Yesterday, he **lay** in bed all morning.
lay (laid - laid)	يضع / يفرش / يبيض	▸ She **lays** the books on the table.

scam, fraud, trick & cheat

scam	احتيال / يخدع	He fell for an online **scam**.
fraud	احتيال / نصب (مصطلح رسمي عن جريمة الاحتيال)	Credit card **fraud** is a serious crime.
trick	خدعة / يخدع	The magician showed us a card **trick**.
cheat	يغش / غشاش	He **cheated** in the exam.

Reading

When Appearances lie

Before you read, answer the following questions.

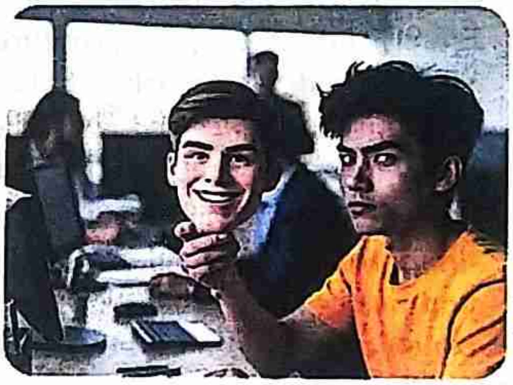
1. Has anyone ever made a promise to you, but didn't keep it? How did you feel?
2. Can you think of a time when something looked real, but turned out to be fake?
3. Why do you think some people pretend to be something they are not?

1) Read the following passage. Then, do the following tasks.

Trust is one of the most valuable(1) things in our lives, yet it is not always easy to know whom we can rely on. While many people act with honesty and kindness, there are also those who hide their true intentions(2) behind a friendly smile.

In life, not everyone we meet is truly honest. Some people **put on a friendly face**, but are in fact "**wolves in sheep's clothing**". They may deceive us to gain money, favors, or private information. This can happen anywhere–at school, in the workplace, or even among people we once considered close friends.

For example, someone might act supportively(3) just to borrow money, with no intention of returning it. Another might spread false stories to damage someone's reputation(4). Such behavior can leave us feeling betrayed(5), embarrassed(6), and unsure whom we can trust.



١)	ذو قيمة / قيم
٢)	نوايا
٣)	بشكل داعم
٤)	سمعة
٥)	يشعر بالخيانة
٦)	محرج
٧)	احتيال
٨)	تكتيكات
٩)	منصة
١٠)	حذر
١١)	خداع

This type of dishonesty is not **limited to** face-to-face interactions. In the digital world, fake platforms and social media scams(7) copy these same tactics(8). They make grand promises–such as free prizes, dream jobs, or fast profits–only to exploit our personal data or disappear with our money. It is like being **caught in a trap** you did not realize was set.

Whether in daily life or online, there are warning signs:

- The person or platform(9) applies pressure to make you **act quickly**.
- The story changes when you ask for details.
- The promises seem too good to be true.

To protect yourself, pause before acting, ask careful questions, and confirm the facts from reliable sources. As the old saying goes: "**Trust, but verify**".

Although dishonesty exists, it should never stop us from believing in the goodness of people. By being cautious(10), wise, and aware of warning signs, we can protect ourselves and still enjoy healthy, trustworthy relationships. **In the end**, honesty and kindness always shine brighter than lies and deception(11).

Listening

Before you start

1) Answer the following questions.

1. Have you ever seen someone being taken advantage of? What happened?
2. What do you think "healthy boundaries" mean in friendship or family life?

Wise Choices in a World Full of Traps

Host	Welcome back to Life Talks. Today, we're joined by Dr. Sarah Al-Haddad, a social psychologist(1) who's been studying how people-young and old-can be tricked(2) or pressured(3) into doing things they don't want to do. Welcome, Dr. Sarah!
Dr. Sarah	Thank you. It's an important topic because exploitation(4) can happen in ways many people don't expect. We often think of scams(5) or theft(6), but it can also mean **pushing someone to** work for free, share personal secrets, or suppor harmful ideas.
Host	So, it's not just about money.
Dr. Sarah	Exactly. For teenagers, pressure might come from friends who want them to join in risky(7) behavior so they can fit in. For older people, it might be someone pretending(8) to help with paperwork(9) but really trying to **take control of** their property.
Host	That sounds worrying. How can people **avoid** such **traps**?
Dr. Sarah	First, notice your feelings. If you feel rushed(10), guilty, or afraid, stop and ask yourself: Why am I feeling this way? People who exploit others often create strong emotions(11) so you don't think clearly. Second, get a second opinion. **Talk to** a friend, family member, or trusted advisor(12) before agreeing to anything important. And third, learn to say no without apology(13). You don't **owe** an explanation **to** someone who is trying to use you.
Host	That's great advice. Do you have a final message for our listeners?
Dr. Sarah	Yes. Your time, energy, and trust are valuable. Guard(14) them carefully. If something feels wrong, it probably is.

١) أخصائي نفسي
٢) يخدع
٣) يضغط على
٤) استغلال
٥) احتيال
٦) سرقة
٧) محفوف بالمخاطر
٨) يتظاهر
٩) أوراق رسمية /معاملات
١٠) يندفع
١١) مشاعر
١٢) مستشار
١٣) اعتذار
١٤) يحرس

2) Answer the following questions.

1. What does Dr. Sarah suggest doing before agreeing to something important?
2. According to the interview, why is it important to notice your feelings in a situation?
3. Which of Dr. Sarah's tips do you think is the most useful? Why?
4. How could young people and old people learn from each other to prevent exploitation?

Exercise 04 Key Vocabulary

1. Friendly .... at school can help build strong friendships. SB
a. betrays b. pressure c. interactions d. scam

2. The scammer tried to .... the elderly woman by pretending to be from the bank. SB
a. deceive b. believe c. receive d. achieve

3. He felt deeply .... when his best friend shared his secret. SB
a. delayed b. betrayed c. displayed d. replayed

4. He has a very good .... because he always keeps his promises. SB
a. situation b. occupation c. invitation d. reputation

5. Some people try to .... others to make quick money. SB
a. exploit b. appoint c. report d. import

6. That deal sounds amazing, but it might be .... SB
a. wolves in sheep's clothing b. trust but verify
c. too good to be true d. caught in a trap

7. He seemed friendly at first, but later we discovered he was one of those .... SB
a. wolves in sheep's clothing b. trust but verify
c. too good to be true d. caught in a trap

8. She signed the contract without reading it and soon realized she was .... SB
a. wolves in sheep's clothing b. trust but verify
c. too good to be true d. caught in a trap

9. My father always tells me, "You should .... when dealing with strangers. SB
a. be a wolf in sheep's clothing b. trust but verify
c. be too good to be true d. catch in a trap

10. The teacher asked the students to .... for a moment before answering.
a. continue b. shout c. rush d. pause

11. The company was accused of unfair .... of its workers.
a. exploitation b. vacation c. support d. relaxation

12. Always .... the facts before sharing news online.
a. ignore b. verify c. forget d. delete

13. Don't let stress or deadlines .... you into making bad decisions.
a. pressure b. ignore c. entertain d. relax

14. The store sells all kinds of winter .... to keep you warm.
a. shoes b. toys c. clothing d. food

15. The coach explained the best .... to win the game.
a. errors b. questions c. mistakes d. tactics

16. Can you do me a small .... and help me carry these books?
a. job b. task c. favor d. problem

17. Some people try to .... others by pretending to be someone else.
a. encourage b. help c. teach d. deceive

18. The teacher gave a clear .... of the new grammar rule.
a. question b. explanation c. novel d. story

19. A good .... is important for success in business.
a. reputation b. habit c. mistake d. feeling

20. Be careful online, some people try to .... others for money.
a. help b. scam c. teach d. warn

21. It hurts when a friend .... your trust.
a. supports b. protects c. praises d. betrays

22. Language games are usually intended to encourage student ....
a. interactive b. interaction c. interact d. interactively

23. He tried to .... his friends by lying about where he was.
a. help b. deceive c. inform d. support

24. You shouldn't .... people just because they are weaker than you.
a. help b. exploit c. receive d. respect

25. Cheating and lying are examples of .... in any workplace.
a. honesty b. kindness c. dishonesty d. respect

26. The hunters set a net and the rabbit was quickly .... in a trap.
a. caught b. running c. free d. hiding

27. When dealing with new information, it's wise to .... but verify before believing it completely.
a. ignore b. trust c. share d. forget

28. Be careful of people who seem kind but have bad intentions; they are like .... in sheep's clothing.
a. honest b. helpful c. wolves d. brave

29. That offer seems amazing, but it's probably too good to be ....
a. safe b. boring c. normal d. true

Exercise 04 Main Vocabulary

30. Before you travel, you should always .... your flight details.
a. cancel b. delay c. ignore d. confirm

31. Police arrested him for .... from the store.
a. shopping b. theft c. helping d. selling

32. Always be .... when answering questions in a court.
a. careless b. dishonest c. truthful d. silent

33. The students had to .... to class because the bell had already rung.
a. ignore b. sleep c. rush d. delay

34. The company wants to increase its .... this year.
a. loss b. debt c. expense d. profit

35. The journalist always checks the .... of information before publishing.
a. title b. source c. date d. cover

36. The doctor gave me a serious .... about eating too much sugar.
a. sign b. gift c. warning d. secret

37. We are very .... to our neighbors and often meet them.
a. distant b. close c. cold d. rude

38. He felt .... after breaking the vase.
a. proud b. guilt c. guilty d. relaxed

39. The house has many expensive .... that need insurance.
a. tools b. properties c. friends d. clothes

40. He wore a/an .... watch to impress his colleagues.
a. genuine b. fake c. inexpensive d. cheap

41. Don't judge people by their .... alone.
a. heart b. trap c. muscles d. appearance

42. What was his real .... behind helping you?
a. excuse b. intention c. opening d. joke

43. We live in a .... world where everything is connected online.
a. physical b. natural c. digital d. manual

44. All employees must keep the reports .... and not share them.
a. public b. visible c. open d. confidential

45. He is a .... friend who will always support you.
a. fake b. dishonest c. rude d. genuine

46. You need a lot of .... when dealing with young children.
a. patience b. anger c. speed d. patient

47. I still .... you for the money I borrowed last week.
a. rush b. forget c. owe d. spend

48. Don't .... to ask questions if you don't understand.
a. hesitate b. avoid c. repeat d. owe

49. You should try to .... arguments that waste your time.
a. start b. avoid c. continue d. enjoy

Exercise 04 Expressions, Prepositions, Derivatives, Notes & Definitions

50. The phrase "wolves in sheep's clothing" means **SB-R1**
a. Animals that disguise themselves b. People who love animals
c. Brave individuals d. Dangerous people who appear kind

51. When someone helps you, it's nice to .... a favor.
a. return b. avoid c. ignore d. forget

52. Companies sometimes try to .... data to improve their services.
a. lose b. exploit c. delete d. hide

53. .... is to be tricked or deceived into a difficult situation.
a. Reputation b. Supportively c. Caught in a trap d. Scam

54. A good leader always tries to .... his promises.
a. owe b. waste c. delete d. keep

55. This offer is limited .... new customers only.
a. to b. on c. for d. at

56. Even if you're nervous, try to put on a .... face to appear confident.
a. sad b. friendly c. seriously d. abnormal

57. Some people are easily tricked .... scams online.
a. for b. on c. into d. about

58. Many people want to .... money by investing in businesses.
a. lose b. make c. waste d. cancel

59. Hunters often .... a trap to catch animals.
a. feed b. fight c. avoid d. set

60. .... is a dishonest scheme or fraud to get money or advantage.
a. Scam b. Supportively c. Interaction d. Betray

61. Some people try to .... advantage of others' mistakes.
a. help b. ignore c. take d. protect

62. ....means the beliefs or opinions that are generally held about someone or something.
a. Betray b. Interactions c. Exploit d. Reputation

63. I sometimes feel .... about which decision to take.
a. unsure b. happy c. confident d. strong

64. If you break the rules, you will .... consequences.
a. get b. suffer c. have d. ignore

65. .... means planned methods used to achieve a particular goal.
a. Deceive b. Tactics c. Exploit d. Interactions

Choose the (Two) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given.

66. A small act of kindness can change someone's day. "Kindness" can be replaced by ....
a. cruelty b. generosity c. harshness d. compassion e. meanness

67. It's hard to trust someone who has lied before. The antonym of "trust " is ....
a. distrust b. reliance c. faith d. doubt e. confidence

68. They lost their money in an online scam. The synonym of "scam" is ....
a. swindle b. honesty c. truthfulness d. integrity e. fraud

69. It's important to be honest in every situation. "Honest" is opposite in meaning to ".........".
a. truthful b. dishonest c. deceitful d. sincere e. upright

70. Be aware of your surroundings when walking alone. "Aware" can be replaced by ....
a. unaware b. conscious c. ignorant d. alert e. oblivious

71. Don't let appearances deceive you. The antonym of "deceive " is ....
a. reveal b. mislead c. trick d. expose e. fool

72. She is a reliable friend who always helps others. The synonym of the underlined word "reliable" is ....
a. trustworthy b. protect c. untrustworthy d. dependable e. unreliable

73. She would never betray her best friend. The synonym of "betray" is ....
a. backstab b. be loyal c. protect d. support e. deceive

74. He felt hurt when his teammate betrayed him. The antonym of the underlined word "betray " is ....
a. support b. backstab c. deceive d. protect e. mislead

75. Some companies exploit workers by paying them very little. "Exploit" can be replaced by ....
a. protect b. abuse c. help d. manipulate e. support

76. I'm aware that I made a mistake. "Aware" is opposite in meaning to ".........".
a. conscious b. unaware c. mindful d. alert e. ignorant

انتظروا!!!!!
كتاب مراجعة العمالقة
للصف الأول الثانوي
العمالقة
سلسلة Giants
GIANTS العمالقة

الجمـــل الشرطيـــة

Conditional forms

Zero Conditional الحالة الصفرية

Zero conditional	**Present simple** ➤→ (v : v + s) زمن المضارع البسيط	**Present simple** ➤→ (v : v + s) زمن المضارع البسيط

Uses الاستخدامات

✍ تستخدم للتعبير عن حقائق علمية عامة وللتعبير عن عادات ثابتة لا تتغير ولا ترتبط بتوقيت معين:

- ★ If/ When you heat ice, it melts.
- ★ If/ When water freezes, Does it turn into ice?
- ★ If/ When our heart stops working, death soon follows.
- ★ If/ When we mix white and red, we get pink.

✍ لابد أن تكون الحقيقة عامة وليست خاصة وإذا كانت موقف خاص تستخدم الحالة الأولى وتتحول الحقيقة العامة إلى خاصة كما يلي:

① استخدام صفة إشارة (those / these / that / this) قبل الفاعل أو المفعول.

- ★ If goats eat the bark on a tree, the tree dies.
- ★ If those goats eat the bark on a tree, the tree will die.

② استخدام صفة ملكية (my / his / her / its / your / our / their / ....'s...)

- ★ If the plants on our farm get very thirsty, we will irrigate them.

③ ارتباط حدوث الفعل بمكان محدد أو بتوقيت محدد أو ما يدل على ذلك.

- ★ Streets will become wet if it rains tonight.

First Conditional الحالة الأولـــى

First conditional	**Present simple** ➤→ (v: v + s) زمن المضارع البسيط	**will + inf.** ➤→ can/may/should + inf. أمر أو نهي

Uses الاستخدامات

✍ تستخدم للتعبير عن إمكانية حقيقية لحدوث شيء فى المستقبل تـتوفر شروط حدوثه.

- ★ If you study hard, you will succeed.
- ★ If the bus arrives late again, I'll phone my mother.
- ★ Tarek is ill. If he's better tomorrow, he'll come to school.

✍ يمكننا استخدام الأمر أو النهى أو الطلب فى جملة جواب الشرط:

- ★ If Jana calls, tell her I am here.
- ★ If she comes late, don't allow her to enter.
- ★ If you have free time, can you help me?

✍ يمكننا استخدام (may) فى جملة جواب الشرط للتعبير عن الاحتمال أو (can) للتعبير عن المقدرة:

- ★ If Jana studies well, she can get high marks.
- ★ If Seif looks at me carefully, he may recognise me.

✍ يمكننا استخدام (**should**) فى جملة جواب الشرط للتعبير عن النصيحة أو (**have to**) للتعبير عن الإلزام.

- ★ If you **ask** me, you **should** see a doctor. ★ If Seif **comes** late, he **has to** apologise.

✍ يمكننا استخدام التعبيرات (**'d rather - 'd better - let's**) فى جملة جواب الشرط للتعبير عن الاقتراح و الرغبة.

- ★ If you **have** time, **let's go** to the cinema.
- ★ If you **have** time, I'd **rather go** to the cinema.
- ★ If you **have** time, I'd **better go** to the cinema.

Second Conditional الحالة الثانية

Second conditional

Past simple → (شاذ أو v +ed) ماضى البسيط

would + inf. → could / might + inf.

Uses الاستخدامات

✍ تعبر الحالة الثانية عن موقف غير محتمل أو شيء تخيلى فى المضارع.

- ★ If Toka **had** a million dollars, she **would buy** a big house.
- ★ If I **were** a bird, I **could** fly. ★ If I **studied** hard, I **would** pass.
- ★ If I **was / were** rich, I **would** build a palace!
- ★ If Egypt **had** a lot of rain, it **might** have a lot more trees.

✍ تستخدم الحالة الثانية أيضا للتعبير عن النصيحة.

- ★ If I **were** you, I **wouldn't waste** my time. ★ If I **were** you, I'd **help** poor **people**.
- ★ If I **were** you, I'd **read** this useful book.

Third Conditional الحالة الثالثة

Third conditional

Past perfect → (had + P.P) ماضى التام

would have + P.P → could / might have + P.P

Uses الاستخدامات

✍ للتعبير عن استحالة الحدوث وتستخدم للانتقاد أو الندم فى الماضى

- ★ If you **had gone** to the sports club, you **would / could / might have seen** Ali.
- ★ If I **had had** enough money yesterday, I **would / could / might have bought** that mobile phone.
- ★ If Toka **had left** earlier, she **wouldn't have missed** the train.

Between lines

① يتم حل جمل الاختيارى عن طريق النظر الى الجملة الكاملة سواء كانت جملة فعل الشرط أو جملة جواب الشرط ثم تحديد الحالة من الجملة الكاملة كما يلي:

- ★ If she....... up early, she **would catch** the train.

✍ الجملة الكاملة هنا جملة جواب الشرط وبها **would+inf.** وهى تعبر عن الحالة الثانية أى الاختيار الصحيح سوف يكون ماضى بسيط.

- ★ If she **had read** quickly, she ... the competition.

✍ الجملة الكاملة هنا جملة فعل الشرط و بها **had + P.P** وهى تعبر عن الحالة الثالثة أى الاختيار الصحيح سوف يكون به **would have +P.P**.

② لاحظ كلمة **had** فقط تعبر عن الحالة الثانية أما **had + P.P** تعبر عن الحالة الثالثة:

★ If she **had** a car, she **would** be faster.

★ If she **had visited** Luxor, she **would have enjoyed**.

③ لاحظ كلمة **would have** فقط تعبر عن الحالة الثانية أما **would have + P.P** تعبر عن الحالة الثالثة :

★ If she **started** saving, she **would have** a big sum of money.

★ If she **had started** saving, she **would have had** a big sum of money.

④ لاحظ الجمل التالية:

★ If he **had** written work, he....... them.

(published - will publish - **would publish** - would have published)

✍ هذه الجملة الحالة الثانية رغم وجود **had written** وذلك بسبب أن كلمة **written** هنا صفة مع كلمة **work** بمعنى عمل مكتوب وليست تصريف ثالث بعد **had**

★ If the novel he had,...exciting, I **would have read** it. (had - had had - **had been** - been)

✍ هذه الجملة الحالة الثالثة وسوف نختار **had been** رغم وجود كلمة **had** بالجملة إلا أنها تتبع الفاعل.

⑤ لاحظ أن بعض الأفعال الشاذة مثل (**read - cut - set - put**) تكون حالة ثانية اذا جاءت بعد فاعل مفرد بدون s

★ If she **read** quickly, her teacher .... her. (**would reward**)

✍ الجملة الكاملة هنا جملة فعل الشرط **read** في الماضي فتكون الحالة الثانية أى الاختيار الصحيح سوف يكون **would + inf.**

⑥ يمكن استخدام (الصفة او التصريف الثالث) بعد **if**

★ I would come to the party if **invited**. (if I was invited)

⑦ لاحظ التركيب التالي :

If it were not for	**+ v +**	→	**subj. +**	**Would**	**+ inf.**	**الحالة الثانية**
If it hadn't been for	**ing/n**			**Would have**	**+ P.P.**	**الحالة الثالثة**

Exercise 04 Language Level 1

1. If it rains tomorrow, we .... the picnic. **SB-R1**
a. cancel
b. will cancel
c. cancels
d. canceled

2. If she .... harder, she will pass the exam. **SB-R1**
a. study
b. studied
c. will study
d. studies

3. If you don't hurry, you .... the bus. **SB-R1**
a. miss
b. will miss
c. misses
d. missed

4. What .... you do if you win the lottery? **SB-R1**
a. do
b. will
c. did
d. would

5. If I .... you, I would apologize. **SB-R1**
a. am
b. was
c. were
d. will be

6. She'll be sad if you .... come to her party. **SB-R1**
a. don't
b. won't
c. didn't
d. hadn't

7. If I had time, I .... with you. **SB-R1**
a. went
b. will go
c. would go
d. went

8. If you pour water on fire, it .... out. **SB**
a. will go
b. go
c. don't go
d. goes

9. If I .... a famous singer, I would help children in need. **SB**
a. am
b. was
c. were
d. will be

10. If you click this icon, the program .... **SB**
a. will start
b. would start
c. starts
d. would have started

11. If plants don't get sunlight, they .... SB

a. die **b.** will die **c.** would die **d.** would have died

12. If you mix red and blue, you .... purple. SB

a. get **b.** got **c.** will get **d.** would get

13. If water boils, it .... to steam. SB

a. turned **b.** will turn **c.** turns **d.** would turn

14. If it rains tomorrow, we .... at home. SB

a. stay **b.** stayed **c.** will stay **d.** would stay

15. If I had enough money, I .... a new car. SB

a. buy **b.** bought **c.** will buy **d.** would buy

16. If I lend you some money, ... it back to me? روكسى ٢٠٢٤

a. do you give **b.** will you give **c.** you will give **d.** would you give

17. If I were you, I .... this book. العريش ٢٠٢٤

a. will read **b.** would have read **c.** can read **d.** would read

18. If we had found him in time, he .... among us currently. الباجور ٢٠٢٤

a. would be **b.** would have been **c.** won't be **d.** must have

19. How .... you feel if you won the competition? طهطا ٢٠٢٤

a. do **b.** are **c.** would **d.** will

20. If I .... enough money, I would buy a car. العمرانية ٢٠٢٤

a. have **b.** had **c.** had had **d.** have got.

21. What .... if ice is heated? العجمي ٢٠٢٤

a. happens **b.** is happened **c.** does it happen **d.** it is happened

22. If I .... a good job, I will help my family. الإبراهيمية ٢٠٢٤

a. gets **b.** will get **c.** got **d.** get

23. If you freeze water, it .... ice. الشيخ زايد ٢٠٢٤

a. became **b.** becomes **c.** would become **d.** is becoming

24. If I .... that app on my phone, it would be easy to find places. منية النصر ٢٠٢٤

a. use **b.** will use **c.** used **d.** have used

25. Ice .... if you heat it. العاشر من رمضان ٢٠٢٤

a. will melt **b.** would melt **c.** melts **d.** melt

26. Sama would have that medal if she .... well. منفلوط ٢٠٢٤

a. play **b.** had played **c.** played **d.** plays

27. If I had a lot of money, I .... a big house in the country. الصالحية ٢٠٢٤

a. will buy **b.** bought **c.** would buy **d.** had bought

28. If Samy had read that book, he .... what happened at the end. صان الحجر ٢٠٢٤

a. knew **b.** will know **c.** would know **d.** would have known

29. If you .... Luxor yesterday, we'd have met there. نقادة ٢٠٢٤

a. had visited **b.** visited **c.** were visited **d.** visit

30. If we had a modern car, we .... able to go to Luxor fast. السادات ٢٠٢٤ طما ٢٠٢٤

a. will be **b.** would be **c.** would have been **d.** won't be

31. If you needed to find information about a new movie, how .... it? فاقوس ٢٠٢٤

a. would you get **b.** will you get **c.** can you get **d.** you would get

32. If you mix yellow and blue, you .... green. روض الفرج ٢٠٢٤

a. would get **b.** get **c.** will get **d.** got

33. If you .... more care, you would have minimized your mistakes. البلينا سوهاج٢٠٢٣

a. had had **b.** had been **c.** were **d.** had

Exercise 9h Language Level 2

34. If I .... rich, I would have a lot of expensive things like a villa and a car. العياط ٢٠٢٤
a. had b. were c. had been d. had had

35. If she read the question carefully, she .... the wrong answer. الجيزة ٢٠٢٤ القوصية ٢٠٢٤
a. would give c. will give b. wouldn't give d. won't give

36. I .... my umbrella if it rains. This is my habit. سوهاج ٢٠٢٤
a. take b. will take c. would take d. would have taken

37. Hala is careful, as usual. If she ...... careful, she would make mistakes. LM دمياط ٢٠٢٤
a. isn't being b. aren't c. was d. wasn't

38. If I had money, I'd donate some to charity, but unfortunately I .... any. شربين ٢٠٢٤
a. haven't b. don't have c. didn't have d. hadn't had

39. If she put water in the fridge, she .... some cold water. العياط ٢٠٢٤
a. get b. will get c. would get d. would have got

40. .... me the truth in detail if you want me to believe you. القاهرة ٢٠٢٤
a. Tell b. Will tell c. Would tell d. Telling

41. If they found a company of their own, I .... to work there. قويسنا ٢٠٢٤
a. apply b. would apply c. could apply d. will apply

42. If you heat metal, ... it expand? شمال سينا ٢٠٢٣
a. will b. do c. is d. does

43. If this trip cost much money, I .... join it. قنا ٢٠٢٣
a. don't b. won't c. wouldn't d. am mot

44. He .... the story if he read it again. أطفيح ٢٠٢٤
a. will enjoy b. would enjoy c. will have enjoyed d. can enjoy

45. If I had time, I'd help you. It means .... ميت غمر ٢٠٢٣ قليوب ٢٠٢٤
a. I was busy b. I'm busy c. I'm free d. I will help you

46. He .... on a diet if he wants to lose weight. LM
a. had to go b. should go c. have gone d. will go

47. If I .... money, I would have a car. العدوة ٢٠٢٤
a. had b. had had c. have d. am having

48. If I study for long, I always .... tired and dizzy. ههيا ٢٠٢٤
a. feel b. will feel c. felt d. would feel

49. If my mother put the plate on the shelf, I .... it. أولاد صقر ٢٠٢٤
a. would see b. see c. will see d. would have seen

50. If he cut his finger with that knife, it .... terribly. طوخ ٢٠٢٤
a. hurts b. would hurt c. will hurt d. hurt

51. If metals .... they contract. البحر الأحمر ٢٠٢٤
a. cools b. cool c. cooling d. are cooled

52. If she cut her finger, she .... go to hospital. ميت سلسيل ٢٠٢٤
a. will b. may c. might d. might have

53. If our food .... hygienically, we can have some health problems. الفيوم ٢٠٢٣
a. doesn't prepare b. isn't prepared c. is prepared d. will prepare

54. If he read the news, he .... everything about the terrible accident. بركة السبع ٢٠٢٤
a. may know b. will know c. would know d. know

55. If I were tall, I would play basketball. This means that I .... tall. LM النصر ٢٠٢٣
a. am not b. am c. was not d. was

Exercise 9h Language Level 3

56. If he .... , he would have gone to the party.
a. had invited b. was invited c. had been invited d. were invited

57. If I had written work, I .... it at once. دكرنس ٢٠٢٤
a. will do b. would do c. had done d. would have done

58. If I had used clothes, I .... to a charity. الفيوم ٢٠٢٤
a. would donate b. would have donated c. will donate d. donated

59. They will build a villa if .... الاسكندرية ٢٠٢٣
a. needs b. is needed c. need d. needed

60. They will visit Malak if .... قنا ٢٠٢٤
a. is necessary b. necessary c. was necessary d. necessity

61. If it freezes tonight, we .... heaters out around the orange trees.
a. places b. place c. are placing d. will place

62. If he .... , he would have to attend the party. المحلة ٢٠٢٣
a. had been invited b. was invited c. invited d. had invited

63. If the money I had, ... enough, I'd have rented a better flat. البحيرة ٢٠٢٣
a. been b. was c. had d. had been

64. If .... , iron expands. I am sure you all know this fact. الاسماعيلية ٢٠٢٤
a. it was heated b. it had been heated
c. heated d. is heated

65. If you drop that glass mug, it .... جرجا ٢٠٢٤
a. 'll break b. breaks c. break d. 'd break

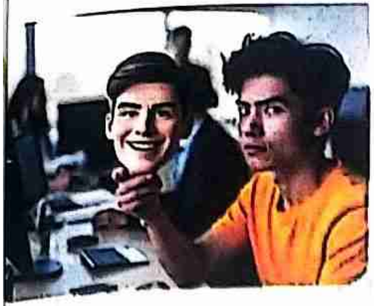
66. If it is cold this month, our plants .... شرق مدينة نصر ٢٠٢٤
a. would die b. will die c. had died d. die

67. If he had broken bones , he .... by himself.
a. wouldn't walk b. wouldn't have walked c. won't walk d. doesn't walk

68. If the coach had talented players, he .... the final match. البحيرة ٢٠٢٣
a. wouldn't have won b. would have won c. would win d. will win

2) Rewrite the following sentences using the word (s) in brackets:

1. Ice turns into water once it melts. (If)
2. Eating healthy food helps you stay strong. (if)
3. We don't trust him because he always lies. (If)
4. I will buy you a gift when you pass the exam. (If)
5. You need to work hard to get a promotion. (if)
6. The coach will be angry because we are late for training. (if)
7. He will receive a medal when he wins the race. (if)
8. People feel tired when they don't get enough sleep. (If)
9. It's a good idea not to smoke. (If)
10. Sleeping early makes you wake up early. (If)
11. He was late, so the teacher punished him. (If)
12. She won't learn the piano because she doesn't practise. (If)
13. My alarm clock didn't ring, so I woke up late. (If)
14. She didn't visit him because she didn't know his address. (If)



Unit 3

Truth Vs. Lies

Lessons
3 Fake Appearance
2 The Truth Trap

Key Vocabulary

rumor $^{(n)}$	شائعة / خبر متداول	misinformation$^{(n)}$	معلومات مضللة	openness$^{(n)}$	الانفتاح / الصراحة
trust$^{(v/n)}$	ثقة/ يثق	argument$^{(n)}$	جدال / حجة	perfection$^{(n)}$	الكمال
ruin$^{(v/n)}$	خراب / دمار / يدمر	attack$^{(v/n)}$	يهاجم / هجوم	authenticity $^{(n)}$	الأصالة / المصداقية
invisible$^{(adj)}$	غير مرئي / مخفي	confused $^{(adj)}$	مشوش / مرتبك	inspiring $^{(adj)}$	ملهم / مسبب لإلهام
defense$^{(n)}$	الدفاع	sincerity$^{(n)}$	الإخلاص / الصدق	genuine$^{(adj)}$	أصيل / حقيقي
interaction $^{(n)}$	تفاعل / تواصل	role model$^{(n)}$	قدوة/نموذج يُحتذى به	awareness$^{(n)}$	وعي / إدراك

Main Vocabulary

authentic$^{(adj)}$	أصلي / حقيقي	headline$^{(n)}$	عنوان رئيسي	influencer$^{(n)}$	شخص مؤثر
step$^{(n)}$	خطوة	icon$^{(n)}$	رمز / أيقونة	battle$^{(v/n)}$	معركة / يقاتل
critical$^{(adj)}$	نقدي / خطير/ حاسم	imitation $^{(n)}$	تقليد	bomb$^{(v/n)}$	قنبلة / يقصف
curious$^{(adj)}$	فضولي	impression$^{(n)}$	انطباع	fake$^{(adj)}$	مزيف
edited$^{(adj)}$	مُحرَّر	individuals $^{(n)}$	أفراد	appreciate$^{(v)}$	يقدّر
misleading$^{(adj)}$	مضلّل	luxury$^{(n)}$	رفاهية	appearance$^{(n)}$	مظهر
perfect$^{(adj)}$	كامل / مثالي	news story$^{(n)}$	خبر صحفي	combine$^{(v)}$	يدمج
popular$^{(adj)}$	شائع / مشهور	weapons$^{(n)}$	أسلحة	destroy$^{(v)}$	يدمّر
scientific$^{(adj)}$	علمي	followers$^{(n)}$	متابعون	encourage$^{(v)}$	يشجّع
sensational$^{(adj)}$	مثير	process$^{(n)}$	عملية	motivate $^{(v)}$	يحفّز
advertisement$^{(n)}$	إعلان	product$^{(n)}$	منتج	pour $^{(v)}$	يسكب / يصب
blog post$^{(n)}$	مدونة / منشور	resources$^{(n)}$	موارد	protect$^{(v)}$	يحمي
bullet $^{(n)}$	رصاصة	violence$^{(n)}$	عنف	require$^{(v)}$	يتطلب
makeup $^{(n)}$	مستحضرات التجميل	staged lifestyles $^{(n)}$	أنماط حياة مصطنعة	fight$^{(v/n)}$	يصارع / يحارب / حرب
confidence$^{(n)}$	ثقة			press$^{(v/n)}$	يضغط / الصحافة
generation$^{(n)}$	جيل	victim$^{(n)}$	ضحية	divide$^{(v/n)}$	يقسّم / انقسام
looks$^{(n)}$	الملامح / الشكل	social media$^{(n)}$	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي	smile$^{(n)}$	ابتسامة
conflict$^{(n)}$	صراع / نزاع	tank$^{(n)}$	دبابة / خزان	respect$^{(v/n)}$	يحترم / احترام
creativity$^{(n)}$	إبداع	teens$^{(n)}$	مراهقون		

Collocations

state an argument	يطرح حجة / رأيًا	damage trust	يُضعف الثقة
introduce an idea	يقدم فكرة	make people angry	يُغضب الناس
ruin their career	يدمّر مسيرتهم المهنية	restate your argument	إعادة عرض حجتك / رأيك
give feedback	يعطي ملاحظات / تعليقات	fight wars	يخوض الحروب
cause violence	يسبب العنف	send a message	يرسل رسالة

Expressions & Prepositions

click on an icon	اضغط على أيقونة	hide behind illusions	يختبئ خلف الأوهام
children in need	أطفال محتاجون	create lasting impressions	يخلق انطباعات دائمة
questioning mind	عقلية ناقدة / عقل كثير التساؤل	combine ... with	يدمج ... مع
at least	على الأقل	protect from	يحمي من
daily struggles	صراعات يومية / معاناة يومية	cause ... to stop	يسبب توقف...
supported by facts	مدعوم بالحقائق	benefit from	يستفيد من
reflect on	يتأمل في / يفكر مليًا في	share with	يشارك مع
avoid scams	يتجنب عمليات الاحتيال	fight back	يقاوم / يرد
check sources	يتحقق من المصادر	fight over	يتشاجر حول
gain more followers	يكسب المزيد من المتابعين	give a chance	يمنح فرصة
depend on	يعتمد على	spread across the world	ينتشر في جميع أنحاء العالم

Definitions

awareness	وعي / إدراك	▸ the state of knowing and understanding what is happening around you
defense	دفاع / حماية	▸ the act of protecting someone or something from attack, criticism, or danger
invisible	غير مرئي	▸ impossible to see; not visible to the eye
misinformation	معلومات مضللة	▸ information meant to make people believe something false
rumor	شائعة	▸ a story that may not be true, passed from person to person
trust	ثقة	▸ a belief that someone or something is reliable, good, honest, or effective

Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym	Antonym
awareness	وعي / إدراك	knowledge / understanding	ignorance / unawareness
destroy	يدمّر	ruin / demolish / wreck	build / create / construct
improve	يحسّن	enhance / develop / upgrade	worsen / decline / damage
invisible	غير مرئي	unseen / hidden / concealed	visible / clear / obvious
luxury	رفاهية	comfort / richness	poverty / need
popular	شائع / محبوب	well-liked / famous / trendy	unpopular / disliked / unknown
protect	يحمي	defend / guard / shield	harm / attack / endanger
support	يدعم	assist / help / encourage	oppose / resist / hinder
trust	ثقة	confidence / belief / faith	doubt / suspicion / distrust
violence	عنف	force / aggression	peace / calm

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
destroy	يدمر	destruction	تدمير	destructive	هدام / مدمر
damage	يضر	damage	ضرر	damaged	متضرر
make	يصنع / يجعل	making	صناعة / فعل	made	مصنوع
confuse	يربك	confusion	ارتباك	confused / confusing	مرتبك / مُربك
believe	يصدق	belief / believer	اعتقاد / مؤمن	believable	معقول
control	يسيطر	control	سيطرة	controlling	مسيطر
require	يتطلب	requirement	متطلب / شرط	required	مطلوب
protect	يحمي	protection	حماية	protective	وقائي / حامي

Language Notes

Notice the Difference

wars	حروب (نزاعات بين دول أو جماعات)	⇔	**fights**	معارك / قتال (أصغر من الحرب)
bullets	رصاص (ذخيرة الأسلحة)	⇔	**bombs**	قنابل (أكبر وأخطر للتدمير)
lies	أكاذيب (غير صحيحة بالكامل)	⇔	**half-truths**	أنصاف الحقائق (جزء صح والباقي مضلل)
rumor	إشاعة (خبر غير مؤكد)	⇔	**fact**	حقيقة (شيء مثبت وصحيح)
angry	غاضب	⇔	**afraid**	خائف
confused	مرتبك	⇔	**confusing**	مُربك
defense	دفاع	⇔	**attack**	هجوم
career	مسيرة مهنية / حياة وظيفية	⇔	**job**	وظيفة محددة
invisible	غير مرئي	⇔	**visible**	مرئي
truth	الحقيقة	⇔	**lie**	كذبة
awareness	وعي / إدراك	⇔	**ignorance**	جهل
fun	شيء ممتع / مسلٍ (اسم أو صفة)	⇔	**funny**	شيء مضحك / يثير الضحك (صفة)
believe	يعتقد / يؤمن	⇔	**belief**	اعتقاد / إيمان
instead	بدلاً من ذلك (تأتي غالباً في نهاية الجملة أو وحدها كظرف).	⇔	**instead of**	بدلاً من (يتبعها اسم أو فعل في صيغة ing)
routine	روتين / عادة يومية معتادة	⇔	**red-tape**	الروتين الحكومي / الإجراءات المعقدة والبيروقراطية

mislead, misleading & misleadingly

mislead	يضلّل / يخدع	▶ The company **misled** its customers.
misleading	مضلّل	▶ The report is **misleading**.
misleadingly	بشكل مضلّل	▶ He **misleadingly** presented the facts to gain support.

trust, trustworthy, trustfulness, mistrust & distrust

trust	يثق	▶ I **trust** my best friend.
trust	ثقة	▶ **Trust** is important in every relationship.
trustworthy	جدير بالثقة	▶ She is a **trustworthy** teacher.
trustfulness	ثقة / تصديق	▶ His **trustfulness** makes him too naive.
mistrust / distrust	عدم ثقة / يشك	▶ They **mistrust** the new leader.

defend, defense, defender & defensive

defend	يدافع	He will **defend** his country.
defense	دفاع / حماية	The soldiers prepared their **defense.**
defender	مدافع	The **defender** stopped the attack.
defensive	دفاعي	She became **defensive** when asked about her mistake.

The Truth Trap

Before you start:

Reading

1) Answer the following questions.

1. How do you usually check if information is true before believing it?
2. In your opinion, How can lies be stopped?

2) Read the following text

In the past, wars were fought with soldiers, tanks, and planes. Today, a new kind of war is spreading across the world. It does not use bullets(1) or bombs(2). Instead, it uses words - lies, half-truths, and rumors(3). Experts call this the "war of the new generation".

In this kind of war, the goal is not to destroy buildings, but to damage trust(4). Lies can be used to make people angry, afraid, or confused. A rumor can spread quickly through social media, making millions believe something that is not true. When people no longer know what to believe, it becomes easier to control them.

The victims(5) of these "information attacks" can be individuals, companies, or even whole countries. A false story about a famous person can ruin(6) their career. A rumor about a company can cause customers to stop buying its products.

One dangerous thing about this invisible(7) weapon is how hard it is to fight back. Once a lie is shared online, it can travel faster than the truth. People may share it without checking if it is correct. Some do it because they are angry, others because they find it exciting.

Protecting ourselves from this new kind of war requires awareness(8). We must think before we believe or share a story. We should ask: "Where did this information come from?

Is it supported by facts? Who might benefit from me believing this?" In the war of the new generation, the most powerful defense(9) is a careful and questioning mind.

١) رصاص
٢) قنابل
٣) شائعات
٤) ثقة
٥) ضحايا
٦) يدمر / يتلف
٧) غير مرئي
٨) وعي
٩) دفاع

b) Answer the following questions.

1. Why do experts call this kind of conflict the "war of the new generation"?
2. How can lies and rumors affect a company? Give an example.
3. Why is it difficult to fight against lies once they are online?
4. What steps can individuals take to protect themselves from false information?
5. How can lies be used to divide people in a country?

Listening

1) Listen and put (T) True or (F) False:

1. Creativity in appearance can be fun and inspiring. (.........)
2. Genuine appearance helps build respect and trust. (.........)
3. Confidence only comes from luxury and perfection. (.........)
4. Real smiles and acts of kindness create lasting impressions. (.........)

Fake Appearance

In modern life, appearances(1) can sometimes be misleading(2), but they also remind us of the importance of being genuine(3). Social media and advertisements(4) may show perfect images, yet they give us the chance to reflect on what really matters. Instead of comparing ourselves with edited pictures or staged lifestyles, we can use them as motivation(5) to appreciate honesty and real achievements, which would be great if we did.

Throughout history, people have enjoyed expressing themselves through clothes, makeup(6), and style. This creativity(7) can be fun and inspiring as long as we remember that true worth(8) does not depend on looks alone. If we combine appearance(9) with sincerity(10), we send a powerful message of confidence(11). Many influencers(12) and role models(13) today are turning towards authenticity(14) - they share their daily struggles(15), simple routines(16), and true feelings. Their openness(17) encourages others to value honesty more than perfection(18). If they do so, many will follow.

The bright side(19) is clear: genuine appearance builds trust, respect, and stronger connections(20). Real smiles, acts of kindness, and sincere words create lasting impressions. Confidence grows when we celebrate who we truly are — not when we try to hide behind illusions. By choosing truth over imitation, we inspire both ourselves and others.

١) مظاهر
٢) مضلل
٣) أصيل / حقيقي
٤) إعلانات
٥) دافع / حافز
٦) مكياج
٧) إبداع
٨) القيمة الحقيقية
٩) مظهر
١٠) إخلاص
١١) ثقة
١٢) مؤثرين
١٣) قدوات
١٤) الأصالة / المصداقية
١٥) التحديات اليومية
١٦) روتين
١٧) الصراحة
١٨) الكمال
١٩) جانب مشرق
٢٠) علاقات / روابط

2) answer the questions:

1. How can social media images motivate us in a positive way?
2. What does combining appearance with sincerity do?
3. How do authentic role models influence others?

Exercise 04 Key Vocabulary

1. People started spreading false .... about the famous singer's private life.
a. rumors b. events c. theories d. plans

2. In today's digital world, we must be careful not to spread .... online.
a. influences b. perfection c. misinformation d. sincerity

3. Good relationships are built on .... and honesty.
a. anger b. trust c. doubt d. fear

4. Some tiny insects are almost .... to the human eye.
a. colorful b. visible c. bright d. invisible

5. The soldiers worked together to build a strong .... against enemy attacks.
a. defense b. attract c. celebration d. journey

6. Group activities in class encourage student .... and teamwork.
a. isolation b. interaction c. conflict d. silence

7. Many people live under the .... that money brings happiness.
a. illness b. fact c. illusion d. rule

8. The two friends had a serious .... about what movie to watch.
a. party b. agreement c. journey d. argument

9. Heavy rain can .... the plans for an outdoor wedding.
a. protect b. create c. ruin d. improve

10. The castle walls were built to protect the city from an enemy ....
a. attack b. gift c. speech d. visit

11. She felt completely .... after hearing so many different opinions.
a. exciting b. confused c. surprising d. sleepy

12. The .... of the painting was confirmed by art experts.
a. replica b. copy c. fake d. authenticity

13. Nobody is perfect, so don't expect .... from others.
a. mistake b. perfection c. failure d. weakness

14. People appreciate honesty and .... in friendships.
a. selfishness b. anger c. sincerity d. fear

15. A good teacher can be a positive .... for students to follow.
a. follower b. stranger c. enemy d. role model

16. Effective communication requires honesty and .... about your thoughts and feelings.
a. openness b. secrecy c. silence d. fear

17. The teacher gave a/an .... speech that motivated all the students to work hard.
a. inspiring b. boring c. confusing d. tiring

18. She gave me a .... smile that showed her true feelings.
a. inspired b. genuine c. confused d. edited

Exercise 04 Main Vocabulary

19. The signature on this document is .... and not fake.
a. authentic b. false c. fake d. wrong

20. She shared her travel experiences in a new .... on her website.
a. crime b. deadline c. headline d. blog post

21. The advertisement was .... and tricked many people.
a. honest b. misleading c. accurate d. clear

22. The little boy was very .... about how airplanes fly.
a. lazy b. bored c. tired d. curious

23. The article was carefully .... before it was published.
a. edited b. editing c. deleted d. ruined

24. Nobody is ...., but we can all try to improve.
a. weak b. wrong c. perfect d. tired

25. Football is the most .... sport in many countries.
a. hidden b. bored c. rare d. popular

26. The influencer gained thousands of new .... after posting a viral video.
a. leaders b. followers c. bosses d. teachers

27. The job will .... a college degree and two years of experience.
a. require b. avoid c. reject d. lose

28. The newspaper's front page had a shocking ....
a. email b. essay c. headline d. deadline

29. The printer .... on the screen means the machine is ready.
a. file b. button c. bullet d. icon

30. The watch was a /an ...., not the original brand.
a. imitation b. truth c. fact d. reality

31. Please .... the juice into the glass carefully.
a. spill b. drink c. pour d. fill

32. We must .... the environment for future generations.
a. pollute b. harm c. destroy d. protect

33. Teachers should .... students to ask questions in class.
a. encourage b. ignore c. reject d. stop

34. The soldiers prepared for a difficult .... ahead.
a. party b. battle c. meeting d. journey

35. The company hired a/an .... to promote their new brand online.
a. influencer b. teacher c. follower d. actor

36. Bad weather can greatly .... your mood and energy.
a. change b. fix c. protect d. affect

37. Let's .... our ideas to create a strong project.
a. destroy b. separate c. combine d. avoid

38. The fire will .... the forest if not stopped quickly.
a. improve b. fix c. build d. destroy

39. A good coach can .... players to give their best effort.
a. discourage b. motivate c. hurt d. confuse

40. The movie was banned because it contained too much ....
a. peace b. kindness c. violence d. safety

41. The program is designed to help .... make better decisions.
a. sleepers b. teens c. babies d. toddlers

42. In the past, wars were fought with soldiers, tanks, and ....
a. clothes b. toys c. books d. weapons

Exercise 04 Expressions, Prepositions, Derivatives, Notes & Definitions

43. .... is the state of knowing and understanding what is happening around you.
a. Awareness b. Invisible c. Misinformation d. Defense

44. The team decided to fight .... after losing the first round.
a. up b. back c. over d. on

45. Influencers try to post interesting content to .... more followers.
a. attack b. gain c. generate d. ruin

46. The word .... means a story that may not be true, passed from person to person.
a. rumor b. misinformation c. invisible d. deceive

47. This project will give us the......... to learn new skills.
a. rumor b. chaos c. lie d. chance

48. The virus began to spread .... the city very quickly.
a. across b. under c. on d. off

49. Some people hide .... illusions to avoid facing the truth about their lives.
a. under b. behind c. on d. over

50. First meetings are important because they create .... impressions on others.
a. loss b. lost c. lasting d. last

51. To make a great design, you should combine creativity .... technology.
a. by b. at c. in d. with

52. It's important to reflect .... our past mistakes to avoid repeating them.
a. over b. in c. at d. on

53. Be careful online and always .... scams by checking websites carefully.
a. avoid b. get c. give d. meet

54. The teacher will .... feedback on your writing to help you improve.
a. harm b. fight c. ruin d. give

55. Hateful speech can cause .... in a community.
a. violence b. progress c. prosperity d. success

56. Lying to friends can seriously damage .... between you and them.
a. suspicion b. trust c. anger d. doubt

Choose the (Two) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given.

57. Reading every day will improve your vocabulary. The synonym of "improve" is ....
a. enhance b. damage c. develop d. decline e. worsen

58. Self-awareness helps you understand your emotions better. The antonym of " awareness " is ....
a. knowledge b. ignorance c. understanding d. unawareness e. confidence

59. Some insects are so tiny that they seem invisible to the human eye. "Invisible" can be replaced by ....
a. visible b. unseen c. obvious d. hidden e. clear

60. Heavy rains destroyed many houses in the village. The antonym of " destroy" is ....
a. build b. ruin c. create d. demolish e. wreck

61. Football is the most popular sport in the world. "popular" can be replaced by ....
a. unpopular b. well-liked c. disliked d. unknown e. famous

62. The special ink becomes invisible after a few minutes. The antonym of "invisible" is...
a. visible b. unseen c. clear d. concealed e. hidden

63. The fire will destroy the forest if it is not controlled. "Destroy" can be replaced by .... .
a. build b. ruin c. create d. demolish e. construct

64. A sports car is a luxury that not everyone can afford. The antonym of "luxury" is ....
a. richness b. need c. comfort d. poverty e. confidence

65. Staying in a five-star hotel is a luxury for most people. The synonym of "luxury" is .... .
a. comfort b. necessity c. richness d. poverty e. need

66. The new song became popular on social media. The antonym of " popular " is ....
a. famous b. well-liked c. disliked d. trendy e. unpopular

67. The campaign raised awareness about the importance of recycling. The synonym of "awareness" is ....
a. knowledge b. ignorance c. understanding d. unawareness e. calm

68. She is taking a course to improve her skills. The antonym of " improve " is ....
a. enhance b. develop c. upgrade d. worsen e. decline

حـــالات حـــذف If

حذف If الحالة الاولى | نستخدم بدلا من (If) (Should + ... + inf.) كالتالي:

- ★ If Toka studies hard, she will succeed.
  = Should Toka study hard, she will succeed.

حذف If الحالة الثانية | نستخدم بدلا من (If)

① إذا كانت (were) فعل أساسى فى الجملة تاتى مكان (if) وتكون بمعنى لو كنت:

- ★ If I were you, I'd help poor people. = Were I you, I'd help poor people.

② إذا كانت (had) فعل أساسى فى الجملة تاتى مكان (if) وتكون بمعنى لو امتلك :

- ★ If I had much money, I'd buy a car. = Had I much money, I'd buy a car.

③ اذا وجد فعل أساسى غير (were) تاتى Should + subject.+ inf. مكان (if):

- ★ If Toka studied hard, she'd succeed.
  = Should Toka study hard, she'd succeed.

④ إذا وجد فعل أساسى غير (were) تاتى Were + subject + to + inf. مكان (if) :

- ★ If Toka studied hard, she'd succeed.
  = Were Toka to study hard, she'd succeed.

حذف If الحالة الثالثة | نستخدم بدلا من (If) (Had + subject + P.P) كالتالي:

- ★ If Toka had left earlier, she wouldn't have missed the train.
  = Had Toka left earlier, she wouldn't have missed the train. -

بدائـــــــل If

If = in case = providing (that) = provided (that) = as long as
= on condition that = supposing (that) = suppose = imagine (that) إذا / لو

- ★ You can borrow my pen if / provided that / on condition that / as long as you give it back.
- ★ In case Toka left earlier, she wouldn't miss the train.
- ★ Supposing / Imagine (that) you found a job in Cairo, what would you do?

in case

- ★ I'll leave my mobile phone switched on in case Jana calls.
- ★ I'll draw a map for you in case you have problems finding our house.
- ★ I'll remind them about the meeting in case they've forgotten.
- ★ I'll give you my phone number in case you need to contact me.
- ★ You should insure your bike in case it is stolen.

If (there is)
= In case of + noun / V + ing → فى حالة
= With = By

- ★ In case of emergency, call 122.
- ★ Toka wouldn't miss the train with / by leaving earlier.

in case of ... = if there is....

- ★ In case of fire, please leave the building as quickly as possible. (= If there is a fire)
- ★ In case of emergency, call this number. (= If there is an emergency)

unless =
- **except if = If ... not ...** → إذا لم - لو لم (جملة)
- **without + noun or v + ing.** → إذا لم - لو لم
- **but for + noun** → إذا لم - لو لم

- ★ If they didn't have tickets, they wouldn't be able to watch the match.
- ★ Unless they had tickets, they wouldn't be able to watch the match.
- ★ Without having tickets, they wouldn't be able to watch the match.
- ★ If Toka didn't leave earlier, she would miss the train.
- ★ Unless Toka left earlier, she would miss the train.
- ★ Without / But for leaving earlier, Toka would miss the train.

If
- **it is not for + inf. + ing/n.**
- **it were not for + inf. + ing/n.**
- **it hadn't been for + inf. + ing/n.**

, subj. +
- **will + inf** → الحالة الأولى
- **would +**
  - **inf** → الحالة الثانية
  - **have + P.P.** → الحالة الثالثة

- ★ If it is not for your help, I won't be able to watch the match.
- ★ If it were not for your help, I wouldn't be able to watch the match.
- ★ If it hadn't been for your help, I wouldn't have been able to watch the match.

1. (**Had** - Were) I money, I would buy a car.
2. (Had - **Were**) I a bird, I could fly.
3. (**Had** - Were) I wings, I could fly.
4. (**Should** - Were) he study hard, he would pass the exam.
5. (Should - **Were**) I to study hard, I would get full marks.
6. (**Should** - Were) you meet Ali, tell him your good news.
7. (If - **Had**) I been stupid, I wouldn't have solved that problem.
8. (If - **Had**) I read the book, I would have explained it.
9. If the money I had, (had - had had - **had been**) enough, I would have bought a car.
10. If he read the book, (will - **would**) he understand it?

يا تركيزاااااتك يا حركاااااتك
حاول تفهم وتكتب سبب الاختيار

انتظروا!!!!!!
كتاب مراجعة العمالقة للصف الأول الثانوي
العمالقة
سلسلة Giants GIANTS العمالقة

Exercise 04 Language Level 1

1. They wouldn't be in London now .... they caught the midday plane. العياط ٢٠٢٤
a. unless b. provided that c. in case of d. without

2. .... doing regular exercises, I will be overweight. القاهرة ٢٠٢٤
a. Without b. Unless c. As long as d. If

3. Unless you had a modern car, you .... able to go to Alexandria. أخميم ٢٠٢٤
a. will be b. won't be
c. wouldn't be d. wouldn't have been

4. I will buy some tablets .... I feel a headache in the meeting room. الدقهلية ٢٠٢٣
a. in case of b. in case c. unless d. a & b

5. I'll swim in the sea today .... it's windy at the beach. شبرا ٢٠٢٤
a. unless b. in case of c. provided d. in case

6. Without .... the questions carefully, you couldn't answer them correctly. الإبراهيمية ٢٠٢٤
a. read b. have read c. reading d. is reading

7. If you .... in a hurry, leave that task for me. منفلوط ٢٠٢٤
a. were b. had been c. have d. are

8. .... my teachers' support, I wouldn't have come the first in the final exam. بلبيس ٢٠٢٤
a. Unless b. If c. Without d. In case of

9. .... working hard, we can't reach our goals. سيدى غازى ٢٠٢٤
a. If b. As long as c. Unless d. Without

10. Rodina wouldn't have been a doctor .... she had studied hard. ميت سلسيل ٢٠٢٤
a. unless b. without c. in case of d. if

11. Get your umbrella .... it rains tomorrow. شبين القناطر ٢٠٢٣
a. in case b. unless c. as long as d. provides

12. .... training hard, you can't win the match. الاسكندرية ٢٠٢٣
a. Without b. Unless c. In case of d. If

13. .... you refused to help me, I wouldn't solve that problem. Many thanks, Hala. £M
a. Without b. If c. In case of d. Unless

14. You will miss the train .... you arrive at the station in time. £M
a. if b. unless c. because d. in case of

15. .... they had much time, they would have studied better. بنها ٢٠٢٤
a. If b. Were c. Should d. Had

16. You can't have a good job .... good qualifications. طوخ ٢٠٢٤
a. unless b. if c. without d. in case

17. .... I a bird, I would fly. قليوب ٢٠٢٤
a. If b. Were c. Had d. Should

18. .... you boil water, it turns into vapour. الشرقية ٢٠٢٣
a. Unless b. Without c. But for d. In case

19. .... she arrive early, I would help her.
a. If b. Should c. Were d. Unless

المنيا ٢٠٢٣

20. .... having free time, let's have coffee together.

a. Without   b. In case of   c. If   d. Unless

بني سويف ٢٠٢٣

21. .... working hard, you won't achieve your dreams.

a. If   b. Unless   c. Without   d. As long as

Exercise 9h Language Level 2

النزهة ٢٠٢٤

22. .... Soha to read this book, she would get much information.

a. If   b. Should   c. had   d. Were

البدرشين ٢٠٢٤

23. .... my friends chosen a better destination, I would have joined them.

a. If   b. In case   c. Were   d. Had

طامية ٢٠٢٤

24. Had I had a good memory, I .... his name.

a. would remember   b. will remember

c. remembered   d. would have remembered

شرق الزقازيق ٢٠٢٤

25. .... I had any bread, I would have gone to the bakery.

a. Had   b. If   c. Hadn't   d. Unless

العاشر من رمضان ٢٠٢٤

26. .... he read a lot; he wouldn't have any information.

a. If   b. Should   c. Unless   d. Were

الدقهلية ٢٠٢٣

27. .... their help, I wouldn't have done any remarkable progress.

a. If   b. Unless   c. Without   d. If only

شرق الاسكندرية ٢٠٢٤ القناطر ٢٠٢٤ الاسماعيلية ٢٠٢٤

28. .... he to study hard, he would get high marks.

a. If   b. Had   c. Would   d. Were

القومية أسيوط ٢٠٢٣

29. .... I a car, I would be happy.

a. Had   b. If   c. Were   d. Unless

£M

30. You will miss the lecture .... you come on time.

a. if   b. unless   c. because   d. in case of

بنها ٢٠٢٣

31. .... he had enough money, he would have bought a car.

a. Had   b. If   c. Unless   d. Hadn't

£M

32. .... careful, he wouldn't make that silly mistake.

a. Is he   b. Wasn't he   c. Were he   d. Isn't he

£M

33. You won't be allowed to enter the club .... you hold your membership card.

a. when   b. if   c. unless   d. without

سوهاج ٢٠٢٤

34. .... you to go to bed early, you would get up early.

a. Were   b. if   c. Should   d. Unless

35. .... I your teacher, I would force you to try harder.

a. Were   b. Was   c. Had   d. Should

36. .... you were accused of robbery, what would you do?

a. Supposing   b. Imagined   c. Unless   d. In case of

37. .... raining, we won't be able to finish the game.

a. If it didn't stop   b. Should it stop   c. If it stopped   d. Unless it stops

38. Mother says we can watch TV on .... that we do our homework first.

a. condition   b. provided   c. long as   d. if

39. **Had he been more careful, he .... low marks.**

a. wouldn't get **b.** wouldn't have got **c.** will get **d.** would have got

40. **.......... you were in China, what food would you eat?**

a. In case of **b.** Unless **c.** Imagine **d.** Without

41. **.......... my father, you would have thought he was wonderful too.**

a. If you knew **b.** Had you known **c.** Should you **d.** Were you to know

42. **.......... our savings, we wouldn't have been able to make the payments.**

a. But for **b.** In spite of **c.** If it weren't for **d.** In case of

Exercise 9h Language Level 3

43. **.......... taking drugs damages you, stop them at once.** منيا القمح ٢٠٢٤

a. Were **b.** Without **c.** Should **d.** If

44. **........ playing computer games wastes your time, you can play as you like.** شبين القناطر ٢٠٢٤

a. In case of **b.** If **c.** Unless **d.** Without

45. **I have to go now .... I will miss the train.** العياط ٢٠٢٤

a. consequently **b.** otherwise **c.** but for **d.** in case of

46. **.......... hesitate to help anyone as long as you can.** LM

a. To not **b.** Won't **c.** Shouldn't **d.** Don't

47. **He wouldn't agree to do extra tasks without ....**

a. paying **b.** being paid **c.** be paid **d.** been paid

48. **Imagine being a millionaire, what .... you do?** الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٣

a. will **b.** would **c.** can **d.** may

49. **.......... come, you would meet the boss today.** القليوبية ٢٠٢٣

a. If you **b.** Unless you **c.** You should **d.** Were you to

50. **.......... the fireman's efforts, the house would have been burnt.** سمالوط ٢٠٢٤

a. In case of **b.** But for **c.** Provided **d.** If

51. **Were the builders .... the work to schedule, they would be rewarded.** زفتى ٢٠٢٣

a. finish **b.** finished **c.** to finish **d.** had finished

52. **.......... walking is useful, I will practise it.** بنها ٢٠٢٤

a. Unless **b.** In case of **c.** Without **d.** If

53. **.........being accurate is necessary, I'll overlook the so many mistake you make.** الخانكة ٢٠٢٤

a. Unless **b.** If **c.** In case of **d.** Without

2) Rewrite the following sentences using the word (s) in brackets:

1. **He won't be part of the team because he is too short.** **(unless)**
2. **I'll help you only if you are honest with me.** **(as long as)**
3. **He will get high grades only when he works hard.** **(provided that)**
4. **Bad behavior always leads to punishment.** **(In case of)**
5. **I couldn't solve the problem because they didn't help me.** **(Without)**
6. **You won't enter the hall unless you have a ticket.** **(If)**
7. **You'll be late to school except when you wake up early.** **(unless)**
8. **She is very poor, so she can't travel abroad.** **(were)**
9. **In case he arrives early, call me.** **(Should)**

(١) استخدام التصريف الثالث (P.P) بعد as - if - when وهو هنا اختصار لجملة كانت مبنية للمجهول

- ★ **As guided** by the instructor, the students completed the test successfully.
- ★ **If accepted** for the program, you will receive a confirmation email.
- ★ **When examine**, they noticed that he had cancer.

خاص
بالطلاب المتفوقين

1. As.......... on TV, the product has a variety of uses.
   a. seeing b. see c. saw d. seen
2. If.......... for the role, he will need to relocate to a new city.
   a. chosen b. chose c. choose d. choosing
3. When .... about his plans, he remained silent.
   a. ask b. asked c. asking d. been asked

(٢) مع هذه التعبيرات الفعل يتبع الفاعل الأول

as well as / besides / in addition to / along with

- ★ He **as well as** they **likes** reading books.
- ★ They **along with** he **like** reading books.

4. Mr Al Daifi as well as his children .... to Mecca for three years.
   a. has had b. have gone c. has been d. have been

(٣) لاحظ مع هذه التعبيرات الفعل يتبع الفاعل الثاني:

not only . .but also .. / or / either .. or / neither .. nor

- ★ Neither Ahmed nor I **am** happy. ★ Not only Jana but also they **are** late.
- ★ Either I or Aya **is** out of the competition.

5. Neither Mostafa nor his friends .... wealthy.
   a. has b. is c. are d. have

(٤) لاحظ الفرق بين

used to + inf. اعتاد أن تعبر عن عادة كانت تحدث في الماضي ولم تعد تحدث الآن)

am - is - are used to (v + ing) معتاد على (تعبر عن عادة تحدث في الحاضر)

- ★ **I used to play** football when I was young, but now I **don't**.
- ★ **I'm used to playing** football.

ولكن لاحظ أن **is - are used to** تأتى بمعنى (يستخدم لكي) ويليها **inf.**:

- ★ Wind **is used to sail** ships. ★ Cotton **is used to make** clothes.

6. He .... football, but now he doesn't.
   a. is used to play b. used to playing c. is used to playing d. used to play
7. The saw .... wood.
   a. is used to cut b. used to cutting c. is used to cutting d. used to cut

خطة تطوير كتابة المقال

Essay Writing Development Plan

A Definition

★ It is an organized plan that helps the student write an essay in a systematic way.

✍ خطة منظمة تساعد الطالب على كتابة مقال بشكل منهجي

B Essay Outline

★ A brief plan or model that shows how to organize the ideas of an essay before writing.

✍ مخطط المقال يساعدك على ترتيب الأفكار وضمان وضوح المقال قبل كتابته بالكامل

"Words can be more dangerous than weapons."

★ **Plan your writing using the structure below:** خطط لكتابتك باستخدام الهيكل أدناه

1) Introduction المقدمة	**Hook** (جملة جذب الانتباه) ★ Start with a strong question ابدأ بسؤال قوي e.g., "Can a single sentence start a war"? **Background** (خلفية / تمهيد) ★ Briefly explain the idea that words have great power. **Thesis Statement**(الجملة الرئيسية / الفكرة الأساسية) ★ State your main argument clearly. اذكر فكرتك الرئيسية بوضوح e.g., "I believe words are more dangerous than weapons because they can destroy trust, ruin reputations.
2) Body Paragraph 1 الفقرة الأولى	**Harm to Individuals** ★ Topic Sentence جملة الموضوع / الفكرة الرئيسية للفقرة ★ Introduce the main idea and give a specific example. قدم الفكرة الأساسية للفقرة واذكر مثالا محددا يدعمها. e.g., "Firstly, cruel words can ruin a person's life". ★ Cyber bullying or a false rumor can destroy a person's career.
3) Body Paragraph 2 الفقرة الثانية	**Harm to Society** ★ Topic Sentence جملة الموضوع / الفكرة الرئيسية للفقرة ★ Introduce the second point قدم النقطة الثانية e.g., "Furthermore, misinformation can harm entire communities or countries". e.g., Fake news can cause public panic.
4) Conclusion الخاتمة	**Restate Thesis** (إعادة صياغة الجملة الرئيسية) ★ Summarize your main argument in different words. لخص فكرتك الرئيسية بكلمات مختلفة. e.g., "In conclusion, the ability of words to cause deep and lasting damage makes them a powerful threat". **Final Thought** (الفكرة النهائية / الخاتمة) ★ End with a reflection or a call to action . اختم بتأمل أو دعوة لاتخاذ إجراء e.g., "Therefore, we must all learn to use our words responsibly".

Exercise 9h Writing

1. **Which comes first in a typical essay outline?** SB- R1
a. Body paragraphs b. Conclusion c. Thesis statement d. References

2. **What does "imagery" mean in writing?** SB- R1
a. Pictures printed in the essay b. Drawing a map
c. Words that create mental pictures and sensory experiences d. Using bullet point

3. **An outline should be written ....** SB- R1
a. after finishing the essay b. in full paragraphs
c. only if the teacher asks d. before writing the first draft

4. **A thesis statement ....**
a. Is a background story b. Ends the essay
c. Introduces body paragraphs d. States the main argument clearly

5. **Which sentence is an example of a hook?**
a. "In conclusion, words are powerful" b. "Can a single sentence start a war?"
c. "Firstly, cruel words can ruin a person's life" d. "Cyberbullying is bad"

6. **What should you do in the conclusion?**
a. Ask a question b. Introduce new topics c. Restate your thesis d. Start with a hook

7. **A final thought in the conclusion should ....**
a. Ask unrelated questions b. Introduce a new topic
c. List body points d. End with reflection or call to action

8. **Peer feedback sentence starts with ....**
a. "I like how you..." b. "First, write the body..." c. "The essay is finished" d. "Use a hook"

9. **Which sentence is correct for peer feedback?**
a. "One strong point in your article is your examples" b. "Ignore grammar"
c. "Write a hook" d. "End your paragraph"

10. **"You could improve by..." is used to ....**
a. Praise the essay b. Give constructive advice
c. Introduce a new topic d. Summarize the essay

11. **Which is NOT part of an essay introduction?**
a. Hook b. Background c. Thesis statement d. Body Paragraph 1

12. **"In conclusion, the ability of words to cause deep and lasting damage makes them a powerful threat" is an example of:**
a. Hook b. Body paragraph c. Restating thesis d. Background

13. **What should you do before believing or sharing a story?**
a. Check sources and facts b. Share immediately
c. Ignore the content d. Write a hook

14. **Which of these is a positive peer feedback sentence?**
a. "This is wrong" b. "I like how you organized your essay"
c. "You need to rewrite everything" d. "Ignore the instructions"

15. **A thesis statement should ....**
a. Be unclear b. Only list examples
c. Be at the end of the essay d. Clearly state the main argument

16. **Why is the hook important?**
a. It entertains the reader b. It grabs attention
c. It ends the essay d. It introduces the conclusion

17. **"Can a single sentence start a war?" is an example of:**
a. Thesis statement b. Hook c. Body paragraph d. Conclusion

18. **"Your conclusion made me think about ..." is an example of ....**
a. Introduction b. Peer feedback c. Hook d. Thesis

Exercise 04 Translation

1. **The words we say and hear have a direct effect on our thoughts and if we only allow positive thoughts into our minds, we will end up with positive ideas.**

أ- للكلمات التى نقولها ونتحدثها تأثير مباشر على أفكارنا وإذا سمحنا فقط للأفكار الايجابية لتدخل عقولنا سوف تنتهى بأفكار سلبية.

ب- للكلمات التى نقولها ونسمعها تأثير مباشر على أفكارنا وإذا سمحنا فقط للأفكار الايجابية لتدخل عقولنا سوف تنتهى بأفكار ايجابية.

ج- للكلمات التى نقولها ونسمعها تأثير سيء على أفكارنا وإذا سمحنا فقط للأفكار الايجابية لتدخل عقولنا سوف تنتهى بأفكار ايجابية.

د- للكلمات التى نقولها ونسمعها تأثير مباشر على أفكارنا وإذا سمحنا فقط للتفكير النقدى لتدخل عقولنا سوف تنتهى بأفكار ايجابية.

2. **Several teenagers effectively participated in the campaign which their local council had launched against bullying and violence.**

أ- شارك القليل من المراهقين بفاعلية فى الحملة التى أطلقها مجلسهم المحلى ضد التنمر والعنف .

ب- شارك العديد من البالغين بفاعلية فى الحملة التى أطلقها مجلسهم القومى ضد التنمر والعنف.

ج- شارك العديد من المراهقين بفاعلية فى الحملة التى أطلقها مجلسهم المحلى ضد التحيز والعنف.

د- شارك العديد من المراهقين بفاعلية فى الحملة التى أطلقها مجلسهم المحلى ضد التنمر والعنف.

٣. **يجب أن نستفيد من أوقات الفراغ بشكل إيجابى عن طريق ممارسة الأنشطة مثل الرياضة أو القراءة أو الانضمام لجمعية خيرية.**

a. We must make use of free time positive by practising activities such as sports, reading or joining a charity.
b. We must make use of free time positively by practising activities such as sports, reading or joining a charity.
c. We must make use of free time positively by practising activities such as sports, reading or joining a volunteer.
d. We must make useful of free time positively by practising activities such as sports, reading or joining a charity.

٤. **تساعد جودة الإنتاج على زيادة التصدير وتقليل البطالة وجلب العملة الصعبة.**

a. Quality of production helps to increase exportation, reduce employment and bring out hard currency.
b. Quality of production helps to decrease exportation, reduce employment and bring in hard currency.
c. Quality of production helps to increase importation, reduce employment and bring in hard currency.
d. Quality of production helps to increase exportation, reduce unemployment and bring in hard currency.

٥. **حقق العلماء المصريين نجاحات عظيمة فى كل أنحاء العالم وسوف يحققوا المزيد إذا تم إعطاؤهم الفرصة الملائمة.**

a. Egyptian scientists have achieved great successful all over the world. They will achieve more if they are given the due chance.
b. Egyptian scientists have achieved great succeed all over the world. They will achieve more if they are given the due chance.
c. Egyptian scientists have achieved great successes all over the world. They will achieve more if they are giving the due chance.
d. Egyptian scientists have achieved great successes all over the world. They will achieve more if they are given the due chance.

General Exercises on Unit 3

A Vocabulary and Structure

Choose the (2) correct answers out of the (5) options given:

1. We must teach children that violence is never the answer. The antonym of " violence " is ....
   a. force b. calm c. trick d. aggression e. peace
2. My parents always support me in everything I do. "Support" can be replaced by ....
   a. assist b. hinder c. resist d. help e. oppose

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. The police caught the .... of the crime outside the mall.
   a. suspect b. victim c. thief d. witness
4. The company launched a new .... to attract customers.
   a. product b. fault c. mistake d. error
5. Students can benefit .... free online courses to improve their skills.
   a. by b. in c. at d. from
6. Please make your instructions .... so everyone can understand.
   a. confusing b. hidden c. clear d. long
7. She felt .... after reading the difficult instructions.
   a. clear b. confused c. sure d. confident
8. What .... you do if you didn't see him today? ههيا ٢٠٢٤
   a. will b. would c. did d. had
9. If I .... a language course, I would be able to speak to foreigners. سوهاج ٢٠٢٤
   a. did b. does c. will do d. would do
10. If a huge storm .... the coast, it would destroy many of the houses.
    a. is hitting b. hits c. hit d. had hit
11. Iron expands if .... LM المنيا ٢٠٢٤
    a. it is heat b. is heated c. it is heated d. heating
12. I don't have enough money. If I .... , I would have the ability to help you. اشمون ٢٠٢٤
    a. have b. had c. had had d. have had
13. "Next time, try to..." is an example of ....
    a. Thesis statement b. Peer feedback c. Body paragraph d. Hook
14. What should a hook do in an essay?
    a. Provide a detailed example b. Start with a strong question or idea
    c. Summarize the conclusion d. List vocabulary words

B Reading Comprehension

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

School is the second best home for students. They spend a lot of time there. East or west, school is the best. Let's shed more light on that topic in a few more details.

Students' classmates are like brothers to them. Teachers act as their family members: caring for them, not ignoring their needs and keeping good eyes on them. Students like spending nice time at school. There are playgrounds to practise many games in it. Students can do their hobbies there: they can play music or chess, and do different activities. They can take part in many activities such as reading in the library, cleaning their school and classrooms, planting trees and flowers, writing poetry or articles, playing in the playground, helping their society in any form. All members at school have a duty towards students.

The director or the school can make things easy for students to feel at home. He/ She can give instructions to the staff to do all what they can to motivate and encourage their students. Teachers should help their students in the same way that parents do. Teachers should make school a place to love for students. They must help students with their different problems. It is necessary that a teacher offer help and aid for his students, so that they can feel trust in their teachers. Students, also, have a role to play: they should be quiet, polite and active. They must obey their teachers as this can help in the reform of schools and education. If students are encouraged to love their school, won't they become more and more successful?

15. Students can spend .... time at school.
a. bad   b. worse   c. terrible   d. good

16. A suitable title for this passage would be ....
a. the school year   b. the director   c. students   d. teachers

17. Reading, cleaning, writing, playing and helping students are ....
a. plays   b. sports   c. games   d. activities

18. If teachers and students work together well, ... will be better.
a. our country   b. schools   c. students   d. A, B and C

19. The underlined word "He / She" refer to ....
a. the director   b. the staff   c. the student   d. the classmate

20. Students must .... their teachers' advice to become better.
a. refuse   b. follow   c. deny   d. object to

21. Teachers are .... to parents in looking after students.
a. different   b. unlike   c. unlikely   d. similar

C Writing

Translate the following sentences.

22. Our parents exert great efforts to please us and provide a happy secure life for us. We really owe much to them.
وسط طنطا ٢٠٢٤

أ- آباؤنا يبذلون جهودا كبيرة لإسعادنا وتوفير بيئة سعيدة وآمنة لنا. نحن حقا مدينون لهم بالكثير.
ب- يبذل آباؤنا جهودا عادية لإرضائنا وتوفير حياة سعيدة وآمنة لنا. نحن بالفعل دائنون لهم بالكثير.
ج- يحاول آباؤنا محاولات كبيرة لإرضائنا وتوفير حياة سعيدة وآمنة لنا. نحن بالفعل دائنون لهم بالقليل.
د- يبذل آباؤنا جهودا كبيرة لإرضائنا وتوفير حياة سعيدة وآمنة لنا. نحن حقا مدينون لهم بالكثير.

٢٣. الحياة رحلة رائعة رغم ما بها من الام .علينا أن نتحمل هذه الالام كى ننهض بمصر.

a. Life is an amazing journey, although its pain. We must endure this pain in order to improve Egypt.
b. Life is an amazed journey, despite its pain. We must endure this pain in order to improve Egypt.
c. Life is an amazing journey, despite its pain. We must endure this pain in order to improve Egypt.
d. Life is an amazing journey, however its pain. We must endure this pain in order to improve Egypt.

Rewrite the sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning.

24. I didn't hear the good news because I was abroad. (If)
25. I might hear important news, and then I'll call you. (if)

Answer the following questions:

26. Why did Santiago wait instead of pulling the line immediately?
27. How does Hemingway use the bird to symbolize guidance and hope?
28. Why does Santiago compare himself to Joe DiMaggio?

Write an essay of about 150 words on the following topic:

Fake news and fake platforms

أزهر الدقهلية ٢٠٢٢

1) Complete the following dialogue:

Alaa: What is your favourite sport?
Ehab: ❶ ....
Alaa: ❷ ....?
Ehab: I like it because of Mohammed Salah.
Alaa: ❸ ....?
Ehab: He plays for Liverpool.
Alaa: ❹ ....
Ehab: It is a famous English team.

أزهر الدقهلية ٢٠٢٢

2) Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Today millions of people know Charles Dickens for the brilliant novels he wrote. Dickens didn't only want to entertain people with his books, but he also wanted to change their opinions about the world they lived in. He hoped his readers would then do something to make the world a better place. Dickens was most interested in helping poor children because of his own difficult childhood. When he was 12 years old, his father was sent to prison and he had to leave school and work to support his family instead. His novel "David Copperfield " is an autobiography of his life.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Why is Charles Dickens a world-famous writer?
....
2. What did he hope his readers to do?
....
3. What was he most interested in?
....

B. Choose the correct answer:

4. Charles Dickens was a famous ....
a. poet   b. singer   c. storyteller   d. playwright
5. The underlined word "most "means ....
a. very   b. a little   c. slightly   d. a bit

أزهر الدقهلية ٢٠٢٢

3) A. Translate into Arabic:

You can only make friends if you spend time with them. The best way to do this is to play team sports you like.

....

....

أزهر الدقهلية ٢٠٢٢

B. Translate into English:

بينما كنت أراجع دروسى كانت والدتى تعد العشاء.

....

....

Unit 4

Save and Shine

Learning Outcomes

Reading

An article about how to go green in industry

Identify key details of a text about the importance of clean energy

Listening

A community campaign

Speaking

A debate about the importance of green industry

Writing

Write a formal email

Language

Verbs + (inf. or –ing) forms

Unit 4

Save and Shine

Lessons
1 Go Green
2 One Bag at a Time

Key Vocabulary

depletion (n)	استنزاف	overuse (n)	الإفراط في الاستخدام	go green	التحول لإسلوب حياة صديق للبيئة
landfill (n)	مدفن نفايات	misuse	إساءة استخدام / يسيء الاستخدام	manufacture (n/v)	يُصنع / صناعة
sustainable (adj)	مستدام	reusing	إعادة استخدام / يعيد استخدام	manufacturer (n)	صانع / مُنتج
initiative (n)	مبادرة	reusable (adj)	قابل لإعادة الاستخدام	global warming (n)	الاحتباس الحراري
renewable (adj)	متجددة	slogan (n)	شعار	natural resources	موارد طبيعية
eco-friendly (adj)	صديق للبيئة	campaign (n)	حملة	transform (v)	يحوّل
concern (n/v)	قلق / اهتمام / يقلق	reduce (v)	يقلل	preserve (v)	يحافظ على
swap (n/v)	يبدل / تبادل	recycling (n)	إعادة تدوير	large-scale	واسع النطاق
waste (n/v)	يهدر / يضيع / مخلفات	commitment (n)	التزام	climate change (n)	يّر المناخ

Main Vocabulary

honored (adj)	مشرّف / فخور	Industrial Revolution		organize (v)	ينظم
pollution (n)	تلوث		الثورة الصناعية	technology (n)	تكنولوجيا
individual (n)	فرد / فردي	exchange (n/v)	يبدل / تبادل	society (n)	مجتمع
costly (adj)	مكلف	concept (n)	مفهوم	role (n)	دور
forum (n)	منتدي	fight (n/v)	صراع / قتال / يحارب	automobiles (n)	سيارات / مركبات
consumer (n)	مستهلك	neighborhood	حيّ / منطقة سكنية	shop owners	أصحاب المتاجر
practice (n)	ممارسة / تدريب	environmental	بيئية	notice (v)	يلاحظ
generation (n)	جيل / توليد	social media	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي	explain (v)	يشرح
approach (n)	منهج / نهج / طريقة	cloth (n)	قماش	climate (n)	مناخ
essential (adj)	أساسي / ضروري	goods (n)	سلع / بضائع	area (n)	منطقة
adopt (v)	يتبنى	discussion (n)	مناقشة	customer (n)	زبون / عميل
outcome (n)	نتيجة	product (n)	منتج	plastic bags	أكياس بلاستيكية
damage (n/v)	ضرر / يُلحق الضرر	process (n)	عملية	balance	توازن
community (n)	مجتمع	materials (n)	مواد	profit (n)	ربح
inspire (v)	يلهم	major (adj)	رئيسي / هام	harm (n/v)	ضرر / يضر
industries (n)	صناعات	convince (v)	يقنع	widely-used	مستخدم على نطاق واسع
production plants	مصانع إنتاج	industry (n)	صناعة	organization (n)	منظمة
require (v)	يتطلب	alternative (n)	بديل	amount (n)	كمية

Collocations

take the initiative to	يأخذ المبادرة لـ	reduce pollution and waste	يقلل التلوث والنفايات
make changes	يقوم بتغييرات	organize a swap	ينظم تبادل
build a sustainable future	يبني مستقبل مستدام	have harmful effects on	له آثار ضارة علي
preserve resources for	يحافظ على الموارد	adopt green practices	يتبنى ممارسات صديق للبيئة
overuse of resources	الإفراط في استخدام الموارد	play a role in	يلعب دورًا في
do something that helps	يقوم بعمل يساعد	cause damage	يسبب دمار

Expressions & Prepositions

environmental concerns	مخاوف بيئية
cut down costs	يخفض التكاليف
reusable cloth bags	أكياس قماش قابلة لإعادة الاستخدام
clean technologies	تقنيات نظيفة
cut down on resource use	تقليل استخدام الموارد
depletion of natural resources	استنزاف الموارد الطبيعية
large-scale production	إنتاج واسع النطاق
transform factories into eco-friendly plants	يحول المصانع الى مصانع صديقة للبيئة

For this reason,	ولهذا السبب
exchange ... for ...	يبدل ..... بـ......
throw away	يرمي / يتخلص من
fight against climate change	مكافحة تغير المناخ
eco-friendly production plants	مصانع صديقة للبيئة
be honored to	يتشرف بـ
misuse of technology	سوء استخدام التكنولوجيا
negative outcome	نتيجة سلبية
environmentally friendly products	منتجات صديقة للبيئة

Definitions

depletion	استنزاف	▶ reduction in the number or amount of something
renewable	متجددة	▶ something that can be replaced naturally
sustainable	مستدام	▶ able to continue without causing damage to the environment
eco-friendly	صديق للبيئة	▶ not harmful to the environment
landfill	مدفن نفايات	▶ a place where waste is buried under the ground
initiative	مبادرة	▶ a first step or action to start something new
slogan	شعار	▶ a short and memorable phrase used to express an idea or campaign
reusable	قابل لإعادة الاستخدام	▶ can be used again many times
swap	يبدل / تبادل	▶ to exchange one thing for another
waste	مخلفات / نفايات	▶ unwanted or unused material
campaign	حملة	▶ a planned series of activities to achieve a goal
reduce	يقلل	▶ to make something smaller or less
concern	قلق / اهتمام	▶ a feeling of worry or importance about something

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
pollute	يلوث	pollution	تلوث	polluted	ملوث
recycle	يعيد التدوير	recycling	إعادة تدوير	recyclable	قابل لإعادة التدوير
sustain	يدعم / يحافظ	sustainability	استدامة	sustainable	مستدام
deplete	يستنزف	depletion	استنزاف	depleted	مستنزف
preserve	يحافظ على	preservation	حفظ / صون	preservable	قابل للحفظ
commit	يلتزم / يرتكب	commitment	التزام	committed	ملتزم
use	يستخدم	usage	استخدام	useful / useless	مفيد / غير مفيد
reduce	يقلل	reduction	تقليل	reduced	مخفض
inspire	يلهم	inspiration	إلهام	inspiring	ملهم
organize	ينظم	organization	تنظيم	organized	منظم
honor	يشرف	honor	شرف	honorable	مشرف

Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym	Antonym
depletion	استنزاف	exhaustion, reduction, draining	boost, restoration, increase
harmful	ضار	damaging, destructive, unsafe	beneficial, useful, helpful
misuse	إساءة استخدام	abuse, overuse, mistreatment	proper use, correct use
reusable	قابل لإعادة الاستخدام	durable, washable	disposable, single-use
reduce	يقلل	decrease, lessen, cut down	increase, raise, expand
sustainable	مستدام	renewable, maintainable	unsustainable, temporary, short-lived
eco-friendly	صديق للبيئة	environmentally friendly, green,	harmful, polluting, damaging
transform	يحوّل	convert, change, remodel	keep, maintain, preserve
honored	مشرّف	proud, respected, esteemed	ashamed,embarrassed,dishonored
preserve	يحافظ على	protect, safeguard, maintain	destroy, neglect, waste
inspire	يلهم	encourage, motivate	discourage, depress
waste $^{(v)(n)}$	يهدر / يضيع / مخلفات	rubbish, garbage, trash, misuse	save, conserve, preserve
costly	مكلف	expensive, high-priced, dear	cheap, affordable, inexpensive
swap $^{(n/v)}$	يبدل / تبادل	exchange, trade, switch, replace	keep, retain, hold
concern $^{(n/v)}$	قلق / اهتمام / يقلق	worry, issue, interest, anxiety	calmness, indifference, unconcern

Language Notes

Notice the Difference

campaign	حملة منظمة لهدف معين	advertisement	إعلان تجاري
protect	يحمي (من الخطر أو الضرر)	preserve	يحافظ (يبقي على الشيء كما هو)
reusable	قابل لإعادة الاستخدام عدة مرات	recyclable	قابل لإعادة التدوير بعد الاستهلاك
manufacture	إنتاج صناعي واسع (في المصانع)	produce	إنتاج عام (زراعي أو صناعي)
affect	يؤثر على	effect	تأثير
sustainable	مستدام (يمكن أن يستمر طويلًا)	temporary	مؤقت / قصير الأجل
recycling	إعادة تصنيع النفايات للاستخدام من جديد	reusing	استخدام الشيء نفسه مرة أخرى دون تغيير
renewable energy	طاقة متجددة (شمسية، رياح)	non-renewable energy	طاقة غير متجددة (نفط، فحم)
costly	مكلف ماديًا	valuable	ذو قيمة (قد تكون معنوية أو مادية)
eco-friendly	صديق للبيئة (لا يضر البيئة)	user-friendly	سهل الاستخدام (للمستخدم وليس للبيئة)
change ... for	يستبدل شيء بشيء آخر	exchange ... with	تبادل شيء مع شخص آخر
plant	نبات / مصنع	planet	كوكب
neighbor	جار	neighborhood	حي
process	عملية (طريقة أو خطوات)	operation	عملية (تشغيل / نشاط رسمي)
damage	ضرر (غير معدود)	damages	تعويضات

overuse, reusing, misuse & reusable

overuse	الإفراط في الاستخدام	The **overuse** of water causes problems.
reusing	إعادة استخدام / يعيد استخدام	**Reusing** bottles saves money.
misuse	إساءة استخدام / يسيء الاستخدام	**Misuse** of medicines is dangerous.
reusable	قابل لإعادة الاستخدام	This bag is **reusable**.

manufacture, manufacturer, manufacturing & manufactured

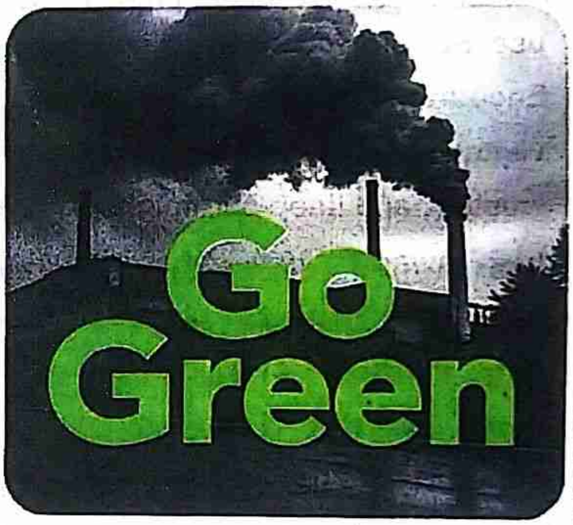
manufacture	يصنع / يُنتج	▶ The company **manufactures** clothes.
manufacturer	صانع / مُنتج	▶ Toyota is a famous car **manufacturer**.
manufacturing	صناعة / تصنيع	▶ **Manufacturing** plays a big role in the economy.
manufactured	مُصنع	▶ The shop sells **manufactured** goods.

Go Green

Before you read

Reading

1. What comes to your mind when you hear the phrase "Go Green"?
2. How do you think factories and industries can harm the environment?
3. In your opinion, is it possible for companies to balance profit with protecting the environment? Why or why not?



After many years since the Industrial Revolution and the misuse(1) of technology, the large-scale production of machines and automobiles has had harmful effects on the environment. These technologies have mainly caused damage in two ways: through air and water pollution, and through the overuse (2) of natural resources. For this reason, environmental concerns(3) have become a major issue across all industries.

Why green ?

Green is more than just a color. "Going green" means making changes in the way individuals,(4) organizations, and societies live and work so that their actions are more environmentally friendly. Today, "Go Green" has become a widely used slogan (5) in industry. Green manufacturing refers to producing goods in ways that do not harm the environment and that help preserve (6) natural resources for future generations (7).

The concept (8) of "green manufacturing(9)" can be understood in two ways. First, it means producing environmentally friendly products by using renewable energy and clean technologies. Second, it refers to making the manufacturing process itself greener— reducing pollution and waste(10) by cutting down on resource use, recycling, and reusing materials. This approach helps slow the depletion(11) of natural resources and reduces the amount of waste going into landfills(12). Both manufacturers and consumers play a role in the fight against climate change, and building a sustainable future is essential.

While the process may be costly and require strong commitment, many companies have already taken the initiative(13) to adopt green practices.

One negative outcome of the Industrial Revolution is global warming, which has become a major topic of discussion in international forums and on social media. This is why many manufacturers are now working to transform their factories into eco-friendly production plants.

١) إساءة استخدام
٢) إفراط في الاستخدام
٣) مخاوف / اهتمامات
٤) أفراد
٥) شعار
٦) يحافظ على
٧) أجيال
٨) مفهوم
٩) صناعة / تصنيع
١٠) نفايات / يهدر
١١) استنزاف
١٢) مدافن نفايات
١٣) مبادرة

Listening

Before you start

1) Answer the following questions.

1. How many times do you usually use a plastic bag before throwing it away?
2. What are some alternatives to plastic bags?
3. Have you ever joined a community campaign? What was it about?

One Bag at a Time

"Good evening everyone. My name is Ahmed and I'm honored(1) to be here today. Last year I wanted to do something that would help both our community(2) and our environment. I noticed that many shops used a lot of plastic bags which cost money and were often thrown away(3) after just one use. So I started a campaign(4) called One Bag at a Time. My idea was simple. Encourage(5) shops to offer reusable(6) cloth bags instead of plastic ones. I visited shop owners, explained how this would save them money, reduce(7) waste(8), and keep our neighborhood(9) cleaner. To make it fun, I organized a bag swap(10) day where customers could exchange(11) their old plastic bags for free cloth bags. Families loved the idea and soon more shops joined in. Today, more than half of the shops in our area have reduced their plastic use. We've saved hundreds of bags, cut down(12) costs, and inspired others to make small changes that protect our planet."

١) مشرف / فخور
٢) مجتمع
٣) يلقى
٤) حملة
٥) يشجع
٦) قابل لإعادة الاستخدام
٧) يقلل
٨) نفايات / يهدر
٩) حي / منطقة سكنية
١٠) يبدل / تبادل
١١) يبادل / تبادل
١٢) يقلل / يخفض

2) Answer the following questions.

1. How did Ahmed convince shop owners to join his campaign?
2. Why do you think families enjoyed the "Bag Swap Day"?
3. If Ahmed wanted to expand his campaign, what could he do next?
4. What is the main message of Ahmed's campaign?

انتظرواااااا
Giants
كتاب مراجعة العمالقة للصف الأول الثانوي
العمالقة

Exercise 04 Key Vocabulary

1. The project aims to promote.....development that does not harm the environment. **SB R.2**
a. fluent b. impressive c. sustainable d. polished

2. Solar and wind power are examples of .... energy sources. **SB R.2**
a. complicated b. renewable c. generic d. innovative

3. She used a new .... to solve the math problem. **SB R.2**
a. task b. approach c. duty d. mission

4. The rapid cutting of trees has led to the serious .... of forests in many countries.
a. preservation b. generation c. depletion d. celebration

5. The two friends decided to .... books so they could share their opinions.
a. keep b. swap c. lose d. ignore

6. Water, forests, and minerals are some of the most important .... for human life.
a. natural resources b. campaigns c. slogans d. manufacturers

7. The company .... high-quality electronics that are sold all over the world.
a. reuses b. manufactures c. transforms d. preserves

8. Most of the city's rubbish was taken to a huge .... outside the capital.
a. hospital b. warehouse c. greenhouse d. landfill

9. Education is considered a .... investment for any society.
a. wasted b. useless c. sustainable d. rare

10. The students launched an .... to collect books for poor children.
a. waste b. excuse c. delay d. initiative

11. Wind turbines provide .... energy without harming the environment. **SB R.2**
a. polished b. impressive c. anxious d. renewable

12. Many people prefer to buy .... products as they want to protect the environment.
a. harmful b. toxic c. dangerous d. eco-friendly

13. His main ..... was the safety of his children while they were playing near the busy street.
a. disregard b. neglect c. worry d. apathy

14. Many experts have expressed .... about climate change and its long-term effects.
a. indifference b. concern c. ignorance d. apathy

15. Factories produce large amounts of .... , which can harm the environment.
a. preservation b. treasure c. conservation d. waste

16. .... of social media can cause mental health problems such as anxiety and depression.
a. Reuse b. Overuse c. Recycling d. Slogan

17. Teachers explained that .... of technology during lessons distracts students.
a. recycling b. overuse c. reusable d. misuse

18. Wind and solar are examples of .... energy sources.
a. harmful b. renewable c. polluted d. wasted

19. .... old electronics reduces the need for raw materials and protects the planet.
a. Overusing b. Misusing c. Reusing d. Recycling

20. The company started .... packaging materials to promote eco-friendly environment.
a. reusing b. misusing c. overusing d. recycling

21. Using .... shopping bags helps reduce plastic waste and protect wildlife.
a. overused **b.** disposable **c.** reusable **d.** misused

22. The environmental campaign used the .... "Save Water, Save Life" to encourage better habits.
a. campaign **b.** slogan **c.** commitment **d.** reuse

23. The government launched a .... to promote healthy eating and reduce obesity.
a. reuse **b.** slogan **c.** commitment **d.** campaign

24. Recycling and reusing materials can significantly .... the amount of waste in landfills.
a. reduce **b.** increase **c.** waste **d.** ignore

25. Teachers appreciate students who show .... to learning and completing tasks on time.
a. misuse **b.** overuse **c.** commitment **d.** recycling

26. Schools encourage students to .... by planting trees and recycling waste.
a. preserve **b.** go green **c.** misuse **d.** overuse

27. Local .... are encouraged to produce eco-friendly packaging for their products.
a. communities **b.** consumers **c.** manufacturers **d.** activists

28. Scientists warn that .... could lead to more frequent and severe natural disasters.
a. preservation **b.** recycling **c.** reuse **d.** global warming

29. Recycling plastic can .... waste into useful products for daily use.
a. transform **b.** preserve **c.** misuse **d.** recycle

30. We should .... our cultural heritage by protecting historical buildings and monuments.
a. transform **b.** preserve **c.** misuse **d.** recycle

31. .... deforestation is one of the main causes of climate change and habitat loss.
a. Medium-scale **b.** Small-scale **c.** Large-scale **d.** Local-scale

32. Governments are implementing policies to combat .... and reduce carbon emissions.
a. climate change **b.** recycling **c.** manufacturers **d.** natural resources

33. A..........is a place where waste is buried under the ground, often causing environmental concerns.
a. campaign **b.** landfill **c.** swap **d.** slogan

34. Items that can be used again many times instead of being thrown away are called..........
a. swap **b.** eco-friendly **c.** waste **d.** reusable

35. To .... means to exchange one thing for another, often as part of an environmentally friendly program.
a. reduce **b.** swap **c.** landfill **d.** depletion

36. The .... refers to a reduction in the number or amount of something, which can lead to serious environmental problems.
a. waste **b.** renewable **c.** depletion **d.** landfill

Exercise 04 Main Vocabulary

37. She was.......... by the university for her outstanding contributions to scientific research.
a. transformed **b.** overused **c.** recycled **d.** honored

38. The team's success is the result of months of dedicated .... and hard work.
a. misuse **b.** practice **c.** recycling **d.** overuse

39. Technology has changed the way this .... communicates and learns.
a. practice **b.** slogan **c.** manufacturers **d.** generation

40. Scientists developed a new .... to solving complex environmental problems.
a. outcome b. approach c. essential d. community

41. Good communication skills are .. .. for success in any profession.
a. essential b. optional c. harmful d. reusable

42. The school decided to .... a new curriculum to improve student learning outcomes.
a. organize b. inspire c. damage d. adopt

43. Education can have a significant impact on the .... of a student's future.
a. community b. approach c. outcome d. essential

44. The storm caused severe .... to homes and infrastructure.
a. outcome b. damage c. approach d. community

45. The teacher's dedication can .... students to achieve their best.
a. organize b. damage c. adopt d. inspire

46. Communities .... clean-up campaigns to protect the environment.
a. adapt b. organize c. misuse d. damage

47. The organization encourages the ..... of ideas between researchers from various fields.
a. exchange b. effect c. adopt d. inspire

48. Pollution can have harmful .... on the environment and human health.
a. adoptions b. exchanges c. effects d. inspirations

49. A productive .... can lead to better solutions for complex problems.
a. materials b. product c. operation d. discussion

50. The company launched a new .... that quickly became popular among consumers.
a. product b. discussion c. process d. materials

51. Decision-making is often a complex .... that considers multiple factors.
a. product b. process c. discussion d. materials

Exercise 04 Expressions, Prepositions, Derivatives, Notes & Definitions

52. She decided to .... the initiative to reduce pollution and waste.
a. take b. make c. build d. preserve

53. In order to improve efficiency, the company must .... changes and organize a swap program.
a. play b. take c. adopt d. make

54. We need to cut .... on resource use to preserve natural resources for the future.
a. up b. down c. off d. with

55. It is essential to .... resources for future generations by recycling and saving water.
a. build b. preserve c. make d. adopt

56. Many companies are starting to .... green practices to minimize their carbon effect.
a. build b. deserve c. adopt d. take

57. The .... of resources can lead to environmental problems such as deforestation and water scarcity.
a. adopt b. overuse c. build d. take

58. Teachers can .... a role in raising awareness about climate change among students
a. play b. take c. make d. do

59. We should all try to .... something that helps protect the environment, like planting trees or reducing waste.
a. cause b. make c. carry d. do

60. Ignoring safety rules can .... damage to both the environment and human health.
a. give b. take c. cause d. make

61. Some stores allow customers to .... old items for new ones.
a. exchange b. cut c. transform d. adopt

62. Companies always try to .... down costs without affecting product quality.
a. fight b. exchange c. cut d. transform

Choose the (Two) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given.

63. Recycling programs are key to a sustainable future. The synonym of the underlined word "sustainable" is .... **SB R.2**
a. complicated b. maintainable c. hesitant d. eco-friendly e. generic

64. Planting trees can prevent the depletion of soil nutrients. Choose two antonyms of "depletion" ....
a. exhaustion b. restoration c. draining d. boost e. reduction

65. Recycling programs help to reduce waste. The synonym of of "reduce" is ....
a. expand b. lessen c. increase d. raise e. decrease

66. He refused to swap his old items for new ones. The antonym of "swap" is ....
a. keep b. trade c. explain d. retain e. exchange

67. Many companies now produce eco-friendly products to reduce environmental impact. The synonym of "eco-friendly" is ....
a. environmentally friendly b. harmful c. polluting
d. green e. damaging

68. Overfishing has led to the depletion of marine life in the region. The synonym of "depletion" is ....
a. exhaustion b. increase c. boost d. restoration e. reduction

69. Industrial expansion will reduce pollution reduction efforts. The antonym of "reduce" is ....
a. increase b. cut down c. decrease d. lessen e. raise

70. Great leaders often inspire people to achieve their best. The synonym of "inspire" is ....
a. uplift b. motivate c. encourage d. discourage e. depress

71. Throwing away food unnecessarily is considered waste. The synonym of "waste" is ....
a. rubbish b. save c. letter d. garbage e. conserve

72. Students decided to swap their books with each other to save money. The synonym of "swap" is ....
a. keep b. switch c. trade d. exchange e. hold

73. Parents showed great concern about their children's safety. The synonym of "concern" is ....
a. indifference b. anxiety c. interest d. calmness e. worry

أشكال ing والمصدر

ing. forms or the infinitive

الأفعال الآتية يأتى بعدها to + inf.:

agree	يوافق	threaten	يهدد	determine	يحدد / يصر علي
arrange	يرتب	wish	يرغب	neglect	يهمل
decide	يقرر	refuse	يرفض	tend	يميل
expect	يتوقع	prove	يثبت / يبرهن	seem	يبدو
hope	يأمل	prepare	يستعد	dare	يجرؤ
learn	يتعلم	choose	يختار	encourage	يشجع
offer	يعرض	pretend	يتظاهر	warn	يحذر
plan	يخطط	request	يطلب	manage	يتمكن
promise	يعد	deserve	يستحق	fail	يفشل
want	يريد	appear	يظهر	can't afford	لا يستطيع تحمل تكاليف

- ★ Toka **hopes to** be an engineer.
- ★ Jana **promised to** study hard.

يأتي بعد تلك الافعال to be +P.P في المبني للمجهول:

- ★ She **expects to be promoted** next month.

الأفعال الآتية يأتى بعدها فعل مضاف له ing :

admit	يعترف	dislike	يكره	resist	يقاوم
avoid	يتجنب	understand	يفهم	resume	يستأنف
deny	ينكر	postpone	يؤجل	put off	يؤجل
enjoy	يستمتع	fancy	يتخيل	delay	يؤخر
finish	ينهي	imagine	يتخيل	endure	يتحمل
practise	يمارس	complete	يُكمل	report	يبلغ
suggest	يقترح	involve	يتضمن	can't help	لا يستطيع أن يمنع نفسه
spend	يقضي	include	يشمل		
appreciate	يُقدر	risk	يخاطر	miss	يفتقد
mind	يمانع	consider	يعتبر	quit	يترك

- ★ He **admitted stealing** the mobile.
- ★ I **regret not travelling** abroad.

الأفعال الآتية يأتى بعدها to + inf. أو فعل مضاف له ing بدون اختلاف فى المعنى:

hate	يكره	like	يحب	اختلاف بسيط فى المعنى إذا أخذت ing الحديث بشكل عام ومع to + inf. الحديث بشكل مخصص (وقت الكلام)
love	يحب	prefer	يفضل	
start	يبدأ	continue	يستمر	

- ★ Employees will **continue doing / to do** this.
- ★ I **like to play / playing** tennis.

ولكن لاحظ أنه إذا استخدمنا would قبل بعض الأفعال السابقة فانه يأتى بعدها to + inf.

- ★ I'd **prefer to meet** Mr Ali.
- ★ I'd **like to meet** Mr Ali.

prefer + V - ing... + to + V - ing...

- ★ I **prefer** using the internet **to** watching TV.
- ★ I'd **prefer to** use the internet **rather than** watch TV.

لاحظ بعد starting – beginning نستخدم to + inf. فقط و ليس ing

- ★ She is **starting to enjoy** her new hobby.

لاحظ بعد الكلمات التالية نستخدم .inf فقط بدون to

had better	ينبغي	would rather	يفضل
let	يسمح	make	يرغم

- ★ I'd rather meet Mr Ahmed.
- ★ I'd better meet Mr Ahmed.

لاحظ (إذا جاء بعدها فاعل يكون الفعل ماضى).

- ★ I'd rather you met Mr Ahmed.

لاحظ (إذا جاء make فى جملة المبنى للمجهول يأتى بعدها .to+ inf).

- ★ The teacher made Ali repeat the homework again.
- ★ Ali was made to repeat the homework again.

الأفعال الآتية يمكن أن يأتى بعدها .to + inf أو فعل مضاف له ing مع وجود اختلاف فى المعنى:

stop	يتوقف	forget	ينسى
remember	يتذكر	regret	يأسف
try	يحاول / يجرب		

الأفعال الآتية
يمكن أن يأتى بعدها
or to + inf. ing
مع اختلاف
فى المعنى

remember to + inf. ➔ يتذكر أن يقوم بعمل شيء (لم يفعله)

★ He remembered to call his friend. تذكر أن يتصل بصديقه (لم يتصل).

remember + V + ing ➔ يقوم بعمل شيء ثم يتذكر أنه (فعله)

★ He remembered watching this film. تذكر أنه شاهد هذا الفيلم.

forget to + inf. ➔ ينسى أن يفعل شيئاً (لم يفعله)

★ Nadia forgot to close the gate.

forget + V + ing ➔ يفعل شيئا ثم ينسى أنه فعله

★ Nadia forgot reading the novel.

regret to + inf. ➔ يشعر بالأسف لأن يقول أو يخبر شخص شيئا ما

★ I regret to say that my son is a loser.

regret + V + ing ➔ يشعر بالندم على شيء حدث

★ He regretted watching this play. It was boring

try to + inf. ➔ يحاول عمل شيء (وغالبا لا ينجح)

★ The student tried to escape, but the headmaster caught him.

try + V + ing ➔ يقوم بعمل شيء ليرى نتيجته / يُجرب عمل شيء

★ Try wearing this dress. ★ Try taking an aspirin.

stop to + inf. ➔ يتوقف لكى يفعل شيئا

★ He stopped to smoke توقف لكى يدخن.

stop + V + ing ➔ يتوقف عن عمل شيء

★ He stopped smoking. توقف عن التدخين

يلفى الفعل المضاف له ing باستخدام not:

- ★ Thank you for not making noise.
- ★ I apologize for not coming early.

استخدام v + ing بعد to فى التعبيرات الاتية:

take to	يعتاد على	object to	يعترض
be used to	معتاد	be accustomed to	معتاد
get used to	يعتاد علي	due to	بسبب
thanks to	بفضل	owing to	بسبب
look forward to	يتطلع الى	contribute to	يسهم في
lead to	يؤدى الى	be opposed to	معارض لـ
in addition to	بالإضافة الى	devote .. to	يخصص .....لـ

يستخدم فعل مضاف له ing بعد التعبيرات الاتية

be busy	مشغول	be worth	يستحق
have difficulty (in)	يجد صعوبة فى	it's a waste of money	مضيعة للمال
it's no good = it's no use	لا فائدة من	it's a waste of time	مضيعة للوقت
there is no point in	لا فائدة من	feel like	يرغب/ يريد
can't stand	لا يحتمل	how about - what about	ماذا عن
can't help	لا يستطيع منع نفسه من	don't mind	لا يمانع

- ★ She **has difficulty** walking.
- ★ It's a **waste of** time surfing the internet.
- ★ I **feel like** having a cold drink.

فى حالة وجود فعل بعد الصفات التالية نستخدم to + inf. :

happy / sad / glad / pleased / lucky /
relieved / amazed / difficult / easy... } **+ to + inf.**

- ★ It is **difficult for** her **to get** up early.
- ★ It was **easy for** Jana **to study** English.

فى حالة وجود فعل بعد أدوات الاستفهام نستخدم : to + inf.

how to
what to } **+ inf.**
where to

- ★ I don't know **how to go** to the club.
- ★ He is in a tight corner; he doesn't know **what to do.**

Important Notes

لاحظ
الفرق بين

① لاحظ الفرق بين **like / would like / feel like**

- ★ Seif **likes** to play (playing) football.
- ★ Seif **would like** to play football.
- ★ Seif **feels like** playing football.

② أفعال يأتى بعدها مفعول ثم to + inf. فى المعلوم وفى حالة المبنى للمجهول تأتى to + inf. بعد الفعل مباشرة.

advise	ينصح	encourage	يشجع	order	يأمر
allow	يسمح	expect	يتوقع	permit	يسمح
ask	يطلب	promise	يعد	persuade	يقنع
invite	يدعو	help	يساعد	force	يجبر
tell	يخبر	teach	يعلم	command	يأمر
choose	يختار	challenge	يتحدى	beg	يتوسل
require	يتطلب	want	يريد	instruct	يعطى توجيه

الأفعال الآتية يأتى بعدها ing فى حالة عدم وجود مفعول، ويأتى بعدها .to+ inf فى حالة وجود مفعول:

advise	ينصح	forbid	يمنع	permit	يسمح
allow	يسمح	recommend	يوصى بـ	encourage	يشجع

★ I **advise** you **to read** this novel. ★ I **advise reading** this novel.

الأفعال الآتية يستخدم بعدها المصدر ليدل على أننا شاهدنا أو سمعنا الحدث بالكامل ويأتى بعدها الفعل مضافا له ing ليدل على أننا سمعنا أو شاهدنا جزء من الحدث:

hear	يسمع	notice	يلاحظ
see	يري	watch	يشاهد

★ I **heard** Toka **sing** a song. = I heard the whole song.

★ I **heard** Toka **singing** a song. = I heard part of the song.

استخدام .to + inf بعد الترتيب أو التفضيل:

the first ... / the second ... / the last / the next

★ Ahmed was **the first to get** high marks. Toka was **the last to attend** the meeting.

يُستخدم المصدر بدون to بعد الأفعال الناقصة:

can / could / may / might / must / mustn't / needn't / shall / should / will / would

★ They **must attend** the conference. ★ She **can run** very quickly.

فعل help يأتى بعده المصدر مع to أو بدون to:

★ Toka **helped** Jana **do** her homework. Toka **helped** Jana **to do** her homework.

Exercise 04 Language Level 1

1. She decided .... abroad after graduation. **SB R.2**
   a. going b. to go c. goes d. gone
2. I enjoy .... new languages in my free time. **SB R.2**
   a. learn b. to learn c. learning d. learned
3. He refused .... the instructions carefully. **SB R.2**
   a. to follow b. following c. follows d. followed
4. They admitted .... the window by mistake. **SB R.2**
   a. break b. to break c. breaking d. broken
5. I can't afford .... a new car right now. **SB R.2**
   a. buy b. buying c. to buy d. buys
6. Don't forget .... your homework before class. **SB R.2**
   a. do b. done c. doing d. to do
7. She avoided .... about the problem directly. **SB R.2**
   a. talk b. talking c. to talk d. talked
8. She enjoys .... to music. **SB**
   a. to listen b. to listening c. listen d. listening
9. He tried .... the door, but it was locked. **SB R.2**
   a. to open b. opening c. open d. opened
10. He promised .... me with the project. **SB**
    a. helping b. to help c. to helping d. help
11. They avoid .... junk food. **SB**
    a. eating b. eat c. to eating d. to eat

12. We decided .... a new car. **SB**

a. buying b. to buying c. to buy d. buy

13. I don't mind .... for you. **SB**

a. to wait b. waiting c. wait d. waits

14. She suggested .... a break. **SB**

a. to take b. take c. to taking d. taking

15. He stopped .... a coffee break. **SB**

a. to take b. taking c. take d. to taking

16. I'll never forget .... the Eiffel Tower for the first time. **SB**

a. to see b. see c. seeing d. to see

17. Please remember .... off the lights before leaving. **SB**

a. turning b. to turn c. turn d. to turn

18. My friend suggested .... for a picnic in the park. طما ٢٠٢٤ سوهاج ٢٠٢٤ دشنا ٢٠٢٤

a. go b. to go c. going d. goes

19. Do you enjoy .... to classical music? جنوب الجيزة خدمات ٢٠٢٤

a. listening b. listen c. listened d. to listen

20. We usually go .... with our friends at the weekend. اسيوط ابوتيج ٢٠٢٤

a. fish b. to fish c. to fishing d. fishing

21. I do not know how .... the new IPhone. قوص ٢٠٢٤

a. use b. using c. to use d. is using

22. Fatma admitted .... the plate and said she was sorry. الحوامدية ٢٠٢٤

a. breaking b. to break c. to breaking d. break

23. The thief denied .... into the house or stealing the money. الأقصر اسنا ٢٠٢٤

a. breaking b. to break c. to breaking d. broken

24. You should avoid .... friends with such bad people. وسط طنطا ٢٠٢٤

a. to make b. make c. to making d. making

25. I look forward .... employees from other countries. سوهاج ٢٠٢٤ بنها ٢٠٢٤

a. to meet b. to meeting c. meeting d. meet

26. I've arranged .... to the theatre with my family. قطور ٢٠٢٤

a. go b. to go c. going d. to going

27. I hope .... an army officer when I grow up. وسط اسكندرية ٢٠٢٤

a. will be b. would be c. being d. to be

28. Could you explain how .... this math problem? شرق طنطا منازل ٢٠٢٤

a. answering b. to answer c. to answering d. answer

29. Nader denied .... my mobile without asking me. الشرقية ٢٠٢٣

a. borrows b. borrow c. borrowing d. to borrow

30. My brother decided .... German at university. المحلة الكبرى ٢٠٢٣

a. to learn b. learning c. learnt d. learns

31. When I get good grades, my father has promised .... me a new phone. **£M**

a. to buying b. to buy c. would buy d. will buy

Exercise 04 Language Level 2

32. Which of the following sentences is structurally correct .... **SB R.2**

a. We can't afford being late for class. b. We can't afford be late for class.

c. We can't afford to be late for class. d. We can't afford been late for class.

33. Which of the following sentences is structurally correct? **SB R.2**
a. I want learning more about history. b. I want to learn more about history.
c. I want learned more about history. d. I want learn more about history.

34. She.....her brother.....that reference, as it has useful information for doing his research.
a. made / to read b. persuaded / to read
c. got / read d. discouraged / from reading

35. Finally, Adel was made .... the exercise again to avoid .... such silly mistakes.
a. doing / repeating b. to do / repetition c. do / repeating d. to do / repeating

36. I remember .... this young man before when I was in Alexandria. بني مزار ٢٠٢٤
a. meeting b. to meet c. met d. to meeting

37. During the journey we stopped .... and to have a rest. ملوي ٢٠٢٤
a. eating b. from eating c. eat d. to eat

38. I regretted ...... my mother with the housework yesterday as she was really ill. طلاب الخارج ٢٠٢٤
a. not helping b. not to help c. to help d. helping

39. I forgot .... the manager, so I phoned him again. سوهاج اخميم ٢٠٢٤
a. to phone b. phoned c. phone d. phoning

40. My uncle has come back home and I expect him .... us tomorrow. جهينة ٢٠٢٤/بسيون ٢٠٢٤
a. will visit b. is going to visit c. is visiting d. to visit

41. She was busy .... a biography about Prof. Ahmed Zewail. رق طنطا ٢٠٢٤
a. writes b. wrote c. writing d. written

42. On her way home, Lobna .... to her friend Nesma. جنوب الجيزة ٢٠٢٤
a. stopped talking b. stopped to talk c. stops talking d. stop to talk

43. I regret .... this old car; it has caused me a lot of problems. اسيوط منازل ٢٠٢٤
a. to buy b. buying c. to buying d. buys

44. Mr Ali made decision to stop .... forever. أسيوط أبنوب ٢٠٢٤
a. to smoke b. smoking c. smokes d. smoke

45. Please, stop .... on the door like that, it is too noisy. القليوبية ٢٠٢٤
a. knocking b. to knock c. knock d. to knocking

46. They encourage their son .... regularly for the exams. الخانكة ٢٠٢٤
a. revising b. to revise c. revise d. to revising

47. Which book did you choose .... at the library? العمرانية ٢٠٢٤
a. read b. reading c. to read d. reads

48. You seem very hungry. Stop .... , Ola. نقادة منازل ٢٠٢٤
a. eat b. not eating c. to eat d. eating

49. A: Did you remember .... the door last night? B: Oh! Sorry. I forgot to do that. دير مواس ٢٠٢٤
a. to lock b. locked c. lock d. locking

50. Civil engineers get used to .... in the sun. السنطة ٢٠٢٤
a. a work b. working c. works d. worked

51. My elder brother helped me .... maths easily because he was good at it. المحلة ٢٠٢٤
a. learn b. learning c. to learning d. for learning

52. I do not fancy .... that movie. There is a lot of violence in it. دمنهور ٢٠٢٣
a. watch b. watching c. watched d. to watch

53. I don't mind .... at home during holiday. المنيا ٢٠٢٣
a. stay b. to stay c. to staying d. staying

54. We started .... English at primary school. البحر الأحمر ٢٠٢٣
a. to learn b. learns c. learned d. learn

55. When they came to a cafeteria, they stopped .... السنبلاوين ٢٠٢٢
a. to eating b. eat c. to eat d. eating

56. We .... mixing with bad friends because of their terrible behaviour. £M
a. prefer b. wouldn't like to c. fail d. avoid

57. We forgot .... the front door last night, so the thieves broke into our house. قنا ٢٠٢٢
a. to lock b. lock c. to locking d. locking

58. Would you like .... the summer holiday with us in Port Said? £M
a. to spending b. spend c. spending d. to spend

59. Would you mind .... me your camera? £M
a. lend b. lending c. to lend d. in lending

60. Stop .... noise; your father is asleep. £M
a. to making b. making c. make d. to make

61. I stopped driving my car because it continued .... heavily. £M
a. to raining b. rains c. raining d. rained

62. Taher is very kind; he always .... to help his friends when they are in trouble. £M
a. refuses b. offers c. minds d. considers

63. Don't .... your digital camera; we need it badly, please. £M
a. remember bringing b. forget bringing c. remember to bring d. forget to bring

64. Ahmad .... crime stories; he finds them frightening. £M
a. afraid of reading b. enjoys reading c. dislikes reading d. likes to read

65. Sami .... spend the summer holidays in his village, wouldn't he? £M
a. had better b. would like to c. likes to d. would prefer

66. I really .... to using mobiles while driving.
a. object b. refuse c. disapprove d. hate

67. "Would you like to join us?" "No, thank you. I'd rather .... here."
a. stay b. to stay c. staying d. stayed

68. When we go to the Chinese restaurant, I want .... something different.
a. have tried b. to try c. try d. trying

69. It would be marvellous to fly in a balloon. I'd love .... in one someday.
a. flying b. flies c. fly d. to fly

70. Last week, I started .... a new language.
a. learn b. to learning c. to learn d. learned

71. We .... to spend the weekend in my village.
a. admitted b. suggested c. decided d. enjoyed

72. What do you .... to do in the summer?
a. avoid b. plan c. finish d. practise

Exercise 04 Language Level 3

73. Our teacher always allow .... with other classmates during discussion. دمياط ٢٠٢٤
a. talk b. to talk c. talking d. to talking

74. Most people object .... factories inside the city center. قها ٢٠٢٤
a. build b. building c. to build d. to building

75. The sick child was recommended .... in hospital at once as he needed an urgent operation. القليوبية ٢٠٢٤
a. examining b. to examine c. to be examined d. being examined

76. He felt exhausted as he has never been used to .... such hard work. دمياط ٢٠٢٤
a. doing b. did c. do d. done

77. I can't help .... sweets. غرب شبرا الخيمة ٢٠٢٤

a. eat b. eating c. to eat d. eats

78. Mohammed Salah hopes .... as the best player in the world. £M

a. to select b. will select c. to be selected d. has been selected

79. We owe much to those who contribute .... the environment clean. £M

a. in keeping c. to keeping b. to keep d. will keep

80. I stopped.........a newspaper.......the latest news; I don't like to read the news online. £M

a. buying / to know b. buy / to know

c. to buy / to know d. buying / for knowing

81. I'm so sorry sir; I forgot .... my activity book; I promise I .... it tomorrow. £M

a. bringing / will bring b. to bring / will bring

c. bring / will bring d. to bring / to bring

82. I .... to work as a tour guide, because I .... dealing with tourists. £M

a. had better /would like b. would rather / prefer

c. plan /avoid d. hope / enjoy

83. I didn't study well for the exam, and I regret .... ready for it . £M

a. not getting b. not to getting c. getting d. for not getting

84. Do you object .... to Hurghada? Where else can we go?

a. being taken b. be taken c. to be taken d. to being taken

85. The teacher.......us to stop......noise and to keep quiet to understand the lesson well. £M

a. made / making b. forced / to make c. instructed/making d. ordered /make

86. We prefer watching TV to .... to the cinema.

a. going b. go c. goes d. went

87. I can't help .... you about it.

a. to tell b. telling c. to telling d. being told

88. I'll have a word with you when you finish .... the report.

a. write b. to write c. writing d. written

89. Which of the following sentences is structurally correct? £M

a. Hatim finished to perform his difficult task.

b. Hala enjoys with watching Indian films. c. I'd rather to die than betray my country.

d. I regret to tell you that your proposal was refused.

2) Rewrite the sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. She enjoys reading novels. (to read) SB R.2
2. He refused to answer the question. (answering) SB R.2
3. He avoided talking to the teacher. (to talk) SB R.2
4. She enjoys watching romantic films. (likes)
5. He refused to give up. (agree)
6. They avoided making eye contact. (to make)
7. I decided to join the football team. (decision)
8. We hope to win the match. (look forward)
9. She suggested going to the zoo. (suggestion)
10. She dislikes eating alone. (doesn't)
11. We managed to finish on time. (succeeded)
12. She avoided the opportunity to meet him. (meeting)
13. I forgot to call her. (remember)
14. She prefers walking to running. (would).

Unit 4

Save and Shine

Lessons
3 Small Actions Can Make a Difference
4 Helping our community

Key Vocabulary

assembly (n)	اجتماع / طابور	mission (n)	مهمة	impact (n)	تأثير / أثر
drip (n/v)	قطرة / يقطر	observations (n)	ملاحظات	serious harm (n)	ضرر خطير
impact (n)	تأثير	survey (n/v)	استطلاع / يجري مسحًا	record (v)	يسجل
leak (n/v)	تسريب / يتسرب	consideration (n)	تفكير / اعتبار	finding (n)	نتيجة / اكتشاف

Main Vocabulary

professional (adj)	محترف	contraction	اختصار (لغوي) / انقباض	polluted (adj)	ملوث
special (adj)	خاص / مميز	active (adj)	نشيط	observe (v)	يراقب / يلاحظ
casual (adj)	عادي / غير رسمي	avoid (v)	يتجنب	unplug (v)	يفصل القابس (الكهرباء)
area (n)	منطقة	check (v)	يفحص / يتحقق	Eiffel Tower (n)	برج إيفل
project (n)	مشروع	device (n)	جهاز	busy (adj)	مشغول
prove (v)	يثبت	fill (v)	يملأ	inspire (v)	يلهم
suppose (v)	يفترض	fix (v)	يصلح	completely (adv)	تمامًا
relax (v)	يسترخي	form (n/v)	يشكّل / نموذج	template (n)	قالب
research (n)	بحث	fountain (n)	نافورة	create (v)	يخلق / ينشئ
tap (n)	صنبور	ignore (v)	يتجاهل	cycling (n)	ركوب الدراجات
simple (adj)	بسيط	include (v)	يتضمن	common (adj)	شائع
tone (n)	نغمة / لهجة	junk food (n)	أطعمة غير صحية	planet (n)	كوكب
sincerely (adv)	بصدق / بإخلاص	leak (n)	تسريب	notice (n/v)	يلاحظ / ملاحظة
apologize (v)	يعتذر	leave (v)	يغادر	the rest	الباقي / ما تبقى
sink (n)	حوض / مغسلة	map (n/v)	يرسم خريطة / خريطة	observation (n)	ملاحظة / مراقبة
attend (v)	يحضر	notebook (n)	دفتر	playground (n)	ساحة لعب
solution (n)	حل	polite (adj)	مؤدب	sources (n)	مصادر
source (n)	مصدر	present (v)	يقدم	competition (n)	منافسة / مسابقة
chart (n)	جدول / رسم بياني	public spaces (n)	أماكن عامة	tiny (adj)	صغير جدًا
task (n)	مهمة	rainwater (n)	مياه المطر	regularly (adv)	بانتظام
unique (adj)	فريد	result (n)	نتيجة	recycle (v)	يعيد التدوير
bright (adj)	مشرق	reduce (v)	يقلل / يخفف	science lab (n)	معمل علوم

Collocations

water fountains	نافورات المياه / مبردات المياه	reduce waste	يقلل النفايات
waste water	يهدر الماء	record observations	يسجل الملاحظات
make a difference	يحدث فرقًا	present findings	يعرض النتائج
protect the environment	يحمي البيئة	reduce pollution	يقلل التلوث
save energy	يوفر الطاقة	sustainable future	مستقبل مستدام

Expressions & Prepositions

have a big impact	له تاثير كبير	work together for	يعمل معًا من أجل
play a part in	يشارك / يلعب دورًا في	cause harm (to)	يُسبب ضررًا
take action	يتخذ إجراء	run out (of) (v)	ينفد / ينتهي من
turn off the lights	يطفئ الأنوار	encourage people to	يشجع الناس على
unplug devices	يفصل الأجهزة	responsibility for	مسؤولية عن
check for leaks	يفحص عن التسريبات	harmful to	ضار بـ
keep our environment clean	يحافظ على نظافة بيئتنا	building a healthier planet	بناء كوكب أكثر صحة

Definitions

survey	استطلاع	▶ to ask people questions to find out information
observations	ملاحظات	▶ things you notice or see carefully
drip	تقطير	▶ small drops of liquid falling slowly
mission	مهمة	▶ an important job or task to do
impact	تأثير	▶ a strong effect or result of something
assembly	تجمع / اجتماع	▶ a group of people gathered together for a purpose
leak	تسرب	▶ when liquid or gas escapes through a hole or crack

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
survey	يستقصي / يفحص	survey	استقصاء / مسح	surveyed	مُستقصى (تمت مراجعته)
include	يضمّ / يشمل	inclusion	إدماج / اشتمال	inclusive	شامل
observe	يلاحظ	observation / observer	ملاحظة / مُلاحظ	observable	ملحوظ / قابل للملاحظة
record	يُسجل	record	سجل / تسجيل	recorded	مُسجل
inspire	يُلهم	inspiration	إلهام	inspired inspiring	مُلهم مُلهم
prove	يُثبت	proof	إثبات	proven	مُثبت
protect	يحمي	protection protector	حماية حامٍ	protective	وقائي / حامي
leak	يتسرب	leak	تسرُّب	leaky	مُسرِّب / فيه تسريب
notice	يلاحظ	notice	ملاحظة / إشعار	noticeable	ملحوظ

Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym	Antonym
observation	ملاحظة / مراقبة	remark / note / comment	ignorance / neglect / inattention
record	سجل / يسجل	document / register / log	erase / delete / forget
collect	يجمع	gather / assemble	scatter / distribute
include	يشمل	contain / involve / consist of	exclude / omit / remove

Word	Meaning	Synonym	Antonym
bright	ساطع / لامع	shining / brilliant / radiant	dull / dark / dim
leak	تسرب	spill / escape / drip	seal / block / contain
impact	تأثير	effect / influence / outcome	cause / origin / source
avoid	يتجنب	escape / prevent / dodge	face / confront / meet
survey	يفحص / يستطلع	examine / inspect / observe	ignore / overlook / neglect

Language Notes

Notice the Difference

tap	صنبور مياه	sink	حوض (مثل حوض المطبخ أو المعمل)
drip	تقطير (نزول ماء نقطة نقطة)	leak	تسرب (ماء يخرج من مكان غير طبيعي)
task	مهمة صغيرة / عمل محدد	mission	مهمة كبيرة / هدف مهم لفريق
observe	يلاحظ بعناية	record	يسجل / يدوّن
sustainable	مستدام (يستمر لفترة طويلة)	harmful	ضار
assembly	تجمع / اجتماع (مدرسي أو رسمي)	class	صف دراسي
reduce	يقلل / يخفف	increase	يزيد
private	خاص / شخصي	special	مميز/ استثنائي
unplug	يفصل الكهرباء	plug in	يوصل الكهرباء
run out	ينفد (بدون مفعول)	run out of	ينفد (بعدها مفعول)

impact & impactful

impact	يؤثر في / يصدم	▸ Climate change **impacts** the whole world.
impact	تأثير / صدمة	▸ The new law had a big **impact** on students.
impactful	مؤثر / له تأثير قوي	▸ Her speech was short but very **impactful**.

assembly, meeting & gathering

assembly	اجتماع رسمي / مجلس / تجمع منظم	▸ The school **assembly** started at 8 a.m.
meeting	مقابلة / اجتماع (رسمي أو غير رسمي)	▸ We have a **meeting** to plan the new project.
gathering	تجمع (غالبًا اجتماعي)	▸ We enjoyed a family **gathering** last night.

mission, task, duty, assignment & goal

mission	مهمة / رسالة (غالبًا مهمة لها هدف كبير)	▸ The team's **mission** is to protect the environment.
task	مهمة صغيرة / واجب محدد	▸ My **task** today is to finish this report.
duty	واجب / التزام (غالبًا أخلاقي أو رسمي)	▸ It is our **duty** to help the poor.
assignment	تكليف / واجب (غالبًا أكاديمي أو إداري)	▸ The teacher gave us an **assignment** on water pollution.
goal / aim	هدف	▸ Their **goal** is to reduce pollution.

Helping our community

Reading

Before you read:

1) Answer the following questions.

1. Do you think students can help save water in their school? How?
2. What problems can happen if water is wasted?
3. How could students work together to protect the environment?

2) Read the following text

١) مُشرق
٢) مهمة
٣) يفحص / يعاين
٤) حنفيات
٥) قطرات
٦) تسريبات
٧) سجّل / دوّن
٨) نتائج / استنتاجات
٩) اجتماع / طابور المدرسة
١٠) تأثير

In a bright(1) and busy classroom, the students were discussing ways to help their community and protect the environment. Their teacher suggested forming special teams, each with a unique mission(2). One of the most active groups was called "The Water Team".

The Water Team's mission was simple but important: to survey(3) the school's water sources. This included taps(4) in the bathrooms, sinks in the science lab, and the water fountains in the playground. Their first task was to check for any drips(5) or leaks(6).

Even a small leak can waste many liters of water each day, so finding and fixing them would make a big difference.

The students also observed how water was used during the day. They noticed that some taps were left running while students washed their hands or filled bottles. They recorded(7) these observations carefully in a notebook.
After two weeks of research, The Water Team presented their findings(8) at the school assembly(9). They shared photos, charts, and ideas for saving water, such as turning off taps completely and using water bottles instead of paper cups.

Their work inspired other classes to start saving water, too. It proved that even small changes, when made by many people, can have a big impact(10) on the community and the planet.

انتظروا!!!!!!
كتاب مراجعة العمالقة للصف الأول الثانوي
العمالقة
Giants سلسلة GIANTS العمالقة

Listening

Before you start

1) Listen and put (T) True or (F) False:

1. Recycling, reducing, and reusing are all ways to protect the environment. (.....)
2. Using more plastic bags is one of the best ways to help the planet. (..........)
3. Turning off lights and unplugging devices saves energy. (..........)
4. Planting trees makes the air polluted. (..........)
5. Walking or cycling instead of driving helps reduce pollution. (..........)

Small Actions Can Make a Difference

١) مسئوليات
٢) إعادة التدوير
٣) تقليل النفايات
٤) إعادة استخدام المنتجات
٥) حقيبة قابلة لإعادة الاستخدام
٦) التلوث
٧) النفاد / الانتهاء
٨) هواء نقي
٩) يتجنب
١٠) مستدام

Keeping our environment clean is one of the most important responsibilities(1) for people today. Protecting nature means learning how to live without causing serious harm to the world around us. By practicing recycling(٢), reducing waste(٣), and reusing products(٤), we can all play a part in building a healthier planet.

One of the best ways to help is to stop using much plastic. Carrying a reusable bag(٥) and bringing your own water bottle are simple actions that make a big difference. Another useful habit is turning off lights when leaving a room, and unplugging devices that are not in use.

Saving energy helps reduce pollution(6), and keeps resources from running out(7) too quickly. In addition, we need to plant more trees, and to clean public spaces regularly. Planting trees gives us fresh air(8), and cleaning our streets and parks makes our communities safer and more beautiful.

We should also encourage people to walk or cycle, and avoid(9) driving everywhere. By working together, and choosing to take small actions every day, we can create a cleaner, greener, and more sustainable(10) future.

2) Complete the sentences with the correct word from the box.

plastic - recycling - energy - cleaner - trees

1. One simple way to save .... is turning off lights when leaving a room.
2. Carrying a reusable bag helps reduce the use of ....
3. Planting more .... gives us fresh air.
4. By practicing .... , we can reduce waste.
5. Working together every day can create a .... and greener future.

Exercise on Key Vocabulary

1. The students' .... was to reduce waste in the school. SB
   a. drips b. journey c. mission d. holiday
2. We need to .... the garden to see which plants are growing. SB
   a. destroy b. survey c. leak d. ignore
3. Tiny water .... can waste many liters of water a day. SB
   a. halls b. storms c. floods d. drips
4. The teacher asked the class to write down their .... in a notebook. SB
   a. bathrooms b. taps c. observations d. naps
5. During the school .... , students presented their projects. SB
   a. assembly b. impact c. war d. drips
6. Planting trees has a big .... on the environment. SB
   a. cause b. noise c. accident d. impact
7. The plumber came to fix a .... in the kitchen pipe.
   a. record b. leak c. drip d. mission
8. Scientists need to .... the results carefully for future study.
   a. ignore b. repair c. observe d. boil
9. After careful ...., she decided to accept the job offer.
   a. consideration b. accident c. impact d. finding
10. The scientist announced an exciting new .... about the rare disease.
    a. founding b. finding c. mission d. cause
11. Smoking can cause .... harm to your lungs over time.
    a. serious b. mission c. leak d. good
12. The journalist wanted to .... the president's speech for the newspaper.
    a. explode b. shout c. forget d. record

Exercise on Main Vocabulary

13. He is a .... football player who plays for a famous club.
    a. professional b. casual c. active d. common
14. The students did some .... on how animals adapt to cold weather.
    a. competition b. research c. result d. chart
15. Our class is working on a science .... about plants.
    a. map b. project c. chart d. notebook
16. She brought evidence to .... that she was right.
    a. ignore b. leave c. prove d. suggest
17. Today is a .... day because it's my birthday.
    a. special b. tiny c. common d. casual
18. I .... he will be late because of the heavy traffic.
    a. avoid b. suppose c. check d. inspire
19. I like to .... on the beach during summer vacation.
    a. carry b. fix c. fill d. relax
20. She ended the letter with, "Yours ...."
    a. sincerely b. completely c. politely d. casually
21. Please wash your hands in the kitchen ....
    a. tape b. sink c. fountain d. bathroom

22. We need to find a .... to this serious problem.
a. source b. task c. solution d. form

23. The reporter checked the .... of the information before writing the article.
a. solution b. notebook c. rush d. source

24. Turn off the .... to save water.
a. map b. sink c. tap d. cycle

25. Cleaning the whole house is a big .... for one person.
a. result b. area c. notice d. task

26. Use this .... to design your own invitation card.
a. chart b. template c. notebook d. map

27. Her angry .... made everyone quiet.
a. tone b. form c. source d. task

28. You should .... when you make a mistake.
a. attend b. apologize c. live d. ignore

29. Cold is a very .... illness in winter.
a. tiny b. rude c. polite d. common

30. Earth is the third .... from the sun.
a. moon b. cycle c. star d. planet

31. There is a beautiful .... in the center of the park.
a. fountain b. sink c. tap d. bathroom

32. The price does not .... tax and service charges.
a. conclude b. include c. leave d. suggest

33. The plumber fixed a .... under the kitchen sink.
a. map b. tap c. cycle d. leak

34. He likes to .... to school instead of taking the bus.
a. cycle b. carry c. check d. attend

35. The baby's hands are so .... and cute.
a. tiny b. huge c. massive d. busy

36. Always .... the computer before you clean it.
a. check b. unplug c. leave d. avoid

Exercise 04 Expressions, Prepositions, Derivatives, Notes & Definitions

37. A/An .... means an important job or task to do.
a. impact b. leak c. survey d. mission

38. There are several .... fountains in the park where people can drink clean water.
a. bathrooms b. water c. science d. public

39. Planting more trees can .... a big impact on reducing air pollution.
a. have b. boil c. take d. turn

40. The word .... means small drops of liquid falling slowly.
a. drought b. missions c. drips d. flood

41. Factories must not release .... water into rivers without cleaning it first.
a. tap b. rainwater c. waste d. drinking

42. Planting trees can .... a difference in the fight against climate change.
a. make b. avoid c. take d. run

43. When you ask people questions to find out information, this is called a /an ....
a. survey b. leak c. assembly d. impact

44. To save electricity, you should .... devices when they are not in use.
a. unplug b. check c. take d. play

45. You should regularly check .... leaks in your home to prevent water waste.
a. unplug b. have c. off d. for

46. We should .... the environment by recycling and reducing waste.
a. check b. protect c. leave d. fix

47. Teachers play a part .... shaping the future of their students.
a. under b. for c. in d. to

48. Smoking can .... harm to your lungs and overall health.
a. encourage b. cause c. take d. responsibility

49. .... means things you notice or see carefully.
a. Mission b. Observation c. Drip d. Survey

50. Posters in the city are used to .... people to recycle more.
a. record b. make c. harmful d. encourage

51. Parents have a responsibility .... their children's safety.
a. to b. in c. for d. at

52. We should .... waste by reusing plastic bags and recycling paper.
a. reduce b. create c. carry d. ignore

53. Recycling and saving energy are steps toward a .... future.
a. busy b. public c. common d. sustainable

54. All students must .... the school assembly on Monday.
a. check b. avoid c. create d. attend

Choose the (Two) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given.

55. We need to collect data for the science project. The antonym of "collect" is ....
a. gather b. escape c. scatter d. assemble e. distribute

56. Pollution has a bad impact on the environment. The synonym of "impact" is ....
a. effect b. cause c. influence d. origin e. source

57. You should avoid eating too much sugar. "avoid" can be replaced by ....
a. face b. escape c. confront d. prevent e. meet

58. You should record your homework in a notebook. The underlined word "record" is opposite in meaning to ".........".
a. document b. erase c. register d. delete e. log

59. Careful observation is important in science experiments. The antonym of "observation" is ....
a. ignorance b. note c. neglect d. comment e. remark

60. Children love to collect stamps. The synonym of "collect" is ....
a. gather b. scatter c. assemble d. distribute e. confront

61. The price will include free delivery. "include" can be replaced by ....
a. exclude b. contain c. omit d. involve e. remove

62. Drivers must avoid accidents by driving carefully. "Avoid" is opposite in meaning to "...."
a. escape b. dodge c. confront d. prevent e. face

63. The sun is very bright today. The synonym of "bright" is ....
a. shining b. dull c. brilliant d. dark e. dim

64. She wore a bright red dress to the party. The antonym of "bright" is ....
a. radiant b. dark c. brilliant d. shining e. dull

65. The pipe has a water leak in the kitchen. "leak" can be replaced by ....
a. contain b. spill c. block d. escape e. seal

١) لاحظ ما يأتى بعد stop

stop to + inf. → يتوقف لكى يفعل شيئا ما

★ He **stopped** to **smoke** توقف لكى يدخن.

stop + V + ing → يتوقف عن عمل شيء ما

★ He **stopped smoking.** توقف عن التدخين

stop + مفعول + from + V + ing → يمنع من عمل شيء ما

خاص
بالطلاب المتفوقين

★ The cold weather **stops** us **from going** outside.

1. My uncle stopped .... football after he hurt his leg.
a. play b. playing c. to play d. to playing
2. You have to stop .... up your sister when you go back home.
a. to pick b. picking c. to picking d. pick
3. What stops you .... as productive as you could be?
a. to being b. to be c. been d. from being

٢) لاحظ استخدام الماضى الغير حقيقى مع التعبيرات الآتية

★ I wish Toka **studied** well.
★ It's time she **studied** English.
★ I would rather she **studied** well.

1) I wish / suppose
2) It's time
3) I'd rather
} ماضى بسيط + فاعل +

✍ للاحظ: يأتى بعد التعبيرات السابقة ماضى تام (had + P.P.) فى حالة وجود كلمة تدل على الماضى.

★ I'd **rather** Ali **had watched** a film **yesterday.**

✍ للاحظ: يأتى بعد I'd rather مصدر / وبعد to +inf. (I wish - It's time)+ فى حالة عدم وجود فاعل

★ I'd **rather watch** a film. ★ It's **time to watch** a film.

4. I'd rather .... Mai at the club.
a. meet b. to meet c. met d. had met
5. I'd rather Mai .... her mother at the club.
a. meet b. to meet c. met d. had met
6. I'd rather Mai .... her mother at the club yesterday.
a. meet b. to meet c. met d. had met
7. I wish I .... a new car.
a. buy b. to buy c. bought d. buying

٣) لاحظ عدم جمع الكلمات الآتية إذا جاء قبلها عدد وبعدها اسم لأنها تعتبر صفة مركبة

second / minute / hour / day / week / month / year

★ I usually have **a ten-minute** break for coffee at midday.
★ Our company held **a five-hour** meeting.

✍ في حالة وجود كلمة time بعد الكلمات السابقة نستخدم ('s) في حالة المفرد و (s') في حالة الجمع:

★ in a **week's** time. ★ in **two weeks'** time.

8. Astronauts have .... mission to do some repairs.
a. a ten-days' b. a ten-days c. a ten-day d. ten-day
9. I will have finished all my exams in three ....
a. week time b. weeks time c. weeks' time d. week's time
10. Yesterday, I saw a movie about a ten- ....-old girl who got lost in a jungle.
a. years b. year c. year's d. years'

كتابة رسائل البريد الإلكترونى

Email

الأجزاء الرئيسية لرسالة البريد الالكترونى

Sender (From line) المرسل

يكتب هنا عنوان البريد الإلكترونى للشخص الذى أرسل الرسالة:

From: Ahmed 2025@yahoo.com

الجزء الذي يسبق @ يسمى (user name)

الجزء الذى يتبع @ يسمى (domain name)

Recipient (To line) المرسل إليه

يكتب هنا عنوان البريد الإلكترونى للشخص المرسل إليه الرسالة:

To: Al Daifi 2025@yahoo.com

الجزء الذي يسبق @ يسمى (user name)

الجزء الذي يتبع @ يسمى (domain name)

Subject Line شريط الموضوع

يكتب هنا موضوع الرسالة الإلكترونية:

Subject (About): Giants series

لابد أن يصاغ اسم الموضوع بشكل جيد وواضح ومختصر ليشجع المستلم علي فتح الرسالة.

Salutation / Greeting التحية

تختلف التحية باختلاف نوع الايميل فهناك:

① الإيميل الرسمى: وهو ايميل يرسل إلى جهة رسمية (عمل / دراسة / شكوى / ....)

② الايميل الغير الرسمى: وهو ايميل يرسل إلى جهة غير رسمية (صديق / أقارب / ....)

informal email	formal email
Hi .... ,	Dear .... ,
Hello .... ,	Dear Sir(Madam),
Hey .... ,	Dear Mr (Mrs) ....,

Body الموضوع

يحتوى موضوع البريد الإلكترونى على هدف الرسالة:

informal email	formal email
يمكننا استخدام مقدمة للترحيب	لا تستخدم اختصارات contractions
يمكننا استخدام الاختصارات والكلمات المختصرة وصيغة الأمر	لا تستخدم كلمات مختصرة abbreviated words
يكتب فى المعلوم active voice	لا تستخدم صيغة الأمر imperative
	يكتب فى صيغة المجهول passive voice

Closing الخاتمة

تحتوى الخاتمة على شكر أو توديع للمرسل إليه:

informal email	formal email
Bye,	Yours sincerely,
See you later,	Yours faithfully,
See you soon,	Best wishes,
Cheers, love,	Regards,

Signature التوقيع

يمكننا توقيع الرسائل الإلكترونية الغير رسمية باسم المرسل، لكن رسائل البريد الإلكترونى الرسمية أو التجارية بها أقسام توقيع تتضمن:

أسم المرسل / العنوان / اسم الشركة / معلومات التواصل

خطوات كتابة الإيميل الرسمى
Formal Email Writing

A Definition

- ★ A formal email is a message written in a polite and organized way, used for important matters such as applying for a job, making a request, or submitting a complaint.

البريد الإلكتروني الرسمي هو رسالة مكتوبة بطريقة مهذبة ومنظمة، نستخدمها في الأمور المهمة مثل التقدم لوظيفة أو تقديم طلب أو شكوى.

B Formal Email Template
قالب البريد الإلكتروني الرسمي

- ★ **Subject:** [Clear and Professional Subject]
- ★ **Dear** [Title + Last Name],
  I am writing to [state your purpose clearly].
  [Give details in full sentences. Be polite and professional.]
- ★ **Thank you for your time and consideration.**
- ★ **Yours sincerely,**
  [Your Full Name]

C Formal Email Essentials
أساسيات الإيميل الرسمي

★ **Greeting**	التحية	Dear Sir / Madam, / Dear Mr. Ali,
★ **Language**	اللغة	Polite, complete sentences, no slang
★ **Purpose**	الغرض	Job application, complaint, official request
★ **Closing**	الختام	Yours sincerely, / Kind regards,

Exercise 04 Writing

1. Which of the following is the most appropriate greeting for a formal email? SB- R1
a. Hey there! b. Hi John, c. Dear Mr. Smith, d. You!

2. .... should be avoided in a formal email. SB- R1
a. Clear subject line b. Polite closing c. Emojis and slang d. Full sentences

3. .... is the most appropriate closing for a formal email. SB- R1
a. Cheers! b. Talk soon, c. Best wishes, d. Sincerely,

4. The purpose of a formal email is to .... SB- R1
a. share memes b. chat about weekend plans
c. make a joke with friends d. communicate professionally with clarity and respect

5. Which sentence is appropriate for the body of a formal email? SB- R1
a. "What's up? Need help with the assignment."
b. "I hope this message finds you well. I am writing to inquire about the internship position."
c. "Hey! Send me the notes ASAP!!!" d. "Lol, that was so funny!"

6. Which is the most appropriate greeting for a formal email?
a. Hey bro b. Hi Rody c. Dear Mr. Ali, d. You man

7. The body of a formal email should use ....
a. Emojis b. Full sentences c. Abbreviations like "u" d. Slang

8. Which is a correct closing for a formal email?
a. Bye bye b. Later c. Yours sincerely, d. Cheers

9. Which of the following is too informal?
a. Request for Information b. Wanna know about the job
c. Meeting Confirmation d. Inquiry about Courses

10. What should follow the closing in a formal email?
a. Your full name b. A nickname c. Emojis d. Nothing

11. A formal subject line should be ....
a. Hi b. Application for the Sales Position
c. Job stuff d. Info

12. Which formal closing line is best?
a. Bye for now b. Thanks dude c. See you d. Thank you for your time.

13. Which is wrong for the signature?
a. Ahmed Ali b. Mr. Ahmed Ali c. Ahmed d. Dr. Sara Khaled

14. Why is the subject line important in a formal email?
a. To make it funny b. To state the purpose clearly
c. To confuse the reader d. To write random words

15. Which is polite and professional?
a. Thx b. Big thanks
c. Thanks a lot dude d. Thank you for your time and consideration.

16. A formal email should avoid:
a. Clear structure b. Slang words c. Polite language d. Correct spelling

17. Which of the following is polite and correct?
a. Can u help me b. Plz send info c. I wanna ask you d. I would like to ask you

18. In a formal email, the purpose should be:
a. Hidden b. Clearly stated c. Very short (one word) d. Written in slang

19. Which format is correct for a formal email?
a. Greeting – Closing – Subject – Body b. Closing – Greeting – Body – Subject
c. Subject – Closing – Greeting – Body d. Subject – Greeting – Body – Closing

20. Which greeting is best if you don't know the recipient's name?
a. Hello friend b. Dear teacher c. Hey you d. Dear Sir / Madam,

21. Which of these is NOT suitable for a subject line?
a. Complaint about Late Delivery b. Meeting Confirmation
c. LOL d. Inquiry about Courses

22. Which is most suitable when you don't know the person's name in formal email?
a. Bestie, b. Love, c. Cya d. Yours faithfully,

23. Which of the following is correct for closing?
a. Bye b. Peace c. Kind regards, d. Thx

24. Which of the following is correct for a formal subject line?
a. Meeting Reschedule Request b. Hey c. Stuff d. Hello

25. In formal writing, contractions like I'm, can't, don't are:
a. Always correct b. Better avoided c. Necessary d. Funny

26. Which should NOT be included in a formal email?
a. Closing line b. Purpose statement
c. Polite tone d. Abbreviations like ASAP, BTW

27. Which is correct for a professional complaint email?
a. I am writing to express my dissatisfaction with... b. Gimme refund
c. Hey, problem! d. This sucks

28. A formal email should be written in ....
a. Polite and professional language b. Abbreviations
c. Slang and emojis d. Jokes

29. What is the main purpose of formal emails?
a. Sending memes b. Joking
c. Chatting with friends d. Professional communication

Exercise 04 Translation

1. **Mass media plays an important role in forming public opinion and effective awareness in our country.**

بني مزار ٢٠٢٤

أ- تلعب وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي دورا مهما في تكوين الرأي العام والتفاهم الفعال في بلادنا.
ب- تلعب وسائل الاعلام دورا مهما في تكوين الرأي العام والتنسيق الفعال في بلادنا.
ج- تلعب وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي دورا مهما في تكوين الرأي العام والوعي الفعال في بلادنا.
د- تلعب وسائل الاعلام دورا مهما في تكوين الرأي العام والوعي الفعال في بلادنا.

2. **Due to the enormous progress in the means of communications, the world has become a global village. No country can live in isolation.**

ببا ٢٠٢٤

أ- بفضل التقدم المخيف في وسائل الاتصالات، أصبح العالم قرية عالمية فلا يمكن لكل دولة أن تعيش في معزل.
ب- بفضل النهضة الهائلة في وسائل المواصلات، أصبح العالم قرية عالمية فلا يمكن لأي دولة أن تعيش في توازن.
ج- بفضل التقدم الهائل في وسائل الاتصالات، أصبح العالم قرية عالمية. فلا يمكن لأي دولة أن تعيش في معزل.
د- بالرغم من التقدم الهائل في مسائل الاتصالات، أصبح العالم قرية عالمية. فمن الممكن أن تعيش أي دولة في توازن.

3. **The role of young people in nation building is significant; this is due to the fact that the development of a nation lies in future generations.**

الاقصر ٢٠٢٤

أ- دور الشباب في بناء الأمة مهم، ويرجع ذلك الى احتمال أن تنمية الأمه تأتي من الأجيال القادمة.
ب- دور المسنين في بناء الأمة مهم، ويرجع ذلك الى احتمال أن تنمية الأمه تأتي من الأجيال القادمة.
ج- دور الشباب في بناء الأمة مهم، ويرجع ذلك الى حقيقة أن تنمية الأمه تكمن في الأجيال القادمة
د- دور المسنين في بناء الأمة مهم، ويرجع ذلك الى حقيقة أن تنمية الأمه تكمن في الأجيال القادمة.

٤. **الشباب هم أساس التطور لأي أمة لذلك تولي الدول المتقدمة اهتماماً خاصًا بالشباب.** سوهاج ٢٠٢٤

a. Young are the top of the development of any nation. Though; the developing countries pay special interest to youth.
b. Youth are the basis of the development for any nation. So the developed countries pay special attention to youth.
c. Youth are the basis of the development for any nation. So the undeveloped countries pay special respect to youth.
d. Young are the main of the development for any nation. Therefore, the developing countries pay special attention to young.

٥. **يجب ان نهتم بالتربية البدنية في مدارسنا حتي نستطيع أن نربي جيلاً قوياً يخدم بلده.** جرجا ٢٠٢٤

a. We must pay attention to body bringing in our schools so that we can raise a strong generation to serve its country.
b. Schools should be interested in physical education in our schools so as to can bring up a strong generation that serves its country.
c. We must pay attention to physical education in our schools so that we can bring up a strong generation to serve its country.
d. We should care about physical education in our schools so that we can raise a strange generation to serve it country.

٦. **لقد كانت مصر دائماً شامخة بين الأمم على مر تاريخها الطويل، وستظل كذلك أبد الدهر بأبنائها المخلصين وشعبها الكريم.**

بسيون ٢٠٢٤

a. Egypt has always been great among nations throughout its long history. It will be so forever through its sincere citizens and generous people.
b. Egypt has been great among nations throughout it's long history. It will be so forever though its sincere citizens and generous people.
c. Egypt has always been great among nations throughout its long date. It will be so forever through its sincere citizens and generous people.
d. Egypt has always been great among nations throughout its long history. It will be such forever through it's sincere citizens and generous people.

General Exercises on Unit 4

A Vocabulary and Structure

Choose the (2) correct answers out of the (5) options given:

1. Recycling helps to waste resources efficiently. The antonym of "waste" is ....
   a. save b. conserve c. preserve d. misuse e. throw
2. The misuse of company resources can lead to serious problems. The synonym of "misuse" is ....
   a. proper use b. correct use c. abuse d. overuse e. mistreatment

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. Energy-saving programs aim to stop the .... of natural resources.
   a. depletion b. invention c. invention d. intention
4. People protested against building a new .... near their homes because of pollution.
   a. playground b. landfill c. school d. park
5. Farmers are now looking for .... methods that protect the soil and water for the future.
   a. limited b. temporary c. harmful d. sustainable
6. The government introduced an .... to support young entrepreneurs.
   a. initiative b. overuse c. landfill d. depletion
7. Scientists are developing .... materials that can replace plastic.
   a. harmful b. temporary c. renewable d. finite
8. We ..... our old furniture with new items to give the living room a fresh and modern look.
   a. swapped b. kept c. lost d. destroyed
9. I wouldn't like .... given instructions.
   a. to be b. being c. had been d. has been
10. My sister hates .... by air.
    a. fly b. to fly c. flies d. flew
11. We expect .... the English test this year.
    a. pass b. to passing c. passing d. to pass
12. Tamer and I agreed .... seven pounds each.
    a. paying b. pay c. to pay d. was paying
13. Astronauts have to practise .... everyday activities without gravity.
    a. to do b. to be done c. being done d. doing
14. Which of the following is the most appropriate greeting for a formal email?
    a. Hey there! b. Hi John, c. Dear Mr. Smith, d. You!
15. .... should be avoided in a formal email.
    a. Clear subject line b. Polite closing c. Emojis and slang d. Full sentences

B Reading Comprehension

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

How much do you know about the history of some of your favorite foods? Do you know when people in England started cooking curry dishes? Do you know in which country pizzas or hamburgers were first made? The facts might surprise you.

Many people think the English found out about curry from people in India in the 1600s. In reality, wealthy English people were eating dishes made with curry spices hundreds of years before British ships traveled to India. Cooks of wealthy English families during the time of King Richard I were making curry dishes, and in fact, the word "curry" can be found in an English language cookbook as far back as 1377.

As for pizza, this dish was probably first made in Persia (what is now Iran). The Persians were eating round, flat bread with cheese in the 500s. That was nearly 1,000 years before pizza caught on in Naples, Italy! Finally, let's look at the truth behind hamburgers. Many people think hamburgers are an American food. However, according to some stories, hamburgers came from Hamburg, Germany. A German named Otto Kuasw created the first hamburger in 1891. Four years later, German sailors introduced hamburgers to Americans.

Where foods come from isn't nearly as important as how they taste; as long as they are delicious! So, go get some of your favorite food and dig in.

16. What is the main idea of this passage?
- **a.** Curry was created in England.
- **b.** People created fast food long ago.
- **c.** There are many foods that help your body.
- **d.** Some facts about foods are surprising.

17. Which is probably true about British curry dishes in the 1400s?
- **a.** The dishes did not have meat.
- **b.** The spices cost a lot.
- **c.** People ate curry on special days.
- **d.** British sailors first made curry.

18. What did people in Naples learn from Persians?
- **a.** How to make pizza.
- **b.** How to cook cheese.
- **c.** How to use spices from Iran.
- **d.** How to make flat bread.

19. Who introduced hamburgers to America?
- **a.** Persians
- **b.** Otto Kuasw
- **c.** Italians
- **d.** German sailors

20. Which food was probably made first?
- **a.** Hamburgers
- **b.** Cheesy Persian bread
- **c.** Italian pizza
- **d.** English curry

21. What is the antonym of the "delicious"?
- **a.** distasteful
- **b.** tasteful
- **c.** enjoyable
- **d.** distinctive

22. This passage can be a part of a-an ....
- **a.** email
- **b.** letter
- **c.** article
- **d.** novel

C Writing

Translate the following sentences:

23. Parents should bring up their children to take responsibility for their life, make their own decisions and respect others. الغربية ٢٠٢٢

أ- يجب ألا يربي الوالدين أطفالهم ليتحملوا الوصاية عن حياتهم ويتخذوا قراراتهم الخاصة ويحترموا الآخرين.

ب- يجب أن يربي الوالدين أبنائهم ليتحملوا المسئولية عن حياتهم وليتخذوا قدراتهم الخاصة ويحترموا الآخرين.

ج- يجب أن يربي الوالدين أطفالهم ليتحملوا المسئولية عن حياتهم ويتخذوا قراراتهم الخاصة ويحترموا الآخرين.

د- يجب ألا يربي الوالدين أطفالهم ليتحملوا المسئولية عن حياتهم ويتخذوا قراراتهم الخاصة ويحترموا الآخرين.

٢٤. التعلم عن بعد هو مصطلح يعني القدرة على الدراسة عبر الإنترنت وفي المنزل باستخدام الكتب والأقراص المدمجة وأقراص الفيديو الرقمية التي ترسلها الجامعة. الغربية ٢٠٢٢

- **a.** Distant learning is a term which means the ability to study offline and at home using books, CDs and DVDs sent by a university.
- **b.** Distance learning is a term which means the ability to study online and at home using books, CDs and DVDs sent by a university.
- **c.** Distance learning is a term which means the inability to study online and at home using books, CDs and DVDs sent by a university.
- **d.** Distant learning is term which means the ability to study on line and at home using books, CDs and DVDs sent by a university.

Rewrite the sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

25. He offered to drive me home. **(suggested)**

26. I enjoy playing the piano. **(like)**

Answer the following questions:

27. How does Santiago's isolation affect the meaning of victory?

28. Why is Santiago's fight with the fish more than just fishing?

29. What lesson can readers learn from Santiago's endurance?

Write a formal email of (120 - 150) words

To your teacher apologizing for not atending the school day and telling her/him the reason.

1) Complete the following dialogue:

أزهر سوهاج ٢٠٢٢

Khalid: Where have you been, Adel?
Adel: ❶ ....
Khalid: What did you buy from the market?
Adel: ❷ ....
Khalid: ❸ ....?
Adel: The kilo of tomatoes is 8 pounds.
Khalid: ❹ ....?
Adel: Yes, I have bought all what my mother needs.
Khalid: That's very great of you.

2) Read the text and answer the questions:

Internet addiction has become one of the serious problems especially among young people over the last few years. Spending too much time surfing websites or chatting with friends affects physical and mental health negatively. They spend their precious time doing unimportant things and as a result they neglect their duties. Students lose concentration on their study and become more likely to hate their lessons. Workers also don't concentrate on their jobs and make frequent and sometimes big mistakes. People who are addicted to the internet also lose their ability to communicate face to face with other people. They also get irritable when they lose their access to the internet.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. When has the internet addiction become a problem?
....
2. What happens to students when they become addicted to the internet?
....
3. When do people addicted to the internet become irritable?
....

B. Choose the correct answer:

4. Spending too much time surfing the internet affects health ....
a. positively b. negatively c. rarely d. slightly
5. Workers addicted to the internet make .... mistakes.
a. few b. minor c. easy d. frequent

3) A. Translate into Arabic:

Sohag is famous for its unique views and friendly people.

....

....

B. Translate into English:

أحرز محمد صلاح العديد من الأهداف الرائعة في مباريات مثيرة.

....

....

Unit 5

Using Technology at Schools

Learning Outcomes

Reading

Analyze a text to identify how learning a foreign language can open new cultures and opportunities

Identify specific examples of how technology aids in language acquisition and learning

Infer the meaning of specialized vocabulary (e.g., fluency, tolerance, perspectives) from context

Listening

Extract specific details from an audio track about the journey of a multilingual student

- Identify the main idea of a text about students and technology
- Distinguish between correct and incorrect statements based on listening text

Language

Correctly use quantifiers such as "some, any, much, many, a few, and a little" with both countable and uncountable nouns

Distinguish between the uses of "some" and "any" in affirmative statements, questions, and offers

Identify and correct mistakes in sentences involving countable and uncountable nouns

Speaking

Discuss the benefits of learning a foreign language and how it helps students become global citizens

Engage in a role-play using conditional sentences to ask and answer questions about **language learning**

Express opinions on how technology, like AI, can assist in language learning

Writing

Write an essay about how learning a foreign language can help students.

Unit 5 Using Technology at Schools

Lessons
1 Why Learning a Foreign Language Matters
2 My Journey as a Multilingual

Key Vocabulary

tolerance (n)	تسامح	collaborate (v)	يتعاون	exchange (n/v)	يتبادل/ تبادل
fluent (adj)	طليق/ فصيح	dedicate (v)	يكرس/ يخصص	exchange program	برنامج تبادل
fluency (n)	طلاقة	perspective (n)	وجهة نظر	motivate (v)	يحفز
hesitate (v)	يتردد	multicultural (adj)	متعدد الثقافات	process (n/v)	عملية/ يصنع
hesitation (n)	تردد	multilingual (adj)	متعدد اللغات	expand (v)	يتوسع

Main Vocabulary

shy (adj)	خجول	proficiency (n)	كفاءة	confidence (n)	ثقة
overwhelmed (adj)	مرتبك/ مرهق	local (adj)	محلى	confidently (adv)	بثقة
anxious (adj)	قلق	global (adj)	عالى	consistent (adj)	ثابت/ متواصل
encourage (v)	يشجع	international (adj)	عالى	consistently (adv)	باستمرار
multiple (adj)	متعدد	foreign (adj)	اجنبى	remain (v)	يبقى
activities (n)	انشطة	native (adj)	محلى	professional (adj)	محترف
ability (n)	قدرة	promote (v)	يدعم / يرقى	culture (n)	ثقافة
competition (n)	منافسة	career (n)	حياة مهنية	personal (adj)	شخصى
horizon (n)	أفق	broad (adj)	واسع	memory (n)	ذاكرة
relatives (n)	أقارب	peers (n)	اقران/ زملاء	memorize (v)	يحفظ
avoid (v)	يتجنب	improvement (n)	تحسين	positively (adv)	بايجابية
subtitles (n)	ترجمة عناوين فرعية	leisure time	وقت الفراغ	regularly (adv)	بإنتظام
connected	متصل	problem-solving	حل المشكلات	classmate (n)	زميل دراسة
benefit (n/v)	فائدة / يستفيد	critical thinking	تفكير نقدى	tool (n)	اداة
consume (v)	يستهلك	imaginary (adj)	خيالى	worldview (n)	رؤية عالمية
time-consuming	مستهلك للوقت	willingness (n)	رغبة/ ارادة	worldwide (adj/adv)	حول العالم
express (v)	يعبر	interview (n/v)	حوار/ يحاور	experience (n/v)	خبرة/ تجربة
opportunity (n)	فرصة	homeland (n)	الوطن	constant (adj)	ثابت / دائم

Collocations

make friends	يكون صداقات	join competitions	يشارك بالمسابقات
remain/stay motivated	يبقى متحفزا	promote respect	ينمى الاحترام
give advice about	يعطى نصيحة عن	improve confidence	يحسن الثقة
communicate ideas	يوصل افكار	expand horizons	يوسع الافاق
gain perspectives	يكتسب رؤية جديدة	have an opportunity to	لديه فرصة لـ
gain skills	يكتسب المهارات	respect cultures	يحترم الثقافات
gain benefits	يجني فوائد	practise speaking	يمارس التحدث

Expressions & Prepositions

express themselves	يعبروا عن انفسهم	communicate with	يتواصل مع
Who know?	ومن يدرى؟	participate in	يشارك فى
digital communication tools	أدوات التواصل الرقمى	connect with	يتصل ب
open door to	يفتح المجال ل	grow up	يكبر
real-life experience	تجارب واقعية	move to	ينتقل الى
in addition	بالإضافة الى ذلك	in short	باختصار
global citizen	مواطن عالمى	a key to	مفتاح ل
contribute to	يساهم في	talk to	يتحدث الى
a connected world	عالم متصل	return to	يعود الى

Definitions

fluency	طلاقة	▶ ability to speak a language easily and accurately
tolerance	تسامح	▶ willingness to accept differences
hesitation	تردد	▶ delay or uncertainty
perspectives	وجهات نظر	▶ points of view or ways of thinking
expanding	توسع	▶ making something larger, or wider in size or importance
collaborate	يتعاون	▶ work together with someone to achieve something
multilingual	متعدد اللغات	▶ able to use or speak several languages
multicultural	متعدد الثقافات	▶ including or relating to people of many different cultures

Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym	Antonym
tolerance	تسامح	acceptance, patience, endurance	intolerance, impatience, prejudice
fluent	فصيح	expressive, proficient, talkative	hesitant, awkward, influent
hesitate	يتردد	pause, delay, stumble	continue, persist, proceed
collaborate	يتعاون	cooperate, assist, participate	disagree, oppose, resist
dedicate	يخصص / يكرس	devote , commit, pledge	neglect, ignore, abandon
motivate	يحفز	inspire, encourage, drive	discourage, dishearten, depress
motivated	متحمس	inspired, determined, eager	lazy, indifferent, uninspired
expand	يتوسع	enlarge, broaden, extend	shrink, contract, reduce
overwhelmed	منهك/ مرهق	stressed, overloaded, defeated	calm, composed, balanced
anxious	قلق	nervous, uneasy, concerned	confident, relaxed, calm
exchange	تبادل/ يتبادل	trade, swap, replace	keep, retain, hold
perspective	وجهة نظر	viewpoint, outlook, perception	narrow-mindedness, ignorance

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
hesitate	يتردد	hesitation	تردد	hesitant	متردد
dedicate	يكرس	dedication	تكريس/ تخصيص	dedicated	مخصص/مخلص
tolerate	يتسامح	tolerance	تسامح	tolerant	متسامح
collaborate	يتعاون	collaboration	تعاون	collaborative	تعاونى
consume	يستهلك	consumption	استهلاك	consumable	قابل للاستهلاك
imagine	يتخيل	imagination	خيال	imaginary	خيالى

Language Notes

Notice the Difference

imaginary	خيالى(غير حقيقى)	⇔	**imaginative**	خيالى(مبدع)
shy	خجول(بطبعه)	⇔	**ashamed**	خجول(بسبب شيء)
broad	واسع	⇔	**board**	لوح
process	عملية(خطوات)	⇔	**operation**	عملية جراحية
experience	خبرة/ تجربة في الحياة	⇔	**experiment**	تجربة علمية
change	تغيير/ يغير	⇔	**exchange**	تبادل/ يتبادل
benefit of	فائدة	⇔	**benefit from**	يستفيد من
personal	شخصى	⇔	**personnel**	عامل/ شئون العاملين
regularly	بانتظام	⇔	**gradually**	تدريجيا
multicultural	متعدد الثقافات	⇔	**multilingual**	متعدد اللغات
foreign (adj)	أجنبي	⇔	**foreigner (n)**	أجنبي(اسم شخص)
confident	واثق	⇔	**confidence**	الثقة

communicate with / in / by

communicate with	يتواصل مع شخص	▶ I usually **communicate with** my teacher by email.
communicate in	يتواصل بلغة معينة	▶ He can **communicate in** English and French.
communicate by	يتواصل عن طريق وسيلة	▶ We **communicate by** phone every day.

late / later / latter

late (adj/adv)	متأخر / متوفى	▶ He arrived **late** to the meeting.
later (adv)	فيما بعد	▶ I will call you **later**.
latter (adj)	الأخير	▶ I like tea and coffee, but I prefer the **latter**.

memory, memorize & memorial

memory	ذاكرة	▶ He has a sharp **memory**.
memorize	يحفظ	▶ He tried to **memorize** the new vocabulary.
memorial	نصب تذكارى	▶ The **memorial** was built to honor our soldiers.

2) Read the following passage

Learning a foreign(1) language opens the door to new cultures, ideas, and opportunities(2). If students learn a new language, they will be able to communicate with(3) people from different countries, make international friends, and participate in(4) global(5) activities.

Moreover, they will understand other cultures better, which promotes respect, tolerance(6), and a broader worldview.

If students practiced speaking regularly, they would improve their confidence(7), fluency(8), and ability to express themselves clearly in different situations. Schools that provide language programs encourage students to use these skills in real-life experiences(9), such as traveling, participating in exchange programs, joining international competitions, or using digital communication tools to connect with peers worldwide.

١) اجنبى
٢) فرص
٣) يتواصل مع
٤) يشارك فى
٥) عالمى
٦) تسامح
٧) ثقة
٨) طلاقة
٩) تجارب
١٠) يتردد
١١) وجهة نظر
١٢) يتوسع
١٣) متعدد الثقافات

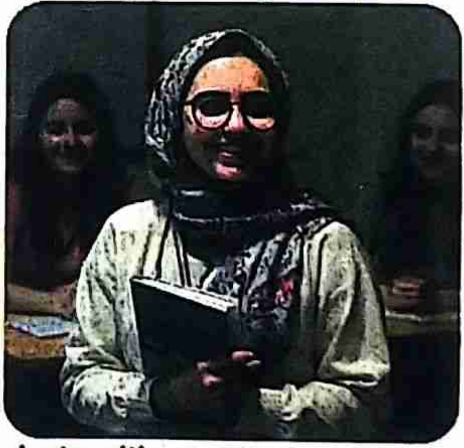
Some students hesitate(10) to learn another language because they feel it is too difficult or time-consuming. However, if they tried consistently and remained motivated, they would gain not only language skills, but also critical thinking, problem-solving abilities, memory improvement, and new perspectives(11) on the world.

In addition, if students spoke multiple languages, they would have more opportunities for higher education and careers in international companies. In short, learning a foreign language is not just about grammar and vocabulary. It is a key to becoming a global citizen, expanding(12) personal horizons, and contributing positively to a connected and multicultural(13) world.

Listening

My Journey as a Multilingual

"My name is Salma and I speak Arabic, English, and Spanish. I grew up(1) in Cairo, but when I was 12, my family moved to(2) Spain because of my father's job. At first, I couldn't understand anything at school. I felt shy(3), anxious, and overwhelmed(4). However, my teachers encouraged me to practice every day with my classmates, and slowly I improved. After a year, I could speak Spanish fluently and participate in class confidently(5).



١) يكبر
٢) ينتقل الى
٣) خجول
٤) منهك
٥) بثقة
٦) متعدد اللغات
٧) حضارات

English

Later, I returned to Egypt and studied more seriously. Speaking three languages has completely changed my life. I am now multilingual(6), which allows me to work with international companies, travel easily, and communicate with people from different cultures. I believe learning Languages is not just about words. It's about understanding people. We must respect the cultures(7) connected to the languages we learn. In the future, I hope to study French. Who knows, maybe one day I will speak five languages."

Exercise 04 Key Vocabulary

1. She speaks French with such.........that you can hardly notice she is not a native. **SB R2**
a. perspective b. confident c. fluency d. tolerance

2. She remained......... even under great pressure. **SB R2**
a. generic b. anxious c. confident d. complicated

3. A good teacher tries to keep students......... to learn. **SB R2**
a. motivated b. fluent c. anxious d. independence

4. We must show .... towards people who have different opinions.
a. hesitation b. fluency c. tolerance d. process

5. The two companies decided to .... to produce a new product.
a. hesitate b. collaborate c. motivate d. avoid

6. Students can learn more when they .... ideas in class.
a. hesitate b. rescue c. leave d. exchange

7. She speaks English so .... that everyone understands her easily.
a. fluent b. tolerant c. hesitant d. multicultural

8. Doctors often .... their lives to helping sick people.
a. expand b. exchange c. motivate d. dedicate

9. Different .... about the same problem can help find better solutions.
a. perspectives b. hesitations c. expansions d. isolations

10. Teachers should try to .... students to work hard and do their best.
a. expand b. motivate c. exchange d. hesitate

11. Don't .... to ask questions if you don't understand the lesson.
a. dedicate b. exchange c. hesitate d. expand

12. Our city is very .... because people from many countries live here together.
a. hesitant b. fluent c. consistent d. multicultural

13. The teacher explained the .... of writing an essay step by step.
a. process b. operation c. flood d. expansion

14. She showed a little .... before entering the dark room; she was afraid.
a. motivation b. operation c. hesitation d. fluency

15. During the trip, students will .... gifts with their foreign friends.
a. motivate b. exchange c. process d. risk

16. The company wants to .... its business to new markets in Asia.
a. hesitate b. ruin c. expand d. memorize

17. His .... in French helped him get the job in Canada.
a. process b. tolerance c. hesitation d. fluency

18. Many students join a/an .... program to study abroad and learn about new cultures.
a. hesitation b. emergency c. exchange d. fluency

19. He is .... because he can speak English, French, and German very well.
a. consistent b. hesitant c. multicultural d. multilingual

20. He signed the contract without any .... ; it was a life-time chance for him.
a. hesitation b. tolerance c. perspective d. fluency

Exercise 04 Main Vocabulary

21. The girl felt too .... to speak in front of the class; she couldn't say a word.
a. shy b. confident c. local d. global

22. His high level of English .... helped him pass the job interview.
a. hesitation b. exchange c. proficiency d. silence

23. He felt .... by the amount of homework he had to finish.
a. consistent b. local c. confident d. overwhelmed

24. He answered the teacher's question .... in front of everyone without hesitation.
a. anxiously b. confidently c. shyly d. silently

25. Before the exam, many students feel nervous and ....
a. voluntary b. anxious c. foreign d. imaginary

26. Climate change is a .... problem that affects all countries.
a. global b. local c. foreign d. multilingual

27. Her hard work and .... effort helped her improve in math.
a. anxious b. consistent c. shy d. foreign

28. Teachers should .... students to ask questions in class.
a. overwhelm b. hesitate c. remain d. encourage

29. The school organized a/an .... trip to Paris. We will travel by air.
a. local b. native c. international d. multiple

30. He enjoys learning .... languages like Spanish and Japanese.
a. foreign b. local c. native d. national

31. The school held a writing .... and gave prizes to the winners.
a. career b. peer c. horizon d. competition

32. After twenty years, he decided to change his ....
a. culture b. improvement c. career d. memory

33. Reading books can open new .... and ideas for young people.
a. relatives b. horizons c. willingless d. memories

34. Social media and TV programs have given a .... view of life in different countries.
a. native b. anxious c. shy d. broad

35. Grandpa shared a special .... from his childhood.
a. memory b. ability c. culture d. fluency

36. You need to .... the new vocabulary before the exam.
a. avoid b. risk c. memorize d. benefit

37. To stay healthy, you should .... eating too much fast food.
a. memorize b. avoid c. promote d. broaden

38. Football players usually respect their .... on the opposite team.
a. parents b. teachers c. relatives d. peers

39. I watch English movies with Arabic .... to improve my listening skills.
a. classmates b. benefits c. interviews d. subtitles

40. Many people spend their .... reading books or playing sports.
a. experience b. willingness c. leisure time d. worldview

41. He goes to the gym .... to keep his body healthy.
a. regularly **b.** rarely **c.** suddenly **d.** slowly

42. One big .... of exercise is that it makes you healthier.
a. difference **b.** benefit **c.** problem **d.** interview

43. The internet is a powerful .... for learning new information.
a. interview **b.** classmate **c.** problem **d.** tool

44. People should not .... too much fast food because it is unhealthy.
a. express **b.** expand **c.** consume **d.** memorize

45. Travelling to other countries can change a person's ....
a. worldview **b.** interview **c.** subtitle **d.** benefit

46. Doing all the research for the project was very .... it took a very long time.
a. connected **b.** critical thinking **c.** time-consuming **d.** worldwide

47. Her .... to help others made her popular among her friends.
a. willingness **b.** problem **c.** leisure **d.** benefit

48. Poets use poetry to .... their feelings about life.
a. consume **b.** express **c.** memorize **d.** interview

49. Working in a hospital gave her real-life .... in helping people..
a. imagination **b.** leisure **c.** interview **d.** experience

50. Teachers encourage .... so that students can analyze ideas carefully.
a. leisure time **b.** experience **c.** critical thinking **d.** subtitle

Exercise 04 Expressions, Prepositions, Derivatives & Language Notes

51. When you travel abroad, you can .... friends with people from different countries.
a. make **b.** develop **c.** take **d.** lose

52. Many students like to .... competitions to test their abilities and win prizes.
a. remain **b.** give **c.** do **d.** join

53. To succeed in your studies, you must .... motivated even when things are difficult.
a. make **b.** bring **c.** remain **d.** practice

54. Speaking in front of the class helps students .... confidence in themselves.
a. feel **b.** improve **c.** take **d.** make

55. Writers use stories to .... ideas to the readers clearly.
a. communicate **b.** connect **c.** contact **d.** gain

56. Talking to people from different backgrounds helps you .... perspectives on life.
a. stay **b.** face **c.** escape **d.** gain

57. Students are encouraged to participate .... school activities.
a. in **b.** on **c.** at **d.** with

58. Travelling helps people connect .... others from different cultures.
a. in **b.** on **c.** to **d.** with

59. His family decided to move .... a new city for work.
a. on **b.** to **c.** out **d.** off

60. The trip was interesting ...., we learned many new things.
a. But **b.** Moreover **c.** However **d.** Although

61. .... is the ability to speak a language easily and accurately.

a. Tolerance b. Hesitation c. Fluency d. Perspective

Choose the (Two) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given.

62. She felt very motivated to finish her project ahead of the deadline. The antonym of the underlined word "motivated" is......... . **SB R-2**

a. generic b. anxious c. polished d. lazy e. indifferent

63. People should show tolerance towards others who have different opinions. The synonym of the underlined word "tolerance" is ....

a. anger b. acceptance c. rejection d. patience e. prejudice

64. He had no tolerance for rude behavior. The antonym of the underlined word "tolerance" is ....

a. intolerance b. kindness c. impatience d. acceptance e. peace

65. She is fluent in English and French. The synonym of the underlined word "fluent" is ....

a. influent b. awkward c. expressive d. proficient e. hesitant

66. She didn't hesitate before signing the contract. The antonym of the underlined word "hesitate" is ....

a. stumble b. pause c. delay d. continue e. proceed

67. The two schools will collaborate on a science project. The synonym of the underlined word "collaborate" is ....

a. cooperate b. assist c. disagree d. oppose e. attack

68. She didn't want to dedicate much time to the project. The antonym of the underlined word "dedicate" is ....

a. neglect b. focus c. commit d. devote e. ignore

69. Teachers should motivate students to work hard. The synonym of the underlined word "motivate" is ....

a. depress b. weaken c. encourage d. stop e. inspire

70. The company plans to expand its business to new countries. The synonym of the underlined word "expand" is ....

a. enlarge b. shrink c. contract d. extend e. reduce

انتظروا!!!!!
كتاب مراجعة العمالقة
للصف الأول الثانوي
العمالقة
سلسلة Giants
GIANTS العمالقة

الأسماء المعدودة وغير المعدودة

Countable & Uncountable Nouns

1 Countable Nouns الأسماء المعدودة

الأسماء التى تعد يكون لها مفرد ويمكن أن يأتى قبلها واحدة من:

a - an - one - this - that - each - every...

a bag	this car	each boy	one story	is
a book	this table	each student	one pen	was
an apple	that bus	every hero	one cup	has
an egg	that watch	every box	one flat	v + s

الأسماء التى تعد يكون لها جمع بإضافة (s / es / ies) يمكن أن يأتى قبلها:

these - those - many - few - a lot of - several - some - any....

ويأتى بعدها فعل جمع:

are - were - have - infinitive...

bags	these cars	many boys	four stories	are
books	these tables	few students	two pens	were
apples	those buses	any heroes	a lot of cups	have
eggs	those watches	some boxes	lots of flats	infinitive

الأسماء التى تعد قد يكون لها جمع غير منتظم مثل:

Singular	مفرد		Plural	جمع
man	رجل	➜	men	رجال
woman	امرأة	➜	women	نساء
child	طفل	➜	children	أطفال
tooth	سنة	➜	teeth	أسنان
foot	قدم	➜	feet	أقدام
ox	ثور	➜	oxen	ثيران
mouse	فأر	➜	mice	فئران
oasis	واحة	➜	oases	واحات
crisis	أزمة	➜	crises	أزمات

هناك أسماء دائما فى صيغة الجمع:

people	الناس	scissors	مقص	jeans	بنطلون جينز
police	الشرطة	stairs	السلم	shorts	بنطلون قصير
clothes	ملابس	remains	بقايا	trousers	بنطلون
glasses	نظارة	public	العامة / الجمهور	pliers	زرادية (بنسة)
youth	الشباب	cattle	ماشية	goods	بضائع

بعض الأسماء تكون مفرد أو جمع حسب المعنى المستخدم:

Singular	مفرد		Plural	جمع
the people	الشعب (مفرد / جمع)	➜	people	الناس (جمع)
a means	وسيلة	➜	means	وسائل
a series	سلسلة	➜	series	سلاسل
a species	فصيلة	➜	species	فصائل
a craft	ناقلة	➜	craft	ناقلات
a fish	سمكة	➜	fish	سمك
a deer	غزال	➜	deer	غزلان
a sheep	خروف	➜	sheep	غنم
mathematics	علم الرياضيات	➜	mathematics	حسابات
statistics	علم الإحصاء	➜	statistics	الإحصاءات

- ★ Statistics **show** that women live longer than men.
- ★ Statistics **is** an easy subject.

بعض الأسماء قد تنتهى بـ (s) ولكنها مفرد:

classics	دراسة اليونانية والرومانية	genetics	علم الوراثة	economics	علم الاقتصاد
politics	علم السياسة	statistics	علم الإحصاء	gymnastics	ألعاب الجمباز
physics	الفيزياء	athletics	ألعاب القوى	linguistics	علم اللغويات
mathematics	الرياضيات	electronics	الالكترونيات	mechanics	علم الميكانيكا

★ Physics **is** a hard subject. ★ Athletics **is** my favourite sport.

للاحظ الأسماء الكلية تعامل جمع (إذا أشير إلى عناصرها كأجزاء متفرقة) وتعامل مفرد (إذا أشير إلى عناصرها كجزء واحد)

the public	العامة	class	الفصل	government	الحكومة
people	الشعب	school	المدرسة	gang	عصابة
group	مجموعة	faculty	الكلية	cast	فريق التمثيل
team	فريق	navy	الأسطول	band	فرقة موسيقية
family	عائلة	army	الجيش	staff	هيئة عاملين
crew	طاقم سفينة أو طائرة	population	السكان	Herd (pack-flock)	قطيع حيوانات

★ The Egyptian team **is** playing well. ★ All team **are** leaving the pitch.

Uncountable Nouns 2 الأسماء غير المعدودة

الأسماء التى لا تعد أسماء ليس لها جمع ولا يأتى قبلها: **a - an- one - these - those.**

ويأتى بعدها فعل مفرد:

is - was – has / v + s

important uncountable nouns أسماء مهمة لا تعد

information	معلومات	music	موسيقى	traffic	مرور
news	أخبار	equipment	المعدات	electricity	كهرباء
furniture	أثاث	cloth	قماش	jewellery	مجوهرات
advice	نصيحة	baggage / luggage	أمتعة	rubbish	قمامة
money	مال	travel	السفر	work	عمل
bread	خبز	clothing	الملبس	hair	شعر
time	وقت			machinery	آلات

ويمكننا تقسيم الأسماء التى لا تعد كما يلى:

1. Liquids	السوائل	☞ milk - water - juice - tea - coffee - oil ... etc.
2. Materials	الخامات	☞ gold - wood - paper - iron - glass - stone - ... etc.
3. Gases	الغازات	☞ oxygen - hydrogen - carbon dioxide ...etc.
4. School subjects	المواد الدراسية	☞ history - physics - chemistry .... etc.
5. Meals	الوجبات	☞ breakfast - lunch - dinner - supper
6. Languages	اللغات	☞ Arabic - English - French - German ... etc.
7. Sports	الرياضات	☞ tennis - football - volleyball - squash -hockey .etc.
8. Activities	الأنشطة	☞ studying - reading - writing - shopping .. etc.
9. Abstract nouns	الأسماء المجردة	☞ freedom - advice - luck - honesty - love .....etc.
10. Natural phenomena	الظواهر الطبيعية	☞ drought - heat - snow - thunder - light - rain..etc.

Quantifiers 3 تعبيرات الكمية والعدد

a lot of - many - much - a few - few - a little - little

a lot of **= lots of**	تأتى قبل اسم يعد جمع أو اسم لا يعد ويفضل استخدامها فى الجملة الخبرية المثبتة. ☞ I have got **a lot of** friends. ☞ I have got **lots of** money.
many	تأتى قبل اسم يعد جمع ويفضل استخدامها فى النفى والاستفهام. ☞ I haven't got **many** friends. ☞ Have you got **many** friends?
much	تأتى قبل اسم لا يعد ويفضل استخدامها فى النفى والاستفهام. ☞ I haven't got **much** money. ☞ Have you got **much** money?
a few	تأتى قبل اسم يعد جمع وتشير إلى عدد قليل ولكن يكفي. ☞ I have **a few** experiences. (enough)
few	تأتى قبل اسم يعد جمع وتشير إلى عدد قليل ولا يكفى (تنفى الجملة لذا لا تأتى فى الجملة المنفية). ☞ I have **few** experiences. (not enough)
a little	تأتى قبل اسم لا يعد وتشير إلى كمية قليلة ولكن تكفى. ☞ I have **a little** money. (enough)
little	تأتى قبل اسم لا يعد وتشير إلى كمية قليلة ولا تكفى (تنفى الجملة لذا لا تأتى فى الجملة المنفية). ☞ I have **little** money. (not enough)

لاحظ: يفضل استخدام (many - much) فى النفى والاستفهام ولكن يمكن استخدامهم فى الجملة المثبتة إذا جاء قبلها (so - too - as) أو إذا أتوا قبل الفاعل:

★ He has **so much** money.

★ I have faced **too many** problems recently.

Some – any

some

تأتى قبل اسم يعد جمع أو اسم لا يعد فى جملة خبرية مثبتة وفى سؤالى العرض والطلب.

- ☞ I found **some** good **stories**. اسم يعد | ☞ I drank **some water**. اسم لا يعد
- ☞ Would you like **some** tea? عرض
- ☞ Can I have **some** of these oranges? طلب

any

تأتى قبل اسم يعد (مفرد أو جمع) أو اسم لا يعد فى جملة استفهامية أو منفية و في الجملة الشرطية.

- ☞ I don't want **any** problems. اسم يعد | ☞ I didn't drink **any** juice. اسم لا يعد
- ☞ Do you have **any** experience? سؤال
- ☞ If you find **any** thing, contact me at once. الجملة الشرطية

تأتى مع الكلمات الدالة على النفى مثل:

hardly - scarcely - seldom - never - without - refuse - too .. to

- ☞ He **never** had **any** luck. = he had no luck.
- ☞ We **hardly** had **any** money.

Important Notes

① بعض الأسماء يمكن أن تعد أو لا تعد حسب المعنى مثل:

الاسم	المعنى	تعد أو لا تعد	مثال
a paper / papers	جريدة / جرائد	يعد	▷ I'm going to buy **a paper**.
paper	ورق الكتابة	لا يعد	▷ I'd like some writing **paper**.
an orange	برتقال فاكهة	يعد	▷ There are **two oranges** on the table.
orange	اللون البرتقالى	لا يعد	▷ I don't like **orange**. I prefer red.
an iron	مكواة	يعد	▷ She bought **an iron** yesterday.
iron	الحديد	لا يعد	▷ This table is made of **iron**.
a chicken	دجاجة	يعد	▷ I'd like to buy **a chicken**.
chicken	لحم الدجاج	لا يعد	▷ Do you like **chicken**?
a company	شركة	يعد	▷ The law obliges **companies** to pay decent wages.
company	صحبة	لا يعد	▷ You should be in good **company**.
a time / times	مرة / مرات	يعد	▷ He went to London **three times**.
time	الوقت	لا يعد	▷ Don't hurry. There's plenty of **time**.
a school	مدرسة	يعد	▷ The government built **a school** in our village.
school	دراسة	لا يعد	▷ My brother started **school** at the age of 6.
a coffee	فنجان من القهوة	يعد	▷ Could I have **two coffees**? **(cups of coffee)**
coffee	قهوة (مشروب)	لا يعد	▷ Have you got any **coffee**?
a tea	كوب شاي	يعد	▷ Could I have two cups of coffee and **a tea**, please?
tea	شاي (مشروب)	لا يعد	▷ India grows **tea** for export.
an experience	تجربة بالحياة	يعد	▷ Travelling is **an experience** you will never forget.
experience	خبرة	لا يعد	▷ This job needs **experience**.
a light	مصباح كهربي	يعد	▷ We need **two lights** in this room.
light	الضوء	لا يعد	▷ The sun gives us **light**.
a glass	كوب زجاجي	يعد	▷ Would you like **a glass** of water?

مثـــــــال	تعد أو لا تعد	المعنى	الاسم
▸ The window's made of unbreakable **glass**.	لا يعد	زجاج	**glass**
▸ We went for a walk in the **woods** after lunch.	يعد	غابة	**a wood**
▸ The house was built of **wood** but faced with brick.	لا يعد	خشب	**wood**
▸ We need to build **a** new **work** in this area.	يعد	عمل فنى /عمل أدبي/ مصنع	**a work**
▸ I've got so much **work** to do.	لا يعد	العمل	**work**

② يمكن تحويل الأسماء التى لا تعد إلى أسماء تعد كالآتى:

أنواع أدوات التجـــزئـة

Kinds of Partitives

General Partitives 1 ألفاظ التجزئة العامة

✍ باستخدام (a bit of - a piece of) كألفاظ تجزئة عامه وفى الجمع (bits of - pieces of)

★ I'd like a **piece** (a **bit**) of cloth / bread / advice.

★ I'd like two **pieces** (**bits**) of cloth / bread / advice.

Special Partitives 2 ألفاظ التجزئة الخاصة

a cup of	فنجان من	a bag of	كيس من	a sheet of	فرخ من
a glass of	كوب من	a tin of	علبة من	a tube of	أنبوبة من
a bottle of	زجاجة من	a slice of	شريحة من	a dish of	طبق من
a jar of	برطمان من	a kilo of	كيلو من	a bar of	قطعة من
a packet of	علبة من	a loaf of	رغيف من	a pair of	زوج من

✍ وعند الجمع نجمع لفظ التجزئة ولا نجمع اسم المادة.

★ **two sheets of paper - two jars of jam - five cups of tea - two loaves of bread - two slices of meat - six bars of chocolate .....**

③ العبارات الدالة على الكمية والمبالغ المالية والزمن والثمن والمسافة والوزن ودرجات الحرارة تعامل معاملة المفرد مع الفعل:

★ Ten million pounds **is** a lot of money.

★ Five kilometers **is** a long way to walk.

★ Fifty litres of petrol **fills** my car.

★ Two hours **is** a long time to wait.

④ لاحظ الفعل مع:

a number of + فعل جمع / the number of + فعل مفرد

★ **The number of** people in Egypt **is** in increase. **A number of** boys **have** left their books.

⑤ لاحظ الفعل مع:

One of the + اسم جمع + فعل مفرد

★ One of the players **was** injured.

★ One of the spokes of my bicycle **was** broken.

⑥ لاحظ مع هذه التعبيرات الفعل يتبع الفاعل الأول

as well as / besides / in addition to / along with

★ I **as well as** he **study** hard.

★ He **as well as** I **studies** hard.

⑦ لاحظ مع هذه التعبيرات الفعل يتبع الفاعل الثاني

not only .... but also .... / .... or .... / either .... or .... / neither .... nor ....

★ **Neither** Toka **nor** the students **are** here. (**Neither** the students **nor** Toka **is** here.)

Exercise On Language Level 1

1. **Could you give me some .... for this job interview?** **SB R-2**
   a. advises **b.** advice **c.** advise **d.** adviser
2. **She gave me .... useful information about studying abroad.** **SB R-2**
   a. a lot **b.** few **c.** many **d.** some
3. **How .... students are in the classroom?** **SB R-2**
   a. little **b.** many **c.** much **d.** lots
4. **I don't have ....homework today.** **SB**
   a. many **b.** much **c.** a little **d.** some
5. **There are .... cars on the street, around a thousand.** **SB**
   a. a few **b.** much **c.** a little **d.** many
6. **My brother has .... close friends; only 2.** **SB**
   a. few **b.** many **c.** little **d.** much
7. **There are .... apples in the basket, not enough for all of us.** **SB**
   a. many **b.** much **c.** any **d.** few
8. **A: How .... milk is in the fridge?** **SB**
   a. many **b.** much **c.** some **d.** little
9. **There is .... milk in the fridge. Let's get some.** **SB**
   a. few **b.** little **c.** many **d.** much
10. **She has .... good ideas.** **SB**
    a. much **b.** a little **c.** many **d.** any
11. **There isn't .... money left.** **SB**
    a. many **b.** much **c.** a few **d.** several
12. **......... can be both countable and uncountable.** **SB**
    a. Money **b.** Chocolate **c.** Furniture **d.** Weather
13. **How .... sugar do you want in your tea?** **SB**
    a. many **b.** much **c.** a few **d.** some
14. **How .... bags do you have?** **SB**
    a. many **b.** much **c.** little **d.** few
15. **I don't have .... friends, only a few.** جهينة ٢٠٢٤
    a. much **b.** any **c.** many **d.** a little
16. **I don't have .... money with me. I can't buy this jacket.** سوهاج طما ٢٠٢٤ بنها ٢٠٢٤ شرق طنطا ٢٠٢٤
    a. a few **b.** many **c.** little **d.** much
17. **There is .... light in the hall; I can't read clearly.** سوهاج اخميم ٢٠٢٤
    a. much **b.** a few **c.** a lot **d.** a little
18. **Would you like to get .... help with this project?** جنوب الجيزة ٢٠٢٤
    a. some **b.** many **c.** a lot **d.** lots
19. **My teacher gave me some useful pieces of .... to follow.** اسيوط منازل ٢٠٢٤
    a. advices **b.** advise **c.** advice **d.** advises
20. **There are too ... people in the street because of the wedding. I can't walk in it.** أسيوط أبنوب ٢٠٢٤
    a. little **b.** much **c.** few **d.** many
21. **How .... kilos of meat do you want?** دشنا ٢٠٢٤
    a. often **b.** much **c.** many **d.** long
22. **My friend's favourite colour is green, but I prefer ....** القوصية ٢٠٢٤
    a. an orange **b.** orange **c.** oranges **d.** the oranges
23. **Money .... the root of evil.** القوص ٢٠٢٤
    a. to have **b.** are **c.** be **d.** is

24. Last month, I applied for .... of a manager. القوص ٢٠٢٤

a. works **b.** job **c.** a work **d.** a job

25. My mother gave me .... food. I was still hungry but I didn't tell her. قنا ٢٠٢٤

a. a few **b.** few **c.** a little **d.** little

26. After buying his new flat, he had .... money left , so he couldn't decorate it. الأقصر إسنا ٢٠٢٤

a. many **b.** few **c.** much **d.** little

27. How .... salt does it say to put in the sauce? العمرانية مقارن ٢٠٢٤

a. many **b.** often **c.** much **d.** deep

28. There are too .... books in the bag. I can't carry it easily. دير مواس ٢٠٢٤

a. many **b.** a lot of **c.** few **d.** much

29. I'd like just .... sugar in my tea. المحلة الكبرى ٢٠٢٣

a. much **b.** a few **c.** many **d.** a little

30. How .... rice do you want? Just two kilos. الشرقية ٢٠٢٣

a. many **b.** much **c.** few **d.** a few

31. He hasn't got .... luggage. السويس ٢٠٢٣

a. many **b.** a lot **c.** some **d.** much

32. .... pupils came to the class today because it was raining heavily. دمنهور ٢٠٢٣

a. Many **b.** Much **c.** Little **d.** Few

33. There is a plenty of meat, but there isn't .... bread. وسط طنطا ٢٠٢٣

a. many **b.** much **c.** a lot **d.** some

34. Would you like .... soup before the meal? ببا ٢٠٢٣

a. some **b.** a **c.** any **d.** few

35. I'd like .... new information about this project. الفيوم ٢٠٢٣

a. an **b.** some **c.** a **d.** any

36. I don't have .... homework tonight. المنيا ٢٠٢٣

a. an **b.** some **c.** a **d.** any

37. I don't know what to do, so I am going to ask my uncle for .... advice. شرق طنطا ٢٠٢٣

a. an **b.** some **c.** a **d.** a piece

38. He had .... money, so he couldn't buy the shirt he wanted. بسيون ٢٠٢٣

a. few **b.** a few **c.** little **d.** a little

39. Would you like .... more sugar? SM

a. many **b.** a few **c.** some **d.** a

40. There are .... books available; we have 4 and we need at least 20. SM

a. a few **b.** few **c.** many **d.** less

41. All the money I have .... to buy the books I need to buy. What can I do? SM

a. is enough **b.** is sufficient **c.** is insufficient **d.** are enough

42. I am very busy; I have .... to do today. SM

a. little **b.** many **c.** a lot of **d.** a lot

43. How .... pens do you want? السنبلاوين ٢٠٢٣

a. long **b.** often **c.** many **d.** much

44. There are .... students in this school.

a. many **b.** much **c.** a lot **d.** lots

45. The teacher gave us .... homework for the next lesson.

a. a **b.** many **c.** some **d.** any

46. There .... several boys playing in the middle of the road.

a. was **b.** were **c.** had **d.** have

47. Dalia didn't have .... friends when she started at her new school.

a. the **b.** some **c.** a **d.** any

48. Is there .... water in the glass?
a. any b. some c. a d. an

49. There are .... people here this morning.
a. lot of b. lots of c. much d. a lot

50. Is there .... tea in the cup?
a. much b. many c. a lot d. few

51. There .... only a little coffee in the cup.
a. was b. were c. had d. have

52. There's .... of coffee in the coffee machine.
a. many b. much c. lot d. lots

53. We've got .... interesting people here.
a. any b. some c. much d. an

54. There are .... cups of tea on the table.
a. any b. an c. a d. some

55. In this garden, there are .... very nice trees.
a. much b. ones c. some d. any

56. Are there any good papers to read? Yes, there are ....
a. any b. some c. much d. an

57. Mr Smith is having a cup of tea and .... bread.
a. any b. some c. a d. an

58. Our school doesn't have .... pupils.
a. much b. very c. many d. a lot

59. He has .... pens, he can give me one of them.
a. much b. a little c. a few d. few

60. There .... many wooden houses last century.
a. was b. were c. have been d. had

61. Mai along with her friends .... playing football.
a. were b. are c. am d. is

Exercise 04 Language Level 2

62. He's a very creative person and full of new .... **SB R-2**
a. idea b. an idea c. ideas d. some idea

63. I don't know what to do, so I am going to ask my teacher for .... advice. طهطا ٢٠٢٤
a. an b. some c. no article d. both b & c

64. Dr Yacoub's desire to help others .... clear in the charitable work he does. الأقصر اسنا ٢٠٢٤
a. has b. have c. is d. are

65. Physics .... the study of natural laws. العمرانية ٢٠٢٤
a. has b. are c. were d. is

66. .... people over there.
a. There' s a lot of b. There' s lots of c. There are a lot of d. There are much

67. There is .... money in the bank, I'm afraid.
a. any b. much c. a lot d. no

68. I have .... money, however I can buy my needs.
a. little b. a little c. few d. many

69. There .... children in the park, weren't there?
a. were a lot of b. were a lot c. was a lot d. was lots of

£M

70. I need a .... of oil and a .... of sugar, please.
a. litre / kilo b. bottle / a few c. kilo / litre d. litre / amount

71. There is .... in my soup.
a. hairs b. some hair c. a hair d. any hair

72. He asked the electrician to fit ....
a. light b. much light c. some light d. a light

73. I want to print some documents, but the printer is out of ....
a. papers b. paper c. a paper c. many papers

74. The passengers' luggage .... searched carefully at the airport customs.
a. was b. has c. were d. had

Exercise 04 Language Level 3

£M

75. I have hardly .... bread left; I need to buy ....
a. no / some b. any / some c. any / a few d. no / many

£M

76. Didn't you buy .... rice? No, I bought ....
a. any / any b. no / some c. any / some d. no / a few

شرق طنطا ٢٠٢٤

77. .... people watched the final match at the stadium.
a. Several b. Mineral c. Manual d. Moreover

الخانكة ٢٠٢٤ غرب شبرا الخيمة ٢٠٢٤

78. Two weeks .... long enough for a good holiday.
a. are b. is c. were d. have

79. The teachers, as well as the headmaster, ... to hold a meeting.
a. is wanting b. want c. wants d. are wanting

80. The dead man's .... include no will.
a. paper b. a paper c. papers d. papyrus

81. Which sentence is correct?
a. The peoples are kind. b. People are kind. c. People is kind. d. The people kind.

82. She lent me .... twenty pound note last week.
a. any b. some c. a d. many

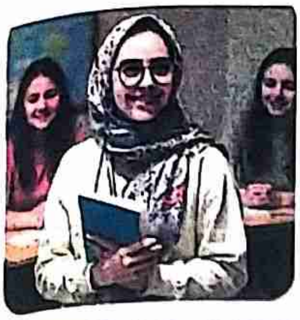
83. No one knows that the team .... very different lives in private.
a. lead b. leads c. has led d. is leading

SB R-2

84. Which of the following sentences is structurally correct..........
a. I need to buy a few furniture for my new apartment.
b. I need to buy a few furnitures for my new apartment.
c. I need to buy pieces of furniture for my new apartment.
d. I need to buy three furniture for my new apartment.

2) Rewrite the sentences using the word(s) in brackets:

1. He has little knowledge of history. (facts)
2. They found a hair in the soup. (some hair)
3. He borrowed a book from the library. (books)
4. She drank a glass of water. (some)
5. He gave me an apple. (fruit)
6. There is a chair in the room. (furniture)
7. She bought a cake from the bakery. (cakes)
8. I need a piece of advice. (some)



Unit 5 Using Technology at Schools

Lessons
3 Modern Technology and Learning Foreign Languages
4 Ramy's Journey with English

Key Vocabulary

anxious (adj)	قلق / متوتر	adjust (v)	يضبط / يتكيف	native speakers (n)	متحدثون أصليون
complicated (adj)	معقد	appreciate (v)	يقدر / يشكر	effective (adj)	فعال
confident (adj)	واثق	efforts (n)	جهود	effectively (adv)	بشكل فعال
enriching (adj)	مثري / مفيد	locals (n)	السكان المحليون	digital (adj)	رقمي
struggle (v)	يكافح	impatient (adj)	غير صبور	interactive (adj)	تفاعلي
accidentally (adv)	عن طريق الخطأ	phrase (n)	عبارة	translation (n)	ترجمة
embarrassed (adj)	محرج	direction (n)	اتجاه / تعليمات	podcast (n)	بودكاست / برنامج صوتي
benefit (n)	فائدة	target (n)	هدف	subtitle (adj)	ترجمة نصية / عنوان فرعي
download (n) (v)	تحميل / يحمل	application (n)	تطبيق	option (n)	خيار

Main Vocabulary

foreign (n)	أجنبي	vocabulary (n)	مفردات	solve (v)	يحل
modern (adj)	حديث / معاصر	pronunciation (n)	نطق	officer (n)	ضابط
textbooks (n)	كتب دراسية	difficulty (n)	صعوبة	casual (adj)	عفوي
opportunity (n)	فرصة	platforms (n)	منصات	casually (adv)	بشكل عفوي / غير رسمي
communication (n)	تواصل / اتصال	exchange (v)	يتبادل	impatient (adj)	غير صبور
adventure (n)	مغامرة	real (adj)	حقيقي	useful (adj)	مفيد
software (n)	برنامج حاسوبي	style (n)	أسلوب	audio (n) (adj)	صوت / سمعي
simple (adj)	بسيط	surprise (n)	مفاجأة	receive (v)	يستلم
meaningful (adj)	ذو معنى / مفيد	knowledge (n)	معرفة	abilitiy (n)	قدرة / مهارة
feeling (n)	شعور	interest (n)	اهتمام	traveling (n)	السفر
formal (adj)	رسمي	purpose (n)	غرض / هدف	nervous (adj)	متوتر
informal (adj)	غير رسمي	details (n)	تفاصيل	contraction (n)	اختصار
friendly (adj)	ودود	identify (v)	يحدد / يتعرف على	smile (n)	ابتسامة
state (n)	حالة / وضع	passenger (n)	راكب	application (n) / app	تطبيق
culture (n)	ثقافة	experience (v)(n)	خبرة / تجربة / يجرب	basic (adj)	أساسي
greeting (n)	تحية	closing (n)	اختتام / نهاية	greet (v)	يحيي / يسلم
passport (n)	جواز سفر	worried (adj)	قلق	progress (n)	تقدم
afraid (adj)	خائف	joy (n)	فرح / سعادة		

Collocations

travel abroad	يسافر إلى الخارج	grow impatient	أصبح غير صبور
make progress	يحرز تقدمًا	show his passport	يُظهر جواز سفره
study a language	يدرس لغة	practice phrases	يتدرب على عبارات
speak fluently	يتحدث بطلاقة	feel more confident	يشعر بثقة أكبر
become complicated	يصبح معقدًا	feel worried	يشعر بالقلق
make full use of	يستفيد استفادة كاملة من	build confidence	يبني الثقة بالنفس
show interest	يُظهر اهتمامًا	give support	يقدم الدعم

Expressions & Prepositions

in interactive ways	بطرق تفاعلية	rely on	يعتمد على
artificial intelligence	الذكاء الاصطناعي	deal with	يتعامل مع
target language	اللغة المستهدفة	live video calls	مكالمات فيديو مباشرة
struggle to understand	يكافح ليفهم	write down	يدوّن / يكتب
ask for directions	يسأل عن الاتجاهات	hope for	يأمل في
provide opportunities	يوفر فرص	turn .... into	يتحول ... إلى
create opportunities	يخلق فرص	thanks to	بفضل

Definitions

anxious	قلق / متوتر	▸ feeling worried, nervous, or afraid about something that might happen
complicated	معقد / صعب	▸ not simple; difficult to understand or deal with because it has many parts
confident	واثق	▸ feeling sure of yourself and your abilities
enriching	مثري	▸ making you feel improved in knowledge, experience, or life quality

Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym	Antonym
anxious	قلق / متوتر	worried / nervous / uneasy	calm / relaxed / confident
complicated	معقد	complex / difficult / hard	simple / easy / clear
confident	واثق	sure / certain / positive	doubtful / shy / insecure
enriching	مثري / مفيد	valuable / rewarding / useful	useless / empty / meaningless
fluent	طليق / يجيد الكلام	smooth / natural / clear	hesitant / broken / weak
confidence	ثقة	trust / belief / certainty	doubt / fear / hesitation
support	دعم / مساندة	help / aid / assistance	oppose / neglect / reject
interest	اهتمام	curiosity / concern / attention	indifference / boredom / neglect
progress	تقدم	improvement / growth / development	decline / failure / setback
worried	قلق	troubled / concerned / anxious	peaceful / happy / calm
knowledge	معرفة	learning / understanding	ignorance / forgetfulness
joy	سعادة / بهجة	happiness / delight / pleasure	sadness / sorrow / pain

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
rely	يعتمد	reliance	اعتماد	reliable	موثوق / معتمد
improve	يحسّن	improvement	تحسّن	improved	محسّن
adjust	يضبط / يكيف	adjustment	ضبط / تكيف	adjustable	قابل للتكيف
learn	يتعلم	learning	التعلّم	learned	متعلّم
create	يخلق / يُنشئ	creation	خلق / إنشاء	creative	مُبدع
exchange	يبادل	exchange	تبادل	exchangeable	متبادَل

Language Notes

Notice the Difference

rich	غني / ثري	→	**enrich**	يثري / يُغني
anxious	قلق / متوتر	→	**anxiety**	قلق / توتر
embarrassed	مُحرَج / شاعر بالحرج	→	**embarrassing**	مُحرِج (يسبب الحرج)
appreciate	يقدر أو يثمّن شيئا (تقدير شخصي)	→	**evaluate**	يقيّم أو يحلّل شيئا (باستخدام معايير محددة)
effort	جُهد / محاولة	→	**afford**	يستطيع تحمّل (ماليا أو وقتيا)
appreciate	يُقدّر / يُثمن / يشكر	→	**abbreviate**	يختصر / يُقصّر (كلمة أو نص)
experience	خبرة / يَمرّ بتجربة	→	**experiment**	تجربة علمية / يُجري تجربة
passenger	راكب (شخص يستقل وسيلة مواصلات ولا يقودها)	→	**traveler**	مسافر (شخص ينتقل من مكان لآخر)
change	يغيّر / يبدّل	→	**exchange**	تغيير / فكة (نقود معدنية)
culture	ثقافة / حضارة / عادات	→	**lecture**	محاضرة
improve	يُحسّن / يتطور	→	**prove**	يُثبت / يبرهن
complete	يُكمل / يُنهي	→	**complicate**	يُعقّد / يجعل الشيء صعبًا
abroad	في الخارج (دول أخرى)	→	**aboard**	على متن وسيلة نقل (سفينة، طائرة، قطار)
realize	يدرك شيئا أو يفهمه فجأة	→	**recognize**	يتعرف على شخص أو شيء سبق رؤيته أو معرفته
daily	يومي (صفة)	→	**daily**	يوميًا (حال)
profession	مهنة	→	**professional**	محترف
formal	رسمي	→	**informal**	غير رسمي

inform, information & informative

inform (v)	يخبر/ يُعلم	▶ Please **inform** me of the time.
information (n)	معلومات	▶ This website gives good **information**.
informative (adj)	مفيد	▶ The lesson was very **informative**.

appreciate, appreciation, appreciative & appreciatively

appreciate	يقدر	▶ I really **appreciate** your help with my homework.
appreciation	تقدير	▶ She showed her **appreciation** for his help.
appreciative	مقدِّر/ مُعجب	▶ He is very **appreciative** of their support.
appreciatively	بتقدير / بإعجاب	▶ She nodded **appreciatively**.

"Ramy's Journey with English"

Reading

2) Read the following passage

Ramy had always dreamed of traveling abroad. One summer, he finally flew to Liverpool, England. At first, he was excited, but soon he felt anxious[1] .His biggest difficulty[2] was that he couldn't speak English. At the airport, he struggled [3]to understand the officer's questions. He only smiled and showed his passport, hoping for the best.

In the city, life became more complicated[4]. When he tried to buy a bus ticket, he couldn't explain himself. People behind him grew impatient[5] , and he felt embarrassed[6]. Later, at a restaurant, he wanted chickens but accidentally[7] received fish.

١) قلق
٢) صعوبة
٣) كافح / عانى
٤) معقد
٥) غير صبور
٦) محرج
٧) عن طريق الخطأ
٨) حمّل
٩) عبارات
١٠) واثق
١١) السكان المحليون
١٢) اتجاهات
١٣) قدّر / ثمّن
١٤) مثري

That night, Ramy decided something important: he must learn English. He downloaded[8] a language app, practiced basic phrases[9], and wrote down useful words. The next day, he tried saying, "One ticket, please," and "Chicken, please." To his surprise, people understood him! He felt more confident[10].

As days passed, Ramy spoke more words, greeted locals[11], and even asked for directions [12] People appreciated [13]his efforts and were kind to him. By the end of his trip, Ramy realized that learning English had turned his journey from a struggle into an enriching[14] adventure.

Listening

"Learning any foreign language has become easier thanks to modern technology.

In the past, students relied only on textbooks and classroom lessons. Today, digital tools provide many opportunities to practice and improve skills in fun and interactive ways. One of the most popular methods is using language learning applications.

These apps offer short daily lessons, vocabulary games, and much pronunciation practice. Many of them use artificial intelligence to adjust the level of difficulty according to the learner's progress. Some learners spend a little time every day, but they still make great progress. Another useful tool is online video and audio platforms. By watching movies, listening to songs, or following podcasts in the targetlanguage, learners can hear natural pronunciation and improve listening skills. Subtitles and playback options make it simple to understand and repeat. However, only a few students make full use of these options. Social media and messaging platforms also play a role.

Learners can connect with native speakers around the world, exchange messages, and even join live video calls. This creates real communication opportunities without traveling. abroad, but some students show little interest in using these chances effectively.

Exercise on Key Vocabulary

1. learning English had turned his journey from a struggle into an .... adventure. **SB**
a. adjusting b. reflecting c. enriching d. remaining

2. Before giving his first speech, he felt very .... because he was nervous.
a. anxious b. digital c. anxiety d. anxiously

3. You can .... the brightness of your phone screen if it is too dark.
a. enrich b. adjust c. download d. target

4. She practices English every day by talking to .... online.
a. native speakers b. subtitles c. directions d. podcasts

5. The teacher said the math problem was too .... for young children.
a. interactive b. confident c. anxious d. complicated

6. I really .... the time you spent helping me with my project.
a. appreciate b. struggle c. benefit d. translate

7. He spoke very .... during the interview and answered all the questions well.
a. effectively b. digitally c. confidently d. anxiously

8. The lost tourist asked the .... for the way to the train station.
a. foreigners b. efforts c. subtitles d. locals

9. He sent the wrong email .... because he was in a hurry.
a. accidentally b. effectively c. confidently d. digitally

10. The teacher taught us a new .... to use when greeting people.
a. benefit b. target c. option d. phrase

11. She felt very .... when everyone laughed at her mistake.
a. embarrassed b. digital c. enriching d. effective

12. The map gave clear .... to the museum, so we didn't get lost.
a. headings b. directions c. applications d. podcasts

13. He listens to a new .... every morning while going to school.
a. podcast b. local c. effort d. phrase

14. Eating healthy food has many .... for your body and mind.
a. disadvantages b. subtitles c. translations d. benefits

15. The football player trained hard to reach his main .... this year.
a. target b. efforts c. locals d. phrases

16. I turned on the .... while watching the English movie to understand it better.
a. fans b. options c. applications d. subtitles

17. You must choose the best .... in the exam to get full marks.
a. option b. benefit c. target d. direction

18. Please .... the latest update of this game before playing it.
a. make b. enrich c. download d. appreciate

19. Duolingo is a very popular language learning .... used by many students.
a. phrase b. application c. subtitle d. effort

20. He met a .... student in class who came from Spain.
a. foreign b. useful c. real d. embarrassing

21. It took him hours to .... the difficult math problem.
a. solve b. receive c. exchange d. identify

Exercise on Main Vocabulary

22. His .... was very clear, so everyone understood his English words.
a. pronunciation b. contraction c. journey d. purpose

23. The police .... checked everyone's passport at the airport.
a. office b. passenger c. officer d. detail

24. Students must buy new .... at the start of every school year.
a. textbooks b. adventures c. contractions d. feelings

25. He faced great .... when he moved to another country alone.
a. words b. difficulty c. platform d. surprise

26. This job is a great .... for young people to learn and grow.
a. purpose b. contraction c. detail d. opportunity

27. Many students learn English on digital .... like Duolingo.
a. platforms b. journeys c. adventures d. contractions

28. They plan to .... gifts during the holiday festival.
a. exchange b. solve c. identify d. deceive

29. The man became .... because the bus was very late.
a. patient b. impatient c. formal d. meaningful

30. Climbing the mountain was a big and exciting ....
a. picture b. style c. contraction d. adventure

31. This is a .... story; it really happened last year.
a. real b. foreign c. informal d. casual

32. Microsoft Word is a type of computer ....
a. software b. ticket c. purpose d. feeling

33. Their .... to save the environment made a big difference.
a. comfort b. contractions c. effort d. style

34. This exercise is very ...., so even young children can do it.
a. difficult b. formal c. digital d. simple

35. When she saw her best friend at the airport, it was a big ....
a. surprise b. journey c. vocabulary d. software

36. Did you .... the package I sent you yesterday?
a. remove b. identify c. receive d. solve

37. Reading books every day increases your ....
a. knowledge b. platform c. detail d. ticket

38. He gave a very .... answer that helped everyone understand the lesson.
a. meaning b. impatient c. meaningful d. casual

39. Traveling to different countries gives you a lot of ....
a. expert b. contraction c. officer d. experience

40. I had a strange .... that something bad was going to happen.
a. effort b. style c. feeling d. purpose

41. She showed great .... in learning how to play the piano.
a. interest b. surprise c. journey d. vocabulary

42. .... is one of the most enjoyable things for many people.
a. Cheating b. Identifying c. Exchanging d. Traveling

43. The invitation was written in very .... language.
a. slow b. formal c. sample d. digital

44. What is the main .... of this project?
a. journey b. style c. knowledge d. purpose

45. He greeted his friend ...., without shaking hands or being serious.
a. casually b. formally c. meaningfully d. digitally

46. At home, people usually speak in a/an .... way with family.
a. formal b. informal c. foreign d. digital

47. The boy .... impatient while waiting in the long line.
a. made b. grew c. gave d. went

48. She .... progress in English after daily practice.
a. made b. grew c. felt d. gave

49. At the airport, the officer asked him to .... his passport.
a. build b. do c. show d. make

50. Many students want to .... a language to communicate better.
a. show b. grow c. build d. study

51. You need to .... phrases to talk with native speakers.
a. practice b. make c. build d. grow

52. Can you .... the man who stole the bag?
a. identify b. receive c. solve d. adjust

53. This is a very .... city with tall buildings and new technology everywhere.
a. patient b. informal c. modern d. meaningful

54. The teacher turned the story .... a fun activity for the students.
a. of b. for c. into d. to

Choose the (Two) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given.

55. The child felt very anxious before the exam. The antonym of "anxious" is .... Sb R2
a. calm b. relaxed c. worried d. confidence e. peaceful

56. The story was so enriching that students learned many new lessons. The synonym of the underlined word enriching is ....
a. useless b. valuable c. meaningful d. empty e. boring

57. His hard work helped him make real progress in his studies. The synonym of the underlined word "progress" is ....
a. decline b. growth c. advance d. setback e. loss

58. The instructions are so complicated that most students cannot follow them. The antonym of the underlined word "complicated" is ....
a. enriching b. clear c. simple d. generic e. fluent

59. She feels very confident when she speaks in public. The antonym of "confident" is ....
a. sure b. uncertain c. positive d. doubtful e. trustful

60. The teacher tried to support the weak students. The antonym of "support" is ....
a. help b. aid c. assist d. neglect e. discourage

61. The little boy was very worried about the storm. The antonym of "worried" is ....
a. troubled b. anxious c. calm d. quiet e. nervous

62. Books can give us a lot of knowledge about the world. The synonym of "knowledge" is
a. understanding b. information c. forgetfulness d. loss e. silence

63. The lecture was very enriching for the students. The antonym of "enriching" is ....
a. useful b. rewarding c. meaningless d. valuable e. helpless

64. She quickly became fluent in Spanish after a year abroad. The antonym of the underlined word "fluent" is ....
a. weak b. broken c. fast d. perfect e. slowly

65. The manager showed complete interest in the project. The synonym of "interest" is .... .
a. curiosity b. indifference c. concern d. protection e. neglect

١) الأفعال الآتية يأتي بعد صيغ المستقبل اذا وجد فاعل أو يأتى بعدها to + inf. في حالة عدم وجود فاعل:

expect	يتوقع	plan	يخطط	arrange	يرتب
hope	يأمل	decide	يقرر	prepare	يستعد
promise	يعد	intend	ينوي		

★ Toka **hopes she will be** an engineer. ★ Toka **hopes to be** an engineer.

★ Jana has **arranged** that **she is visiting** Luxor.

★ Jana has **arranged to visit** Luxor.

خاص
بالطلاب المتفوقين

1. What do you plan .... when you go to Sharm El-Sheikh?
   a. to do b. to doing c. will do d. do
2. My father promised .... me a new mobile when I get high marks.
   a. buying b. to buy
   c. would buy d. will buy
3. The school arranged .... a new charity this year.
   a. supported b. supporter c. to support d. supporting
4. I hope .... the biology exam; I'm so worried.
   a. will pass b. pass c. to pass d. passing

٢) لاحظ الفرق ما بين الروابط التالية:

linking words

because = as = since	لأن (بعدهم جملة سبب)	▸ I didn't come **because** I was ill.
because of = due to	بسبب (بعدهم اسم أو ing)	▸ I didn't come **because of** being ill (my illness).
so = consequently	لذا (بعدهم جملة نتيجة)	▸ I was ill, **consequently** I didn't come.
although = though	بالرغم من (بعدهم جملة)	▸ **Although** I was ill, I went to school.
despite = in spite of	بالرغم من (بعدهم اسم أو ing)	▸ **Despite** being ill, I went to school.
but - whilst - however	لكن (بعدهم جملة)	▸ He likes football **but** I like tennis.

5. The match was cancelled .... heavy rain.
   a. because b. owing to c. nevertheless d. in spite
6. He isn't happy .... being rich.
   a. because b. because of c. although d. in spite of
7. .... he is 70, he is energetic.
   a. Because b. Despite c. Although d. In spite
8. The room was very smoky .... we could hardly breathe.
   a. so b. however c. but d. as well
9. She visited many different countries .... she enjoyed travelling.
   a. but b. because c. although d. so
10. Mohamed studies hard, ... he isn't getting good grades.
    a. but b. because c. despite d. when
11. He found it difficult to concentrate .... his worry about his grades.
    a. because b. as c. due to d. since

البريد الإلكترونى الغير رسمي

Informal Email

informal email		إيميل ودّي يُرسل لأشخاص غير رسميين (صديق/قريب) بأسلوب بسيط ومباشر
audience		المُرسل إليه يكون شخصًا تعرفه: أصدقاء، أقارب، زملاء مقرّبون
purpose	chatting, inviting a friend, sharing news	الدردشة، مشاركة أخبار، دعوة، تهنئة، سؤال سريع، ترتيب موعد
tone	a relaxed, friendly tone	نبرة ودّية، بسيطة، طبيعية؛ جمل قصيرة، عدم التكلّف
subject (tips)	Weekend plans? / Guess what! / Quick catch-up	قصير وجذّاب
subject (avoid)		تجنّب الصيغ الرسمية جدًا مثل... Regarding أو العناوين الطويلة
greeting (examples)	Hi Sara, / Hello John, / Hey Ali, / Hi [First Name],	
opening line	How are you? / Hope you're doing well! / I just wanted to...	
language (contractions)	I'm, I'll, can't, don't, it's	يُستحسن استخدام الاختصارات
language (vocabulary)		كلمات يومية وبسيطة؛ تجنّب المصطلحات الرسمية أو التقنية المعقّدة لا تستخدم Dear Sir/Madam, أو لغة رسمية جدًا، ولا تُطِل بلا داعٍ
emojis		يمكن استخدامها باعتدال للتعبير الودّي
structure (overview)		تحية → افتتاحية قصيرة → الغرض والتفاصيل → جملة ختام → توقيع
paragraphing		فقرة قصيرة لكل فكرة؛ سطور مختصرة لتسهيل القراءة
sharing news (phrases)	I've got great news... / Guess what happened... / Just wanted to tell you...	
inviting (phrases)	Do you want to...? / Would you like to join us...? / Let's meet...	
asking a favor	Could you help me with...? / Can you send me...?	
arranging time	Are you free on...? / How about Saturday at 5?	
softeners (ودية)	maybe, a bit, just, I think, I'm not sure but...	لتلطيف الطلب
closing lines	Talk to you soon! / Can't wait to hear from you. / Thanks a lot!	
sign-offs	Best wishes, / See you soon, / Take care, / Love,	

Exercise On Writing

1. In an informal email, you usually start with a friendly ....
   a. greeting b. closing c. subject d. footer
2. Writing "I'm inviting you to my party" shows the .... of the email.
   a. effect b. language c. purpose d. closing
3. Using contractions like "I'll or can't" is part of the email's ....
   a. language b. greeting c. closing d. purpose
4. Hi Sara, / Hello John are examples of a ....
   a. grabbing b. closing c. purpose d. greeting
5. Sharing news or chatting with a friend is a typical ....
   a. purpose b. greeting c. language d. style

6. "Best wishes," / "See you soon," / "Love," are examples of email ....
   a. heading b. greetings c. closings d. contractions
7. An informal email is mostly meant for ....
   a. chatting with friends b. sending official reports
   c. writing school essays d. submitting applications
8. In an informal email, you usually write in a ..... tone to make the reader feel comfortable.
   a. strict b. formal c. friendly d. serious
9. "I can't wait to see you!" is an example of using .... in an informal email.
   a. contractions b. greetings c. purpose d. style
10. The main reason for writing an informal email could be .... with a friend.
   a. chatting b. reporting c. applying d. instructing
11. Ending an informal email with "See you soon," is part of the email's ....
   a. start b. greeting c. purpose d. closing
12. Saying "Hello John," at the start of your email is part of the email ....
   a. greeting b. closing c. purpose d. style
13. Using simple words and sentences makes an informal email more ....
   a. academic b. formal c. casual d. official

Exercise 04 Translation

1. **Learning foreign languages and computer skills is a necessity for every learner at the present time to obtain a suitable job.**

أ- يعد تعليم اللغات الأجنبية ومهارات الكمبيوتر ضرورة لكل متعلم في الوقت الحالي للحصول على وظيفة مناسبة.
ب- يعد تعلم اللغات الأجنبية ومهارات الكمبيوتر ضرورة لكل متعلم في الوقت الحالي للحصول على وظيفة مناسبة.
ج- يعد تعلم اللغات الغربية ومهارات الكمبيوتر ضرورة لكل متعلم في الوقت الحالي للحصول على وظيفة مناسبة.
د- يعد تعلم اللغات الأجنبية ومهارات الكمبيوتر ضرورة لكل متعلم في الوقت الحالي للحصول على مهمة مناسبة.

2. **We use the best methods to raise our young children because they are our hope for the near future and the basis for the progress of our beloved country.**

أ- نستخدم أفضل الطرق لرفع أطفالنا الصغار لأنهم أملنا في المستقبل القريب وأساس لتقدم بلدنا الحبيب.
ب- نستخدم أفضل الطرق لتربية أطفالنا الصغار لأنهم أملنا في المستقبل المجاور وأساس لتقدم بلدنا الحبيب.
ج- نستخدم أفضل الطرق لتربية أطفالنا الصغار لأنهم أملنا في المستقبل القريب وأساس لتقدم بلدنا الحبيب.
د- استخدمنا أفضل الطرق لتربية أطفالنا الصغار لأنهم أملنا في المستقبل القريب وأساس لتقدم بلدنا الحبيب.

أ- إن تحسين الإنتاج وزيادة الصادرات ضروريان لتحقيق الاستقرار الاقتصادي.

a. Improving production and increasing imports are necessary to achieve economic stability.
b. Improving production and increasing exports are necessity to achieve economic stability.
c. Improving production and increasing exports are necessary to achieve economically stability.
d. Improving production and increasing exports are necessary to achieve economic stability.

٣. تلعب الرياضة دوراً حيوياً فى حياتنا . فمن خلالها نكتسب الكثير من الفضائل مثل التعاون.

a. Sport plays a vital rule in our life. Through them we acquire many virtues such as cooperation.
b. Sports play a vital role in our life. Through them we require many virtues such as cooperation.
c. Sports plays a vital role in our life. Through them we acquire many virtues such as cooperation.
d. Sports play a vital role in our life. Through them we acquire many virtues such as cooperation.

General Exercises on Unit 5

A Vocabulary and Structure

Choose the (2) correct answers out of the (5) options given:

1. She always shows great interest in science. The synonym of "interest" is ....
a. curiosity b. eagerness c. neglect d. indifference e. sadness

2. He speaks English in a very fluent way. The synonym of "fluent" is ....
a. hesitant b. broken c. smooth d. clear e. difficult

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. Is it difficult to .... anything from the internet?
a. delete b. download c. upload d. post

4. A good teacher tries to keep students.......... to learn.
a. motivated b. fluent c. anxious d. independence

5. Cars can already connect .... the internet using smart phones.
a. with b. to c. of d. in

6. She speaks French with such..........that you can hardly notice she is not a native.
a. perspective b. confident c. fluency d. tolerance

7. We do not need to hurry. We have .... time before the film starts.
a. much b. many c. little d. few

8. Up until recent years, blacks in the Southern USA suffered .... injustice.
a. several b. plenty c. a lot of d. a great many

9. Would you like to get .... help with this project?
a. some b. many c. a lot d. lots

10. Hurry! We only have .... time.
a. little b. a little c. a few d. few

11. He has .... pens, he can give me one of them.
a. much b. a few c. a little d. few

12. There are too .... people in the street because of the wedding. I can't walk in it.
a. little b. much c. few d. many

13. You use contractions in informal emails to make the tone more ....
a. official b. formal c. serious d. casual

14. Informal emails are usually written in a .... style.
a. friendly b. formal c. official d. academic

B Reading Comprehension

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

There are deserts all over the world. They can be found in Africa, China, South America, and North America. In some places, deserts are growing. This is a serious problem because deserts destroy farmland and ruin land where animals live. When people cannot grow food or find animals to eat, they have to leave their homes. Sometimes, nature can cause deserts to spread. Wind can move sand away from deserts and onto useful land. When there is no rain for a long time, plants die and deserts grow. However, humans can also cause deserts to grow. This is called desertification, and it happens in many ways. One way is when people cause too much air pollution, which can make an area hotter. Hotter weather can reduce the amount of rain as well. Too many people in one area can also damage the land. In addition, having many animals can harm the land. When large animals like cows walk on soil too much, they turn it into dust. The wind easily blows this dust away. Trees help hold water in the ground. When people cut down too many trees, less water stays in the ground, and the soil is ruined. All of these things can speed up desertification. To stop deserts from growing, people must think of ways to treat the land better.

15. What happens if there is no rain for a long time?

a. Flood b. Earthquake c. Drought d. Hurricane

16. Which is NOT a cause of desert growth?

a. No wind b. Using land too much c. No rain d. Many animals

17. Which of the following is a true statement?

a. Cutting down trees causes less rain. b. Large animals like cows destroy the soil.
c. Hotter weather increases the amount of rain
d. When people can't grow food they raise animals

18. How do humans cause desert growth?

a. By causing pollution b. By eating only vegetables
c. By planting trees d. By moving sand

19. Which of the following can best express the main idea of this passage?

a. Where the world's deserts are b. How people live in deserts
c. Why some deserts are growing d. How cows can stop deserts from growi

20. According to the passage, how can humans stop desert growth?

a. By using bicycles less b. By raising more cows
c. By cutting down trees d. By having fewer children

21. Causing too much pollution can lead to ....

a. climate change b. over population c. turning soil into dust d. much rain

C Writing

Translate the following sentences:

22. Food resources must be distributed among the peoples of the world fairly. Then, there won't be a hungry nation in developing countries, in particular. £M

أ- يجب توزيع المنتجات الغذائية بين شعوب العالم بحكمة بعد ذلك، لن تكون هناك دولة جائعة في العالم الثالث، على وجه الخصوص.
ب- يجب توزيع المواد الغذائية بين قارات العالم بالعدل بعد ذلك، لن تكون هناك دولة جائعة في البلدان النامية، على وجه الخصوص.
ج- يجب توزيع الموارد الغذائية بين شعوب العالم بالعدل بعد ذلك، لن تكون هناك أمة جائعة في البلدان النامية، على وجه الخصوص.
د- يجب توزيع الموارد الغذائية بين شعوب العالم بحكمة بعد ذلك، لن تكون هناك أمة فقيرة في البلدان النامية، على وجه العموم

٢٣. إن تحقيق التقدم لبلدنا الحبيب سيظل مجرد حلم مستحيل إذا لم نتمكن من مواجهة الزيادة السكانية.

a. Achieving progress for our beloved country will remain just an impossible dream if we are not able to face over pollution.
b. Achieving progress for our beloved country will remain just an impossible dream if we are not able to face overpopulation.
c. Achieving progress for our beloved country will remain just an impossible dream if we are able to face over population.
d. Achieving progress for our beloved country will remain just a possible dream if we are not able to face over population.

Rewrite the sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

24. He gave me a piece of information. (some)
25. There is a desk in the office. (furniture)

Answer the following questions:

26. Why does Santiago cry after his victory?
27. What does the marlin symbolize in this chapter?
28. Why does Santiago talk to himself during the fight?

Write a (120 –150) word informal email to your friend:

(inviting them to a weekend trip)

1) Complete the following dialogue:

أزهر شرقية علمي ٢٠٢٢

Esraa and Sara are talking about climate change.

Sara: ❶ ....?
Esraa: I'm doing a project on climate change. ❷ ....?
Sara: Yes, you can help me.
Esraa: What do you think is the main cause of climate change?
Sara: ❸ ....
Esraa: Let's use the internet.
Sara: ❹ ....

2) Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A lot of people are against overweight in humans which is considered unhealthy. They are fighting a battle to reduce it. Studies are being done concerning appetite and how it is controlled by both emotional and biochemical factors. Some of these studies have given us the ability to understand how to deal with overweight problems. They showed that fat people have a high sense of taste and love more flavoured food than thin people. Moreover, some people react to stressful situations by eating. It has been found that mild exercise is a good way to lose weight. For example, using the stairs instead of the lift. Jogging is useful to lose weight, as well. Sports should be done daily for a healthy life.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Why are a lot of people against overweight in humans?
....
2. According to the text, how is appetite controlled?
....
3. How do some people react to stressful situations?
....

B. Choose the correct answer:

4. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to ....
a. health b. overweight c. a battle d. appetite
5. Jogging is a kind of ....
a. food b. flavour c. exercise d. stress

3) A. Translate into Arabic:

Success never comes by accident so you must do your utmost to achieve your goals and ambitions.

....
....

B. Translate into English:

يجب على الوالدين توجيه ورعاية أبنائهم ليواصلوا رحلة الحياة بأمان.

....
....

Unit 6

Job Hunting

Learning Outcomes

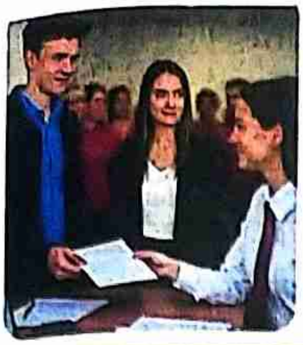
Reading
- Analyze texts to identify the main ideas about the modern job market, including digital platforms and networking
- Infer the meaning of specialized vocabulary (e.g., resume, polished, footprint, generic) from context clues within an article
- Identify the key sections and purpose of a resume or Curriculum Vitae (CV)

Listening
- Identify key ideas from a career coach's talk
- Recognize specific advice from a career coach's talk
- Extract details about skills, opportunities, and career advice from an audio track

Language
- Correctly use definite and indefinite articles ("a", "an", "the") and know when no article is needed
- Identify and correct grammatical mistakes related to article usage in sentences
- Use action verbs to describe job experience in a CV

Speaking
- Express opinions on various aspects of job hunting, such as the importance of grades versus experience
- Engage in role-play scenarios, such as a job search simulation or a mock interview, to practice professional communication
- Apply interview strategies like the STAR Method to answer behavioral questions effectively

Writing
- Compose a well-structured and professional CV, including personal information, education, and relevant skills
- Draft a short paragraph about job hunting or internships
- Summarize an article or talk about volunteering in a concise manner



Unit 6 Job Hunting

Lessons
1 The Modern Job Hunt
2 Job Interview

Key Vocabulary

hunt (v)	يصطاد / يبحث عن	association (n)	جمعية / رابطة	silos (n)	فرق/ أقسام منعزلة
handle (v)	يتعامل / يُدير	approach (n/v)	يقترب / منهج/ طريقة	impressive (adj)	مبهر / رائع
polish (v)	يصنقل / يحسن/ يلمع	candidate (n)	مرشح	independently (adv)	بشكل مستقل
polished (adj)	مصقول/ مُحسن	resume (n/v)	سيرة ذاتية/يستأنف	stakeholders (n)	الأطراف المعنية
attitude (n)	سلوك / توجه	ground (n/v)	أساس / نقطة بداية	check-ins (n)	إجتماعات سريعة
generic (adj)	عام - غير مُخصص	implementing (n)	تنفيذ / تطبيق	innovative (adj)	ابتكاري
mentor (n/v)	مُرشد/ يوجه	trend (n)	اتجاه / موضة	footprint (n)	بصمة / أثر
assessment (n)	تقييم / تقدير	description (n)	وصف	department (n)	قسم / إدارة
clear-headed (adj)	متزن التفكير / صافي الذهن	expand (v)	يتوسع / يتمدد	common ground	أرضية مشتركة / وجه نظر
		struggle (n/v)	صراع / يُكافح		

Main Vocabulary

transform (v)	يحوّل / يُغير	relevant (adj)	ذو صلة / مناسب	section (n)	قسم / جزء
decade (n)	عقد (١٠ سنوات)	personalized (adj)	شخصي / مُخصص	admiration (n)	إعجاب
method (n)	طريقة / أسلوب	involve (v)	يشمل / يتضمن	skillful (adj)	ماهر / بارع
modify (v)	يعدل	sample (n)	عينة / نموذج	organization (n)	منظمة / تنظيم
professional (adj)	مهني / احترافي	format (n)	تنسيق / شكل	basis (n)	أساس
maintain (v)	يحافظ على / يُبقي	process (n)	عملية / إجراء	strength (n)	قوة / نقطة قوة
employers (n)	أصحاب العمل	challenging (adj)	صعب / محفّز	point (n)	نقطة / هدف
employment (n)	توظيف / عمل	opportunity (n)	فرصة	engagement (n)	مشاركة / ارتباط
contact (n/v)	اتصال / يتواصل	strategy (n)	استراتيجية (خطة)	directions (n)	إرشادات / اتجاهات
postings (n)	منشورات	plain (adj)	بسيط / عادي	experienced (adj)	ذو خبرة
application (n)	طلب وظيفة / تطبيق	specific (adj)	محدد / معين	current (adj)	حالي / جاري
industry (n)	صناعة	document (n)	وثيقة / مستند	isolation (n)	عزلة / انعزال
relationship (n)	علاقة / ارتباط	purpose (n)	غرض / هدف	updates (n)	تحديثات / مستجدات
contract (n)	عقد	coordinated (adj)	منسق / منظم	platform (n)	منصة
multiple (adj)	متعدد / أكثر من واحد	refined (adj)	مهذب / محسَن	success (n)	نجاح
hunter (n)	صيّاد / باحث عن شيء	evolve (v)	يتطور	confidence (n)	ثقة
highlight (v)	يبرز / يسلط الضوء	evolution (n)	تطور	former colleague (n)	زميل سابق
position (n)	منصب / وظيفة	dozen (n)	اثنا عشر / دستة	leadership (n)	قيادة / زعامة
session (n)	جلسة	various (adj)	متنوع	launch (v)	يطلق / يدشن
presence (n)	حضور			essential (adj)	أساسي / ضروري

Collocations

attend conferences	يحضر مؤتمرات	personalize approach	يخصص نهج أو أسلوب
expand a contract	يمدد عقدًا	make an impression	يترك انطباعًا
maintain relationships	يحافظ على العلاقات	develop leadership skills	يُطور مَهارَاتِ الريادة
give tips	يعطى نصائح	skills-based assessments	اختبارات قائمة على المهارات
put / make a plan	يضع خطة	customize a resume	يخصص سيرة ذاتية
find employment	يجد وظيفة	screen candidates	يفرز المرشحين
handle stress	يتعامل مع الضغط	find job opportunities	يجد فرص عمل
fill positions	يشغل وظائف	stay clear-headed	يبقى متزن التفكير
highlight relevant experience	يبرز الخبرة ذات الصلة	make contact	يجري اتصالًا / يتواصل
give way to	يُفسح المجال لـ	modify applications	يعدل طلبات (التوظيف/التقديم)
training sessions	جلسات تدريبية	achieve a goal	يحقق هدف
keep up with trends	يواكب الاتجاهات	make or break your choice	دد نجاح أو فشل اختيارك

Expressions & Prepositions

bring together	يجمع	in the long run	على المدى البعيد
apply for a job	يتقدّم لوظيفة	job hunters / job seekers	باحثون عن عمل
apply to dozens of positions	يتقدّم للعديد من الوظائف	work on weakness	يحسن نقاط الضعف
focus on	يركز على	innovative solutions	حلول مبتكرة
specialize in	يتخصص في	long-term career	مسيرة مهنية طويلة الأمد
coordinate with	ينسق مع	a polished resume	سيرة ذاتية مصقولة / محسنة
over the past decade	على مدار العقد الماضي	customer engagement	تفاعل / مشاركة العملاء
keep up with	يواكب / يساير	under pressure	تحت الضغط
break into	يخترق / يدخل إلى	digital marketing	التسويق الرقمي
deal with	يتعامل مع	the bigger picture	الصورة / الرؤية الكاملة

Definitions

resume	سيرة ذاتية	▶ a document that lists your work experience, education, and skills, used when applying for jobs
polished	مصقول / محسّن	▶ made to look smooth, professional; refined; something that has been improved to look better
footprint	بصمة / أثر	▶ the mark or impact something leaves behind
association	جمعية / رابطة	▶ a group of people with a common purpose
generic	عام / غير مخصص	▶ general or plain; not special or specific
approach	أسلوب / منهج	▶ a way of dealing with something; a method or strategy
attitude	سلوك / توجه	▶ the way of thinking about something; how you react to people or situations
department	قسم	▶ a section of a company or organization that deals with a specific job
silos	أقسام أو فرق منعزلة	▶ teams or departments that work in isolation, not sharing information with others

impressive	مبهر / رائع	something that makes you feel admiration because it is very good or skillful
independently	بشكل مستقل	doing something on your own, without needing help or control from others
stakeholders	أصحاب المصلحة	people or groups who care about or are affected by a company or project
check-ins	اجتماعات سريعة	short meetings or updates to see how things are going
innovative	ابتكاري / إبداعي	using new and creative ideas to solve problems or make things better
implementing	تنفيذ / تطبيق	putting a plan, idea, or system into action
common ground	وجهة نظر مشتركة	shared ideas or interests that bring people together
expanded	موسّع	to make something larger or greater
clear-headed	هادئ الفكر / متزن	staying calm and thinking clearly
mentor	مُرشد / موجه	a person who guides and supports someone less experienced
trends	اتجاهات / ميول	current directions or changes in an industry

Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym	Antonym
impressive	مبهر / رائع	amazing, remarkable, wonderful	boring, weak, ordinary
coordinate	ينسق / ينظّم	arrange, organize, manage	confuse, disorder, mess
generic	عام / غير مميز	common, general, basic	special, unique, specific
keep up with	يواكب / يلاحق	follow, track, match	ignore, miss, fall behind
polish	يصقل / يحسّن	shine, clean, improve	dirty, damage, spoil
handle	يتعامل مع	manage, deal with, control	ignore, avoid, neglect
screen	يفحص/يدقق	check, test, filter	accept all, ignore, skip
independently	بشكل مستقل	alone, freely, separately	together, jointly, dependently
expand	يوسّع	grow, increase, extend	shrink, reduce, cut
clear-headed	صافي الذهن	calm, focused, logical	confused, upset, distracted
highlight	يبرز/ يوضح	show, stress, point out	hide, ignore, forget
long-term	طويل الأمد	lasting, continuing, future	short-term, temporary, brief
evolution	تطوّر	growth, change, progress	stop, decline, failure

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
apply	يتقدم	application	طلب / استمارة	applicable	قابل للتطبيق
qualify	يؤهل	qualification	مؤهل / تأهيل	qualified	مؤهل
employ	يُوظّف	employment	توظيف	employed employable	مُوظف قابل للتوظيف
succeed	ينجح	success	نجاح	successful	ناجح
profess	يُعلن / يمتهن	profession	مهنة	professional	مهني / محترف
compete	ينافس	competition	منافسة	competitive	تنافسي

Language Notes

Notice the Difference

transform	يغير / يحول	**transport**	ينقل
attitude	سلوك / موقف	**altitude**	ارتفاع
generic	عام / غير مخصص	**genetic**	جيني / وراثي
footprint	بصمة / أثر	**footstep**	خطوة
employer	صاحب عمل	**employee**	موظف
pavement	رصيف مشاه	**platform**	رصيف محطة / منصة
puplish	ينشر	**polish**	يلمّع / يصقل
applicant	متقدّم (لوظيفة)	**candidate**	مرشّح
personal	شخصي	**personnel**	موظفون / طاقم عمل
involve	يشمل / يشارك	**evolve**	يتطور
multiple	متعدّد / كثير	**multiply**	يضاعف / يضرب (في الرياضيات)
assessment	تقييم	**homework**	واجب منزلي
challenge	يتحدى / يواجه	**challenging**	صعب / يتطلب مجهود
interviewer	مقابلة	**interviewee**	الشخص الذي يجري المقابلة

succeed, success & successful

succeed $^{(v)}$	ينجح	▸ He worked hard to **succeed**.
success $^{(n)}$	نجاح	▸ Her project was a big **success**.
successful $^{(adj)}$	ناجح	▸ He is a **successful** businessman.

qualify, qualified & qualification

qualify $^{(v)}$	يؤهل / يحصل على مؤهل	▸ He worked hard to **qualify** as a doctor.
qualified $^{(adj)}$	مؤهل / حاصل على مؤهلات	▸ She is a **qualified** teacher.
qualification $^{(n)}$	مؤهل / شهادة / كفاءة	▸ He has the right **qualification** for this job.

innovate, innovator, innovation & innovative

innovate	يبتكر	▸ Companies must **innovate** to grow.
innovator	مبتكر	▸ Thomas Edison was a great **innovator**.
innovation	ابتكار	▸ This phone is a new **innovation**.
innovative	مبتكر / إبداعي	▸ She has an **innovative** idea.

impress, impressive, impressed & impression

impress	يُعجب / يترك أثر	▸ The show will **impress** you.
impressive	مثير للإعجاب	▸ The building is very **impressive**.
impressed	مندهش بإعجاب / معجب	▸ I was really **impressed** by her presentation.
impression	انطباع	▸ She made a good **impression**.

Reading

Before you start: ➲ Think and discuss in pairs:

1) Answer the following questions.

1. What's the most important thing when looking for a job?
2. Where do people usually find job opportunities?
3. What makes a good first impression in a job interview?

2) Read the following article about "Navigating Today's Employment Landscape"

The job market has transformed greatly over the past decade. Traditional methods(1). of finding employment—such as reading a newspaper or walking into offices with a resume(2). in hand—have largely given way to digital platforms and networking strategies(3).

١)	طرق / أساليب
٢)	السيرة الذاتية
٣)	استراتيجيات
٤)	مهني / احترافي
٥)	المتقدمون / المرشحون
٦)	علاقات / صلات
٧)	زملاء
٨)	طلبات التقديم
٩)	ذو صلة / مرتبط
١٠)	وصف
١١)	متعدد
١٢)	تقييمات / اختبارات
١٣)	متنوع / مختلف
١٤)	مؤهل

Today's job seekers must maintain a professional(4). online presence. This means having an updated LinkedIn profile, a polished resume, and sometimes even a personal website showing their skills. Employers often screen candidates(5). online before making contact, so your digital footprint can make or break your chances.

Many positions are filled through personal connections(6). rather than public job postings. Attending industry events, joining professional associations, and maintaining relationships with former colleagues(7). can open doors that traditional applications(8). cannot.

The days of sending the same generic resume to multiple employers are gone. Successful job hunters modify their applications to each specific role, highlighting(9). relevant experience and using keywords from the job description.(10). This personalized approach increases the chances of getting noticed.

Modern interviews often involve multiple(11). rounds, including phone screenings, and video interviews. Some companies even use skills-based assessments(12). or ask candidates to complete sample projects. Being prepared for various(13). interview formats is essential.

The job search process can be challenging. It's not uncommon for qualified(14). candidates to apply to dozens of positions before landing the right opportunity. Keeping a positive attitude and learning from each experience is important for long-term success.

Answer the following questions:

1. Why can maintaining relationships with former colleagues be helpful during a job search?
2. How do successful job hunters increase their chances of getting noticed by employers?
3. What are some different formats that modern interviews may include?
4. Why is it important for candidates to keep a positive attitude during the job search process?

Listening

"Extract one. What would you say is your greatest strength?

My greatest strength(1). is teamwork. In my last role, I led a project that brought together different departments(2). like marketing, IT, and sales. By listening to concerns(3). and finding common ground, we avoided working in silos, improved communication, and achieved an impressive(4). 25% increase in customer engagement.

١)	قوة
٢)	أقسام
٣)	مخاوف / اهتمامات
٤)	مبهر / رائع
٥)	تفاصيل
٦)	بشكل مستقل
٧)	متابعات
٨)	منتج
٩)	نسق / رتب
١٠)	تنفيذ
١١)	ابتكارية / إبداعية
١٢)	عقد
١٣)	صافِ الذهن / متزن
١٤)	مؤتمرات

That's great. And what is an area you'd like to improve?

Sometimes I spend too much time on details(5). I'm working on focusing on the bigger picture more quickly and trusting my team to work more independently(6). while I support them with regular check-ins(7).

Extract two. Tell me about a time you worked under pressure.

A main client nearly candled their contract 2 days before a product(8). launch. I organized an emergency meeting with all the ST holders made a detailed action plan and coordinated(9). directly with the client. By implementing(10). the plan step by step and finding innovative (11). solutions, we saved the contract(12). and even expanded it by 15%.

How did you handle the stress?

I broke the problem into small tasks, kept everyone informed with quick check-ins, and took short breaks to stay clear-headed(13).

Extract three. Where do you Do you see yourself in 5 years?

I want to develop leadership skills, specialize in digital marketing, and be a mentor to others. I'm currently studying digital marketing, leading training sessions, and attending conferences(14). to keep up with AI and new trends."

انتظروا!!!!!
كتاب مراجعة العمالقة للصف الأول الثانوي
العمالقة
سلسلة Giants
GIANTS العمالقة

Exercise 04 Key Vocabulary

1. **Employers often screen .... online before making contact.** SB
a. candidates b. seasons c. events d. presence

2. **Your digital .... can make or break your chances.** SB
a. character b. footstep c. footprint d. footwork

3. **Joining .... and keeping old colleagues can open doors.** SB
a. impression b. associations c. cooperation d. cultivation

4. **The company needs to consider all .... before making big changes.** Sb R-2
a. surveys b. attitudes c. resumes d. stakeholders

5. **She completed the assignment .... without anyone's help.** Sb R-2
a. hesitantly b. independently c. anxiously d. generically

6. **The sales .... at the store was very helpful.** Sb R-2
a. silos b. mission c. department d. footprint

7. **The manager is responsible for .... new policies across the company.** Sb R-2
a. observing b. implementing c. motivating d. resuming

8. **The team is using a/an .... method to solve environmental problems.** Sb R-2
a. innovative b. independently c. hesitant d. sample

9. **By listening to concerns and finding common ground, we avoided working in ....** SB
a. spoils b. sales c. soils d. silos

10. **The days of sending the same .... resume to multiple employers are gone.** SB
a. generic b. genetic c. gentle d. gained

11. **I broke the problem into small tasks, kept everyone informed with quick ....** SB
a. silos b. shapes c. check-ins d. circles

12. **I took short breaks to stay ....** SB
a. clear-cut b. gray-haired c. old- fashioed d. clear-headed

Keeping a positive .... and learning from each experience is important for long-term success. SB
a. process b. attitude c. marketing d. session

I want to develop leadership skills, specialize in digital marketing, and be a....to others. SB
a. mutual b. mental c. follower d. mentor

15. **Her job application was clear and.........., so she got the interview easily.**
a. generic b. puplished c. polished d. foolish

16. **The teacher gave the students a/an .... at the end of the week.**
a. attitude b. assessment c. assist d. knock

17. **Different cultures can build peace by finding common .... in respect and cooperation.**
a. ground b. conflict c. community d. resistance

18. **One clear .... in modern education is the use of online learning platforms.**
a. department b. trade c. trend d. ground

19. **The company invited all .... to a special meeting to agree on the new strategy.**
a. resumes b. stakeholders c. surveys d. apartments

20. **The company plans to .... into new markets next year.**
a. polish b. expand c. brake d. turn

21. After the break, the teacher will .... the lesson.
a. recycle b. misunderstand c. resume d. approach

22. He wrote a polished .... to apply for the job.
a. diary b. history c. grade d. resume

23. She spent weeks.......... for jobs that matched her skills and interests.
a. calling b. making c. killing d. hunting

Exercise 04 Main Vocabulary

24. The job market has .... greatly over the past decade. SB
a.reached b. transmitted c. transformed d. wrapped

25. Today's job seekers must .... a professional online presence. sb
a. approach b. maintain c. remain d. regain

26. Many.......... are filled through personal connections rather than public job postings. sb
a. footprints b. pieces c. beaches d. positions

27. Maintaining.......... with former colleagues can open doors that traditional applications cannot. sb
a. relationships b. ships c. places d. sessions

28. The volunteers worked in a .... way to finish quickly.
a. curved b. messy c. irrigular d. coordinated

29. He signed a one-year .... with the company.
a. contract b. contact c. connection d. system

30. You must fill out an .... form before the interview.
a. equality b. emergency c. application d. applicant

31. Many job .... can be found on online websites.
a. environments b. postings c. leaflets d. forests

32. The teacher gave .... instructions for the project.
a. pacific b. spoiled c. space d. specific

33. The company has a clear .... to expand into new markets.
a strategy b. tragedy c. story d. mention

34. A lot has changed in the past ...., especially in communication.
a. decision b. decide c. corner d. decade

35. The job may .... working late hours and traveling abroad.
a. evolve b. involve c. solve d. connect

36. She gave a very .... presentation during the meeting.
a. professional b. profession c. product d. sample

37. Climbing the mountain was the most .... task of the trip.
a. slipped b. changing c. challenge d. challenging

38. Many students .... to balance schoolwork and free time.
a. surrender b. fight c. struggle d. hug

39. Scientists are testing a new .... to clean polluted water.
a. method b. problem c. task d. view

40. The teacher explained the correct .... for writing essays.
a. fade b. format c. formal d. formula

41. Education can give people better.......... opportunities.
a. depression b. decline c. unemployment d. employment

42. Training is a great .... to learn new skills.
a. employer b. security c. opportunity d. unity

43. Please bring an official .... to prove your identity.
a. effect b. task c. document d. development

Exercise 04 Expressions, Prepositions, Derivatives & Language Notes

44. Employees .... conferences to learn new ideas.
a attend b. require c. take d. keep

45. Teachers .... their approach to help each student.
a. disable b. realize c. specialize d. personalize

46. He wanted to .... a good first impression in the interview.
a. do b. make c. have d. knock

47. Good leaders .... relationships with their teams.
a. maintain b. feed c. approach d. close

48. It is essential for applicants to .... a resume for each job.
a. volunteer b. recycle c. customize d. remind

49. Nurses must .... stress in their daily work.
a. increase b. handle c. settle d. refine

50. A.......... is a section of a company or organization that deals with a specific job.
a. session b. department c. university d. partner

51. .... means general or plain; not special or specific
a. Generic b. Private c. Specialized d. Improved

52. A/ An .... is a way of dealing with something; a method or strategy
a. effort b. duty c. approach d. street

53. The mark or impact something leaves behind means ....
a. fingerprint b. toe c. footprint d. footstep

54. A .... is a document that lists your work experience, education, and skills, used when applying for jobs
a. certificate b. resume c. department d. development

55. She knows how to deal .... problems.
a. on b. of c. in d. with

56. He decided to apply .... a job at the new company as it offers better opportunities.
a. with b. in c. of d. for

57. Job .... need a good online presence.
a. seeks b. seekers c. speakers d. savers

58. A/ An .... is a group of people with a common purpose.
a. associate b. association c. associated d. assesment

Choose the (Two) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given.

SB R.2

59. His speech was so impressive that the audience was left in complete admiration. The synonym of the underlined word "impressive" is ....
a. remarkable b. complicated c. anxious d. generic e. influential

60. The event manager had to coordinate all the volunteers to ensure everything ran smoothly. The synonym of the underlined word "coordinate" is ....

a. organize b. confuse c. manage d. disorder e. mess

61. She completed the project independently without any help. The antonym of "independently" is ....

a. together b. freely c. separately d. jointly e. alone

62. He remained clear-headed during the emergency meeting. The antonym of "clear-headed" is ....

a. calm b. confused c. focused d. upset e. logical

63. The student wore a generic uniform to school. The synonym of "generic" is ....

a. special b. common c. unique d. general e. specific

64. The teacher showed the students how to handle difficult situations. The antonym of "handle" is ....

a. manage b. avoid c. control d. ignore e. deal with

65. The HR team will screen all resumes before scheduling interviews. The synonym of "screen" is ....

a. check b. ignore c. test d. accept e. skip

66. He spent hours trying to polish his essay before submitting it. The synonym of "polish" is ....

a. dirty b. shine c. clean d. damage e. spoil

67. They need to expand the business into new markets. The antonym of "expand" is ....

a. shrink b. grow c. increase d. reduce e. care

68. She made a plan to invest in her education for long-term success. The meaning of "long-term" is ....

a. lasting b. permanent c. temporary d. short e. sudden

69. The manager failed to coordinate the team, causing confusion in the project. The antonym of "coordinate" is ....

a. confuse b. disorder c. organize d. manage e. arrange

70. The candidate was very impressive during the interview. The antonym of "impressive" is ....

a. fantastic b. boring c. remarkable d. wonderful e. weak

71. Job seekers must prepare a strong resume and practice for interviews to improve their chances of getting hired. The synonym of "job seekers" is ....

a. employers b. job hunters c. applicants . d. employees e. managers

انتظروا|||||
كتاب مراجعة العمالقة
للصف الأول الثانوي
العمالقة
سلسلة Giants

الأدوات
articles

Indefinite articles: A & An — 1 — أدوات النكرة

✍ نستخدم a / an = one بمعنى واحد وتاتى قبل الاسم المفرد النكرة (غير محدد).

✍ نستخدم (a) قبل الاسم المفرد الذى يعد المبدوء بحرف ساكن كتابة ونطقاً.

a boy - a girl - a man - a woman - a hand - a lion - a bus - a farmer - a university - a uniform - a useful..... - a European.....

✍ نستخدم (an) قبل الاسم المفرد الذى يعد المبدوء بحرف متحرك كتابة ونطقاً (a, e, i, o, u):

an orange - an egg - an insect - an apple - an umbrella - an hour - an honest.....

Uses الاستخدامات

① نستخدم an / a قبل الاسم المفرد عند ذكره لأول مرة ويكون نكرة أى غير محدد

★ I saw a boy playing in the street.

★ I read a novel in the library.

② نستخدم an / a لنشير إلى الوظائف.

★ He works as a teacher.

★ She is an engineer.

③ نستخدم an / a لنشير إلى واحد من عدد أو إلى النوع

★ I ate an apple.

★ I bought a pen.

④ نستخدم an / a قبل الجنسيات إذا جاء بعدها اسم مفرد يعد

★ She is an Egyptian woman.

★ He is an English man.

⑤ نستخدم an / a قبل الصفات إذا جاء بعدها اسم مفرد يعد

★ Toka is an intelligent girl.

★ Ali is a clever boy.

⑥ نستخدم an / a مع تعبيرات السرعة والثمن والنسبة بمعنى كل.

- eighty kilometers an hour
- ten pounds a liter
- twenty pounds a kilo
- ten pounds a liter
- once a day
- twice a week
- four times a year
- four times a year

⑦ نستخدم an / a قبل أدوات التجزئة المفرد.

علبة من	a tin of	رغيف من	a loaf of	فنجان من	a cup of
شريحة من	a slice of	قطعة من	a bar of	كوب من	a glass of
عبوة من	a packet of	كيلو من	a kilo of	زجاجة من	a bottle of
فرخ من	a sheet of	كيس من	a bag of	برطمان من	a jar of
انبوبة من	a tube of	طبق من	a dish of	زوج من	a pair of

⑧ نستخدم an / a مع الصفات المركبة التى تبدأ برقم. ... a 15-year (old) boy

لاحظ عدم استخدام (a / an) مع:

الأسماء الجمع

- ★ They are **clever students**.
- ★ I saw **strong men** in the factory.

الأسماء التى لا تعد

- ★ Yesterday, we bought **nice furniture**.
- ★ I like to gain **information**.

الأسماء المعنوية

- ★ **Honesty** is one of his traits.

The definite article: (The) 2 أداة المعرفة

نستخدم (the) قبل الأسماء التى تعد مفرد أو جمع وايضا مع الأسماء التى لا تعد والأسماء المعنوية للتعريف أو للتحديد:

the boy - the boys - the cars - the news - the bread - the money

Uses الاستخدامات

① نستخدم **the** عند التعريف بغرض التحديد.

- ★ **The** little girl who is wearing a dress is Toka.

② نستخدم **the** عند ذكر الاسم مرة ثانية (يكون فى الجملة الأولى نكرة وفى الجملة الثانية معرفة).

- ★ She gave me **a present**. **The present** was nice.

③ نستخدم **the** مع الصفة فى الدرجة الثالثة (التفضيل)

the shortest	the biggest	the tallest	the best
the oldest	the newest	the least	the most

④ نستخدم **the** قبل الصفة لتشير إلى الجمع (يأتى بعدهم فعل جمع)

الموتى	the dead	الصغار	the young	الفقراء	the poor
المعاقين	the disabled	كبار السن	the old	الأغنياء	the rich

- ★ **The poor** are in a bad need to be helped by **the rich**.

⑤ نستخدم **the** مع جمل المقارنة: كلما .... كلما ....

- ★ **The more** you study, **the higher** marks you get.

⑥ نستخدم **the** قبل الصفات التى تدل على الجنسية لتدل على الشعب.

الشعب الايرلندي	the Irish	الشعب الانجليزي	the English
الشعب الاسباني	the Spanish	الشعب المصري	the Egyptian

⑦ نستخدم **the** مع الأسماء الفريدة من نوعها

السماء	the sky	القمر	the moon	الشمس	the sun
أبو الهول	the sphinx	الأرض	the earth	العالم	the world

⑧ نستخدم **the** قبل الآلات الموسيقية بعد أفعال معينة:

listen - play - learn - teach

- ★ He **teaches** me the drum.
- ★ Jana **plays** the guitar.

⑨ نستخدم **the** مع الاكتشافات والاختراعات (لكن عند الحديث عن بيع أو شراء أو إصلاح جهاز فلا تأخذ (the)

- ★ I bought **a computer** yesterday.
- ★ **The computer** is the most useful invention.

⑩ نستخدم **the** للإشارة إلى الأشياء بشكل عام:

العاصمة	the capital	المحطة	the station	المدينة	the city
السينما	the cinema	الطقس	the weather	النادي	the club

⑪ نستخدم **the** مع أسماء الهيئات والمنظمات والبنوك والفنادق والألقاب:

الملك	the king	الشرطة	the police	الحكومة	the government
اللورد	the lord	الوزارة	the ministry	الصحافة	the press
هلتون	the Hilton	الجيش	the army	الأسطول	the navy

⑫ نستخدم **the** مع أسماء البلاد المركبة والتى تحتوى على:

republic - state - union - kingdom

★ the Kingdom of Saudi Arabia. ★ the Republic of China
★ the United Arab Emirates. ★ the USA

⑬ نستخدم **the** قبل سلاسل الجبال والأنهار والبحار والمحيطات والصحارى والجزر والمناطق الجغرافية:

▸ the Red Sea ▸ the Nile ▸ the North Pole
▸ the Mediterranean Sea ▸ the Pacific ▸ the South Pole
▸ the Siwa Oasis ▸ the Alps ▸ the Middle East

عدم استخدام **the** مع الدول والقارات والمدن الصغيرة والكبيرة والبحيرات والخلجان والجبال المفردة وكذلك لا تستخدم مع الشوارع والطرق والميادين والأحياء.

▸ Lake Nasser ▸ Cairo University ▸ Mount Everest

⑭ نستخدم **the** مع التعبيرات الزمنية:

▸ in the morning ▸ in the evening ▸ in the afternoon
▸ in the present ▸ in the past ▸ in the future
▸ at night

لاحظ أن noon - night لا تأخذ the

⑮ نستخدم **the** مع الاتجاهات وقبل أسماء الصحف والكتب المقدسة:

فى شرق	in the east	شمال..	the north of...
فى غرب	in the west	جنوب..	the south of...
جريدة التايمز	the Times	الإنجيل	the Bible

⑯ نستخدم **the** قبل الأماكن عند استخدامها لغير غرضها (إذا كان الذهاب للمكان للغرض الأساسى منه لا نضع **the**)

★ She was sent to prison because of her crimes.
★ We went to the prison with our father to visit a relative of ours.

⑰ نستخدم **the** مع الأعداد الترتيبية:

▸ the first ▸ the next ▸ the sixties
▸ the second ▸ the last ▸ the seventies

سلسلة Giants
انتظروا!!!!!!
كتاب مراجعة العمالقة
للصف الأول الثانوي
العمالقة

No article لا نستخدم أداة

عدم استخدام أى أداة (a - an - the) قبل بعض الأسماء.

glass - football - love - English - Summer - plastic

Uses الاستخدامات

① لا نستخدم أى من أدوات النكرة أو المعرفة (a - an - the) مع الأسماء المجردة المعنوية (إلا عند التخصيص):

beauty	love	freedom	happiness	peace	evil

② لا نستخدم أى من أدوات النكرة أو المعرفة (a - an - the) قبل الأماكن إذا كان الذهاب للغرض الذى أنشئت من أجله:

school	prison	church	university	mosque	hospital

✍ لاحظ فى حالة اختلاف الغرض نضع the:

- ★ We go to school for learning.
- ★ He went to the school to ask about his son.

③ لا نستخدم أى من أدوات النكرة أو المعرفة (a - an - the) مع الأسماء المعدودة الجمع والغير معدودة بوجه عام (جمع يشير للكل)

women	men	animals	birds	water	bread

④ لا نستخدم أى من أدوات النكرة أو المعرفة (a - an - the) مع الألعاب الرياضية والأنشطة بوجه عام وغير محدد

basketball	football	tennis	volleyball	handball

⑤ لا نستخدم أى من أدوات النكرة أو المعرفة (a - an - the) مع المواد الخام بوجه عام وغير محدد

wood	glass	iron	plastic	wool	silk

⑥ لا نستخدم أى من أدوات النكرة أو المعرفة (a - an - the) مع أسماء الطعام والشراب بوجه عام وغير محدد

juice	rice	milk	meat	bread	tea

✍ لاحظ فى حالة التحديد نضع the:

- ★ I like to drink tea.
- ★ The tea you bought was very tasty.

⑦ لا نستخدم أى من أدوات النكرة أو المعرفة (a - an - the) مع المواد الدراسية

science	history	English	Arabic	art	chemistry

⑧ لا نستخدم أى من أدوات النكرة أو المعرفة (a - an - the) مع أسماء اللغات

French	Spanish	Japanese	English	Germen	Arabic

⑨ لا نستخدم أى من أدوات النكرة أو المعرفة (a - an - the) مع الوجبات بوجه عام وغير محدد

breakfast	lunch	dinner	supper

✍ لاحظ فى حالة التحديد نضع the:

- ★ I always have dinner with my parents.
- ★ The dinner we had together was great.

⑩ لا نستخدم أى من أدوات النكرة أو المعرفة (a - an - the) قبل الأيام والشهور وفصول السنة

Spring	Winter	Autumn	Summer	May	Sunday

⑪ لا نستخدم أى من أدوات النكرة أو المعرفة (a - an - the) قبل أسماء القارات الدول والمدن والأسماء العلم:

Egypt	Africa	Cairo	Ahmed	King Farouk

⑫ لا نستخدم أى من أدوات النكرة أو المعرفة (a - an - the) مع وسائل المواصلات فى حالة وجود حرف الجر by:

- ★ He always goes to school by taxi.

✍ لاحظ فى حالة استخدام حرف الجر in - on نضع بعدهم - a - an - the. صفة ملكية.

- ★ He always goes to school on a taxi.

Exercise 9h Language Level 1

1. She bought .... apple and ate it quickly. **Sb R2**
a. a **b.** an **c.** the **d.** no article

2. They live in .... big house near the beach. **Sb R2**
a. a **b.** an **c.** the **d.** no article

3. .... water is essential for life. **Sb R2**
a. A **b.** An **c.** The **d.** No article

4. My brother is .... engineer. **Sb R2**
a. a **b.** an **c.** the **d.** no article

5. He has .... excellent knowledge of history. **Sb R2**
a. a **b.** an **c.** the **d.** no article

6. .... cats are very independent animals. **Sb R2**
a. A **b.** An **c.** The **d.** No article

7. I have .... great idea. **Sb**
a. a **b.** an **c.** the **d.** no article

8. Can you play .... guitar? **Sb**
a. a **b.** an **c.** the **d.** no article

9. Mount Everest is .... highest mountain in the world. **Sb**
a. a **b.** an **c.** the **d.** no article

10. She speaks .... French and Spanish. **Sb**
a. a **b.** an **c.** the **d.** no article

11. I saw .... old man walking in the park. **Sb**
a. a **b.** an **c.** the **d.** no article

12. We stayed at .... hotel near the beach. **Sb**
a. a **b.** an **c.** the **d.** no article

13. We go to school by .... bus. **Sb**
a. a **b.** an **c.** the **d.** no article

14. There is .... cat on the roof. **Sb**
a. a **b.** an **c.** the **d.** no article

15. Seif has bought a book and a pen. .... book he bought was expensive. **المنتزة ٢٠٢٤**
a. A **b.** An **c.** No article **d.** The

16. .... life is full of ups and downs. **دير مواس ٢٠٢٤**
a. A **b.** An **c.** The **d.** No article

17. He gave me a pen and a ruler, but .... pen didn't work. **السنطة ٢٠٢٤**
a. a **b.** the **c.** an **d.** no article

18. .... mobile I bought yesterday is wonderful. **وسط اسكندرية ٢٠٢٤**
a. An **b.** A **c.** The **d.** No article

19. .... club where we always meet, is such a nice place. **قليوب ٢٠٢٤**
a. A **b.** An **c.** No article **d.** The

20. My mother usually puts her glass on .... T.V. **الحوامدية ٢٠٢٤**
a. a **b.** an **c.** no article **d.** the

21. .... computer is an important invention. **دشنا ٢٠٢٤**
a. The **b.** A **c.** An **d.** No article

22. I want to write .... short story. It looks fine. أسيوط أبنوب ٢٠٢٤
a. no article b. a c. the d. an

23. He had a dream last night. In .... dream he was ten meters tall. شرق طنطا ٢٠٢٤
a. an b. a c. the d. no article

24. When I was at school, I loved .... Mathematics. طلاب الخارج ٢٠٢٤
a. no article b. a c. an d. the

25. My father is .... hard-working man who performs his work so well. جهينة ٢٠٢٤
a. the b. a c. an d. no article

26. He likes to be .... astronaut in the future. بنها ٢٠٢٣
a. no article b. the c. an d. a

27. England and France are .... European countries. المنوفية ٢٠٢٣
a. a b. no article c. an d. the

28. My dad had to go to .... school to meet my teachers. القليوبية ٢٠٢٣
a. a b. an c. the d. no article

29. Paris is one of .... most beautiful cities in the world. قنا ٢٠٢٣
a. an b. a c. the d. no article

30. Reports say that ..... 8-year-old girl was hit by a fast-running car early this morning. دمنهور ٢٠٢٣
a. no article b. an c. a d. the

31. I hope .... exam we are going to have tomorrow will be easy. £M
a. no article b. the c. an d. a

32. My father is an accountant at .... furniture factory. £M
a. an b. no article c. the d. a

33. Avoid dealing with bad boys; it's better to be alone than in .... bad company. £M
a. no article b. a c. the d. an

34. Z is .... last letter of the English alphabet. £M
a. a b. the c. an d. no article

35. Did you know that .... sun is a big star? £M
a. a b. an c. the d. no article

36. What is .... biggest country in the world? £M
a. a b. the c. an d. no article

37. I think that .... exams we have next week will be very difficult.
a. an b. the c. a d. any

38. I have made .... new friend recently.
a. the b. a c. an d. no article

39. Would you like .... glass of juice?
a. a b. the c. some d. an

40. This is .... first time that the tourists have seen the Pyramids.
a. a b. the c. an d. no article

41. .... rich should help poor people.
a. A b. An c. The d. No article

42. I like diving in .... Red Sea.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article

43. This man works for eight hours .... day.
a. the b. no article c. a d. an

Exercise 04 Language Level 2

44. He got his degree from .... university in London. طوخ ٢٠٢٤
a. a b. an c. the d. no article

45. France is .... European country on the Mediterranean Sea. قنا ٢٠٢٤ قطور ٢٠٢٤
a. a b. an c. the d. no article

46. Do you think .... freedom is necessary for all the living things? الاقصر اسنا ٢٠٢٤
a. an b. a c. the d. no article

47. Ahmed is .... university student. وسط طنطا ٢٠٢٤
a. a b. an c. no article d. the

48. The train can travel at 90 kilometers .... hour. القوص ٢٠٢٤
a. a b. an c. the d. no article

49. They don't need .... advice from you. غرب شبرا الخيمة ٢٠٢٤
a. a b. an c. the d. no article

50. There are millions of stars in .... space. الخانكة ٢٠٢٤
a. an b. no article c. a d. the

51. .... fear is a perfectly natural human feeling. اسيوط ابوتيج ٢٠٢٤
a. The b. A c. An d. No article

52. In Egypt, students in primary schools have to wear .... uniform. اسيوط ٢٠٢٤ جنوب الجيزة ٢٠٢٤
a. an b. the c. no article d. a

53. The man who stole the car was taken to .... prison. سوهاج ٢٠٢٤
a. a b. an c. the d. no article

54. .... lunch I had with my friends in Alexandria is unforgettable. المحلة الكبرى ٢٠٢٣
a. An b. A c. The d. no article

55. My father always tells me .... valuable advice. السويس ٢٠٢٣
a. a b. an c. the d. no article

56. My friend wants to buy a car but .... cars are too expensive nowadays. فاقوس ٢٠٢٣
a. a b. an c. the d. no article

57. I live in .... Arab Republic of Egypt.
a. the b. a c. an d. no article

58. I bought a good basket made of .... plastic. العجمى ٢٠٢٣
a. an b. a c. the d. no article

59. I read .... useful book last week. EM
a. a b. an c. the d. no article

60. .... teachers in our school are all kind and very helpful. جرجا ٢٠٢٣
a. A b. The c. Much d. No article

61. .... women play an important role in society. EM
a. A b. An c. The d. No article

62. My neighbour is .... honest trader who is liked by all customers. EM
a. a b. the c. an d. no article

63. I live in .... Egypt.
a. the b. a c. an d. no article

64. I have got .... hundred pounds.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article

65. Egypt has .... unique location in the world.
a. the b. a c. an d. no Article

66. Mr Hassan is .... better of the two teachers.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article

Exercise on Language Level 3

67. ....success needs hard work and persistency to achieve. بسيون : ٢٠٢٠
a. A b. The c. No article d. An

68. ....exams are always very stressful for me. سوهاج أخميم ٢٠٢٤
a. An b. No article c. A d. The

69. I sent my friend ....SMS but he didn't reply.. القليوبية ٢٠٢٤
a. a b. an c. the d. no article

70. Most of the European countries use ....euro except the UK. جرجا ٢٠٢٤
a. an b. a c. no article d. the

71. My brother had an important exam yesterday but he spent.... hour watching TV. أبو حماد ٢٠٢٢
a. the b. an c. a d. no article

72. Hana is ....honest girl. المنيا ٢٠٢٢
a. a b. no article c. the d. an

73. Be careful, this is ....one-way street . البحر الأحمر ٢٠٢٢
a. no article b. an c. a d. the

74. I will go to ....to visit a friend there. إدارة القوصية ٢٠٢٢
a. hospital b. a hospital c. hospitals d. the hospital

75. I read ....amazing article about ....works of Taha Hussein. £M
a. - / the b. a / the c. an / the d. an / -

76. I'd rather purchase ....T-shirt because I dislike ....orange. £M
a. other / - b. another / - c. another / an d. others / an

77. Fortunately, I found ....room on ....bus going to my university. £M
a. no / the b. a / - c. - / the d. a / the

78. The ....you drive, ...safer you are. £M
a. slower / - b. slowest / the c. slower / a d. slower / the

79. ....Pacific Ocean is the largest and deepest of ....world ocean basins. £M
a. A / the b. The / - c. The / the d. - / the

80. Nothing in ....life is better than ....peace of mind. £M
a. a / - b. - / a c. the / - d. - / -

81. ....poor are always in need of help to lead ....better life. £M
a. a / a b. The / - c. The / a d. - / the

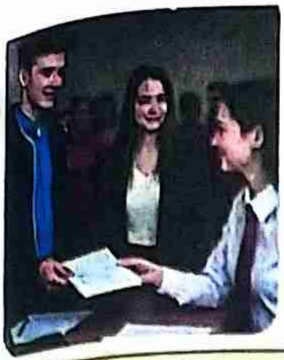
82. I got .... paper to write down the important pieces of news from .... paper I had read. £M
a. a / the b. some / the c. a few / the d. some / a

Find and correct the mistakes in the following sentences.

1. He is a honest man. Sb
2. I want to buy an new car. Sb
3. A birds sing in the morning. Sb
4. He's doctor. Sb
5. A moon is beautiful tonight. Sb
6. She gave me an advice. Sb
7. I need the pen to write. Sb
8. Sun rises in the east. Sb
9. They live in the London. Sb
10. We met on the Monday. Sb

Rewrite the sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. She is the only child in her family. (an only child) Sb
2. They stayed at the hotel near the station. (a hotel) Sb



Unit 6 Job Hunting

Lessons
3 Career Decisions
4 My Resume

Key Vocabulary

analysis$^{(n)}$	تحليل	platform $^{(n)}$	منصة	position$^{(n)}$	منصب / وظيفة
analyses $^{(n)}$	تحليلات	passion $^{(n)}$	شغف	results-driven $^{(adj)}$	مدفوع بالنتائج
analytics $^{(n)}$	التحليلات (البيانات الإحصائية)	self-reflection $^{(n)}$	التأمل الذاتي	engagement $^{(n)}$	تفاعل / مشاركة
promotional $^{(adj)}$	ترويجي / دعائي	challenging $^{(n/v)}$	يتحدى / تحدى	specialist $^{(n)}$	متخصص / خبير
resume $^{(n)}$	سيرة ذاتية	salary $^{(n)}$	راتب	content$^{(n)}$	محتوى
career $^{(n)}$	مهنة / مسيرة مهنية	qualities $^{(n)}$	صفات / خصائص	opportunities $^{(n)}$	فرص
decision $^{(n)}$	قرار	campaign$^{(n)}$	حملة (إعلانية / انتخابية)	professional $^{(adj)}$	مهني / احترافي
internships $^{(n)}$	تدريب عملي	candidate $^{(n)}$	متقدم لوظيفة / مرشح	relationship$^{(n)}$	علاقة
coordinator$^{(n)}$	منسق	references $^{(n)}$	مراجع / توصيات	digital marketing specialist$^{(n)}$	أخصائي التسويق الرقمي

Main Vocabulary

schedule $^{(v/n)}$	يحدد موعد / جدول	responsibility$^{(n)}$	مسؤولية	promote $^{(v)}$	يروّج / يرفع
organize $^{(v)}$	ينظّم / يرتب	specific $^{(adj)}$	محدد / معيّن	update$^{(n/v)}$	تحديث / يحدّث
follower $^{(n)}$	تابع / متابع	achievement$^{(n)}$	إنجاز / نجاح	assist $^{(v)}$	يساعد
collaborate $^{(v)}$	يتعاون	effective$^{(adj)}$	مؤثر	maintain $^{(v)}$	يحافظ
visual $^{(adj)}$	بصري / مرئي	separate $^{(v)}$ $^{(adj)}$	يفصل / منفصل	clear$^{(adj)}$	واضح
performance $^{(n)}$	أداء / إنجاز	examination $^{(n)}$	اختبار / فحص	objective $^{(adj)}$	موضوعي / هدف
database $^{(n)}$	قاعدة بيانات	determine $^{(v)}$	يحدد / يقرر	proper$^{(adj)}$	مناسب / صحيح
bachelor $^{(n)}$	بكالوريوس / أعزب	detailed $^{(adj)}$	مفصل	qualification $^{(n)}$	مؤهل / شهادة
management $^{(n)}$	إدارة	essential $^{(adj)}$	أساسي / ضروري	lasting$^{(adj)}$	دائم
description$^{(n)}$	وصف	features $^{(n)}$	خصائص / ملامح	grades $^{(n)}$	درجات / تقديرات
nature $^{(n)}$	طبيعة	illustrator $^{(n)}$	رسام توضيحي	impression $^{(n)}$	انطباع
current $^{(adj)}$	حالي	smooth $^{(adj)}$	سلس / ناعم	employer $^{(n)}$	صاحب العمل
profile $^{(n)}$	ملف شخصي / سيرة	reverse $^{(v/n)}$	عكس / رجوع للخلف	meaningful $^{(adj)}$	ذو معنى / مهم
previous $^{(adj)}$	سابق	coordinated$^{(adj)}$	منسق	format $^{(n/v)}$	صيغة / ينسق
rewarding $^{(adj)}$	مجزي / مُرضٍ	talent $^{(n)}$	موهبة	certification $^{(n)}$	شهادة / اعتماد
entire $^{(adj)}$	كامل	fulfilling$^{(n)}$	تحقيق	proofread $^{(v)}$	يراجع لغويًا
budget$^{(v/n)}$	ميزانية / يضع ميزانية	technical $^{(adj)}$	تقني / فني	excite $^{(v)}$	يثير / يحمس
brief$^{(n)}$	موجز / ملخص	complaint$^{(n)}$	شكوى	personal statement $^{(n)}$	بيان شخصي
competencies$^{(n)}$	كفاءات / قدرات	volunteer $^{(v/n)}$	متطوع / يتطوع	work experience $^{(n)}$	خبرة عمل
requirements$^{(n)}$	متطلبات	opportunities$^{(n)}$	فرص	competitor $^{(n)}$	منافس
inspiring$^{(adj)}$	ملهم / مسبب للالهام	updated$^{(adj)}$	مُحدّث	income $^{(n)}$	دخل

Collocations

make choices	يتخذ اختيارات	format a CV	ينسق السيرة الذاتية
make it easy to	يجعل الأمر سهلاً لـ	conduct/do analysis	يجري تحليلاً
make it short	يجعله قصيرًا	conduct/do research	يجري بحثًا
make an impression	يترك انطباعًا	build a balance	يحقق توازناً
format it professionally	ينسقه بشكل احترافي	organize meetings	ينظم الاجتماعات
proper formatting	تنسيق صحيح / ملائم	proofread for mistakes	يراجع لاكتشاف الأخطاء
create a campaign	ينشئ حملة	recommend a person	يوصي بشخص
monitor analytics	يراقب التحليلات	assist with event planning	يساعد في تخطيط الفعاليات
increase engagement	يزيد التفاعل	set up campaigns	يطلق / ينشئ حملات
schedule posts	يجدول المنشورات	bring parts together	يجمع الأجزاء معًا

Expressions & Prepositions

skilled in	ماهر في	marketing assistant	مساعد تسويق
collaborate with	يتعاون مع	local Business Hub	مركز أعمال محلي
apply for	يتقدم لـ	soft skills	مهارات شخصية
carry out research	يقوم ببحث	data analysis	تحليل البيانات
look after database	يعتني بقاعدة البيانات	bachelor of Science	بكالوريوس في العلوم
visual content	محتوى مرئي	social media manager	مدير وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي
seek to	يسعى الى	coordinator position	وظيفة منسق
combine ... with	يدمج ... مع	public awareness	وعي عام
turn ... into	يحول ... الى	content creation	انشاء المحتوي
contact section	قسم التواصل	customer relationship management	إدارة علاقات العملاء
technical skills	مهارات تقنية	career path	المسار الوظيفي / المهني

Definitions

analysis	تحليل	▸ the detailed study or examination of something to understand its nature or determine its essential features
coordinator	منسق	▸ a person or thing that brings separate parts together to work smoothly as a whole
promotional	ترويجي / دعائي	▸ related to advertising or promoting something to increase sales or public awareness
personal statement	بيان شخصي / خطاب شخصي	▸ a brief summary of who you are and your goals
education	التعليم	▸ your qualifications and academic background
work experience	الخبرة العملية	▸ your previous jobs and responsibilities
skills	مهارات	▸ the way of thinking about something; how you react to people or situations
references	مراجع / توصيات	▸ a source of information / a recommendation
competency	كفاءة / قدرة	▸ the ability to do something well or effectively

Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym	Antonym
scheduled	مجدول / منظم	planned / arranged / organized	canceled/delayed/postponed
promote	يروج / يدعم / يرفع	advertise / encourage / advance	demote / discourage / hinder
organize	ينظم	arrange/ systematize/coordinate	disorder / mess up / confuse
specific	محدد / معيَّن	particular / exact / precise	general / vague / broad
update	يحدث/ يحسّن	refresh / upgrade / revise	neglect / ignore / stagnate
achievement	إنجاز / نجاح	accomplishment / success	failure / defeat / loss
assist	يساعد / يعاون	help / support / aid	hinder / obstruct / oppose
collaborate	يتعاون / يشارك	cooperate / work together / unite	oppose / resist / compete
passion	شغف / حب شديد	enthusiasm / devotion/ desire	indifference / apathy / dislike
engagement	مشاركة / تفاعل	involvement/ participation	disengagement / separation
promotional	ترويجي / دعائي	advertising/ marketing/ publicity	discouraging / suppressive
challenging	صعب / يمثل تحدي	demanding / difficult/ testing	easy / simple / effortless

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
organize	يُنظم / يرتب	organization	تنظيم	organized	منظم
promote	يُروِّج / يُعزِّز	promotion	ترويج / ترقية	promotional	ترويجي
assist	يُساعد / يُعين	assistance	مساعدة	assistant	مساعد
achieve	ينجز	achievement	انجاز/ تحقيق	achievable	قابل للتحقيق
collaborate	يتعاون / يشارك	collaboration	تعاون	collaborative	تعاوني
compete	يتنافس	competition	مسابقة	competitive	تنافسي

Language Notes

Notice the Difference

rewarding	مُجزي / مُرضٍ	award	يمنح / إعطاء جائزة رسمية
coordinate	يُنسق	collaborate	يتعاون
promote	يروّج / يرفع	promotional	ترويجي
company	شركة	campaign	حملة
current	حالي / جاري	currant	نوع من الفاكهة (زبيب صغير)
sail	يُبحر / شراع	sale	بيع / تخفيض
together	معًا	altogether	تمامًا / كليًا
proficiency	براعة / إتقان	efficiency	كفاية
enter	يدخل	entire	كامل / بأكمله
employer	صاحب العمل	employee	موظف
competency	كفاءة / قدرة	competition	منافسة / مسابقة
describe	يصف	prescribe	يصف دواء / يحدد علاج

basis	أساس	bases	أسس
analysis	تحليل	analyses	تحليلات
grade	الدرجة في امتحان أو مادة	degree	الشهادة الجامعية (بكالوريوس/ماجستير/دكتوراه)
passion	شغف / حب عميق	passionate	شغوف / متحمس
applicant	المتقدم (من يملأ طلبا لوظيفة أو منحة)	candidate	المرشح (، يتم اختيارهم من بين المتقدمين)

coordinate, , coordinator, coordinated & coordination

coordinate (v)	ينسق	The teacher will **coordinate** the trip.
coordination (n)	تنسيق	Good **coordination** is important in teamwork.
coordinator (adj)	منسق	She is the event **coordinator**.
coordinated	منسق / متناسق	They wore **coordinated** clothes.

illustrate, illustration, illustrator & illustrative

illustrate (v)	يوضح / يشرح بالصور	The teacher will **illustrate** the idea with pictures.
illustration (n)	توضيح / رسم توضيحي	The book has many colorful **illustrations**.
illustrator (n)	رسام توضيحي	The **illustrator** drew the pictures for the story.
illustrative (n)	توضيحي	This chart is **illustrative** of the results.

analyze, analysis, analytical, analytically & analytics

analyze (v)	يحلّل	Scientists **analyze** the results of the experiment.
analysis(n)	تحليل	The **analysis** shows a big difference between the two groups.
analytical(n)	تحليلي	She has strong **analytical** skills.
analytics	التحليلات (اعادة للبيانات أو الإحصائيات)	The company uses **analytics** to understand customer behavior.
analytically(v)	بشكل تحليلي	The problem was solved **analytically**.

promote, promotion & promotional

promote	يروج / يرقي / يدعم	The company **promotes** its new product.
promotion	ترقية / ترويج	She got a job **promotion**.
promotional	ترويجي	They gave us a **promotional** gift.

Giants
سلسلة
GIANTS
العمالقة
انتظروا!!!!!
كتاب مراجعة العمالقة
للصف الأول الثانوي
العمالقة

" Sami Adel Digital Marketing Specialist"

Before you start: ➲ Think and discuss in pairs:

Reading

1) Answer the following questions.

1. What skills and qualities do you think are important for someone working
2. How can social media campaigns help a business grow?
3. If you were an employer, what would you look for in a candidate applying for a marketing position.

2) Read the following article

s.adel@gmail.com (02) 123-4567 linkedin.com/in/samiadel Abdin, Cairo

PROFESSIONAL(1). SUMMARY Results-driven digital(2). marketing specialist with 3+ years of experience managing social media campaigns and increasing online engagement.

Skilled in content creation, data analysis(3)., and customer relationship management(4). Seeking to use my skills in a challenging marketing coordinator position.

WORK EXPERIENCE

Social Media Manager / Tech Crop Solutions / June 2021 - Present.

- Increased follower engagement by 45% across all platforms(5).
- Created and scheduled 50+ posts weekly for multiple social media channels
- Collaborated(6). with the design team to develop visual content (7). for campaigns
- Monitored analytics and prepared monthly performance(8). reports

Marketing Assistant / Local Business Hub / Jan 2020 - May 2021

- Supported the marketing (9). team with campaign development and performance
- Maintained customer database (10). and updated contact information
- Assisted with event planning and promotional activities
- Conducted market research and competitor(11). analysis.

Education

Bachelor (12). of Science in Information Systems | Cairo University 2020

SKILLS

- Social Media Management .(Facebook, Instagram, Twitter, LinkedIn)
- Content Creation and Copy Writing.
- Google Analytics and Data Analysis.
- Customer Relationship (13). Management (CRM) software.
- Adobe software such as Photoshop and Illustrator(14).

١) مهني / احترافي
٢) رقمي
٣) تحليل
٤) إدارة
٥) منصات
٦) تعاون
٧) محتوى
٨) أداء
٩) تسويق
١٠) قاعدة بيانات
١١) منافس
١٢) بكالوريوس
١٣) علاقة
١٤) رسام

Answer the following questions:

1. What information is included in the contact section?
2. How many years of experience does Sami Adel have?
3. What specific achievements are mentioned in his current role?
4. How are his responsibilities organized in each job description?
5. What makes this resume effective?

Listening

"Choosing a career is not just about income(1). It also affects our happiness and a sense of purpose(2). That is why self-reflection(3) is so important. When students take time to think about their strengths(4), interests, and values, they make better choices for the future.

Researching jobs is another key step. Learning about the requirements(5), daily tasks, and growth opportunities helps avoid wrong decisions. Internships and volunteering can also shape career(6) goals by giving a real experience(7) and helping students discover what truly excites them. A good career path is built when passion(8) meets opportunities. It is not only about finding a job but also about creating a life that feels meaningful(9) and rewarding(10).

In fact, the most successful people often explain that happiness comes when you choose a career. career you love, not just a career that pays well. By combining talent (11)with effort, students can turn a simple job into an inspiring(12) journey. Moreover, the guidance of mentors(13), teachers, and family can provide a clear vision and prevent young people from making quick or careless choices. Finally, building a balance between personal dreams and market needs can lead to a truly fulfilling(14) and lasting and career."

١) دخل / إيراد
٢) هدف / غاية
٣) التأمل الذاتي
٤) نقاط القوة
٥) متطلبات
٦) مهنة / مسار وظيفي
٧) خبرة / تجربة
٨) شغف
٩) ذو معنى / ذو قيمة
١٠) مجزٍ / مرضٍ
١١) موهبة
١٢) ملهم
١٣) المرشدون / الموجهون
١٤) مرضٍ

Exercise 94 Key Vocabulary

1. The teacher asked the students to write a/an .... of the story to understand its hidden meaning
   a. analysis b. view c. account d. meaning
2. She .... customer complaints and found solutions. S3
   a. designed b. analyzed c. cut d. developed
3. Facebook is a social media .... where people share ideas and connect with friends.
   a. post b. kind c. platform d. sight
4. He applied for a .... as a sales manager at an international company
   a. market b. position c. location d. system
5. Scientists carried out several .... to find the cause of the sudden climate change.
   a. analysis b. dialogues c. manners d. analyses
6. She has a great .... for painting, and she spends hours creating beautiful art.
   a. passion b. mission c. pressure d. passionate
7. A .... employee always focuses on achieving goals and improving performance.
   a. careless b. results-driven c. lazy d. misfortunate
8. The marketing team used .... to measure the success of their advertising campaign.
   a. analize b. analysis c. analyses d. analytics
9. After the exam, he spent some time in self .... to think about his mistakes.
   a. respect b. discovery c. denial d. reflection

10. The company designed a .... video to attract more customers.
a. worrying b. promotional c. pessimistic d. horrible

11. The teacher encouraged student .... by asking interesting questions.
a. misunderstanding b. disrespect c. carelessness d. engagement

12. A simple idea can .... into a successful business with hard work.
a. transport b. transform c. depend d. transplant

13. The island was .... from the mainland, making it difficult to access.
a. isolated b. neighborhood c. nearby d. upstairs

14. Learning a new language can be a .... task, but it is very rewarding.
a. stuff b. cunning c. challenging d. restoring

15. My brother is a computer .... who helps companies solve technical problems.
a. artist b. specialist c. conflict d. player

16. She sent her .... to three companies, hoping to get an interview.
a. resume b. consume c. communication d. revision

17. He accepted the new job because it offered a higher .... than his old one.
a. scenery b. scope c. salary d. history

18. The teacher reminded us that the .... of their essay is more important than length.
a. connect b. comfort c. compact d. content

19. She built a successful .... as a doctor after many years of study.
a. apartment b. career c. work d. professional

20. Honesty and hard work are important .... in a good leader.
a. qualities b. quantities c. emergencies d. tasks

21. Studying abroad gives students many......... to learn new skills.
a. chapters b. services c. opportunities d. marks

22. He made a .... to move to Cairo and start a new job there.
a. resume b. speeches c. decision d. decide

23. The government launched a health .... to raise awareness about clean water.
a. campaign b. company c. computer d. career

24. The event .... made sure everything was organized before the conference started.
a. career b. coordinator c. attender d. collector

25. The company asked him to provide two......... from his previous jobs.
a. smokers b. fans c. morals d. references

26. He works as a Digital Marketing........., helping companies grow online.
a. astronaut b. director c. Specialist d. Sociologist

Exercise 04 Main Vocabulary

27. Parents have the .... to guide their children and support them in their studies.
a. responsibility b. responsible c. mood d. profit

28. The company will .... the new product using TV ads and social media campaigns.
a. permit b. protect c. prevent d. promote

29. Reading books is a/an .... way to improve your language and thinking skills.
a. effective b. environmental c. helpless d. careless

30. It's important to .... good relationships with your colleagues at work.
a. maintain **b.** corrupt **c.** give up **d.** infect

31. He was awarded a .... degree in engineering from Cairo University.
a. school **b.** faculty **c.** bachelor **d.** toddler

32. Good .... are required to apply for high-level jobs.
a. lessons **b.** qualifications **c.** quantities **d.** units

33. All customer data is stored in a .... to be easily retrieved when needed.
a. database **b.** maleware **c.** tube **d.** career

34. Time .... is an important skill for success in both work and study.
a. management **b.** manager **c.** engagement **d.** preventing

35. The teacher asked for a .... answer instead of a general explanation.
a. low **b.** common **c.** puplic **d.** specific

36. The job .... listed all the duties and responsibilities of the position.
a. description **b.** prescription **c.** function **d.** affection

37. The phone has many modern .... like face recognition and fast charging.
a. pressure **b.** pictures **c.** future **d.** features

38. The event was well- .... with clear timing and responsibilities.
a. printed **b.** educated **c.** demanded **d.** coordinated

39. Please use the correct .... when writing your research paper.
a. format **b.** former **c.** formal **d.** factory

40. The player's .... in the match impressed the fans and the coach.
a. ambulance **b.** performance **c.** ignorance **d.** difference

41. Teaching is a very .... career because it helps shape the future.
a. relating **b.** growing **c.** rewarding **d.** depressing

42. Always .... your essay before submitting it to avoid mistakes.
a. affect **b.** clean **c.** proofread **d.** post

43. Winning the gold medal was the greatest .... in his sporting career.
a. career **b.** function **c.** friendship **d.** achievement

Exercise 04 Expressions, Prepositions, Derivatives & Language Notes

44. I .... with the marketing team to create a new campaign. **SB**
a. served **b.** collaborated **c.** prevented **d.** corrected

45. We .... the monthly team meetings. **SB**
a. developed **b.** collaborated **c.** organized **d.** mentained

46. I .... customers at the reception desk. **SB**
a. assisted **b.** punished **c.** wasted **d.** formatted

47. Scientists must .... analysis of the data before reaching a final conclusion.
a. conduct **b.** decided **c.** predicted **d.** mended

48. The company decided to .... a campaign to promote its new product.
a. break **b.** require **c.** create **d.** collect

49. The speaker was able to .... an impression on the audience with his strong words.
a. do **b.** make **c.** tap **d.** support

50. A/ An .... is a brief summary of who you are and your goals.
a. coordinator **b.** analysis **c.** work experience **d.** personal statement

51. .... means your previous jobs and responsibilities.
a. Ccoordinator **b.** Analysis **c.** Work Experience **d.** Personal Statement

52. A .... is a person or thing that brings separate parts together to work smoothly as a whole.
a. coordinator **b.** analysis **c.** work Experience **d.** personal Statement

53. I am applying .... a summer job at the bookstore.
a. on **b.** for **c.** to **d.** from

54. .... means related to advertising or promoting something to increase sales or public awareness
a. Fictional **b.** Promotional **c.** Popular **d.** Global

55. He looks .... the database to keep all information safe.
a. after **b.** in **c.** of **d.** for

56. Scientists carry .... research to find solutions for global problems.
a. after **b.** in **c.** on **d.** out

Choose the (Two) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given.

57. The meeting was carefully scheduled to suit everyone. The synonym of the underlined word "**scheduled**" is .... **SB R.1**
a. canceled **b.** arranged **c.** delayed **d.** postponed **e.** planned

58. The company aims to promote its new product through TV ads. The synonym of the underlined word "**promote**" is ....
a. encourage **b.** demote **c.** advertise **d.** hinder **e.** planned

59. The teacher asked the students to organize their ideas before writing. The synonym of the underlined word "**organize**" is ....
a. arrange **b.** confuse **c.** systematize **d.** disorder **e.** mess

60. They agreed to collaborate on the project. The synonym of "**collaborate**" is ....
a. unite **b.** cooperate **c.** compete **d.** oppose **e.** resist

61. Her passion for art made her work day and night. The antonym of "**passion**" is ....
a. concern **b.** enthusiasm **c.** apathy **d.** devotion **e.** dislike

62. The teacher praised the students for their active engagement in class discussions. The antonym of the underlined word "**engagement**" is ....
a. disengagement **b.** involvement **c.** separation **d.** participation **e.** unity

63. Solving this puzzle was a challenging task for the children. The antonym of the underlined word "**challenging**" is ....
a. demanding **b.** effortless **c.** simple **d.** easy **e.** testing

64. He refused to assist his brother in carrying the heavy bags. The antonym of the underlined word "**assist**" is ....
a. agree **b.** hinder **c.** obstruct **d.** support **e.** test

65. She was able to manage a difficult project with patience and skill. The synonym of the underlined word "**manage**" is ....
a. fail **b.** control **c.** ignore **d.** confuse **e.** handle

66. He had to format the report carefully before submitting it to his manager .The synonym of the underlined word "**format**" is ....
a. decorate **b.** arrange **c.** disorganize **d.** disorder **e.** organize

الســـيرة الذاتيـــة
Curriculum Vitae (CV)

A The definition of Curriculum Vitae (CV)

★ A CV (**Curriculum Vitae**) is a document that summarizes your education, work experience, skills, and achievements. It's usually the first thing an employer sees about you, so it needs to make a good impression!

السيرة الذاتية (CV) هي وثيقة تُلخص تعليمك، خبراتك العملية، مهاراتك، وإنجازاتك. وهي عادةً أول ما يراه صاحب العمل عنك، لذلك يجب أن تترك انطباعًا جيدًا!

B Key points about CVs

☞ Keep it short (1-2 pages maximum)	اجعلها قصيرة (صفحة إلى صفحتين كحد أقصى)
☞ Use clear, simple language	استخدم لغة واضحة وبسيطة
☞ Include only relevant information	ضع فقط المعلومات المرتبطة والمهمة
☞ Make it easy to read	اجعلها سهلة القراءة
☞ Update it regularly	حدثها بانتظام

C Structure of a good CV

Section القسم	Description الشرح
1. Personal Information المعلومات الشخصية	☞ Full name الاسم الكامل ☞ Phone number رقم الهاتف ☞ Email address عنوان البريد الإلكتروني ☞ City and country المدينة والدولة ☞ LinkedIn profile (optional) ملف لينكد إن (اختياري)
2. Personal Statement/Objective البيان الشخصي / الهدف	☞ A short paragraph (2-3 sentences) describing who you are and what you want to achieve. فقرة قصيرة (٢–٣ جمل) تصف من أنت وما تريد تحقيقه.
3. Education التعليم	☞ List your qualifications in reverse chronological order (most recent first). اذكر مؤهلاتك بترتيب زمني عكسي (الأحدث أولاً) ☞ Format التنسيق ☞ Dates التواريخ ☞ Qualification/Degree المؤهل / الدرجة ☞ Institution المؤسسة ☞ Grades (if good) الدرجات (إذا كانت جيدة)

4. Work Experience الخبرة العملية	☞ Include all relevant jobs, internships, and volunteer work.	ضمن جميع الوظائف ذات الصلة، والتدريبات، وأعمال التطوع
	☞ Format	التنسيق
	☞ Dates	التواريخ
	☞ Job title	المسمى الوظيفي
	☞ Company name	اسم الشركة
	☞ Key responsibilities and achievements	المسؤوليات والإنجازات الرئيسية
5. Skills المهارات	☞ Technical skills (computer programs, languages)	المهارات التقنية (برامج الكمبيوتر، اللغات)
	☞ Soft skills (communication, teamwork, leadership)	المهارات الشخصية (التواصل، العمل الجماعي، القيادة)
	☞ Language skills with proficiency levels	مهارات اللغة مع مستويات الإتقان
6. Additional Sections (if relevant) أقسام إضافية (إذا كانت مناسبة)	☞ Certifications	الشهادات
	☞ Projects	المشاريع
	☞ Interests/Hobbies	الاهتمامات / الهوايات
	☞ References	المراجع

Exercise On Writing

1. The main purpose of a CV is to .... Sb R2
a. tell a personal life story
b. request a favor from a friend
c. summarize education, skills, and work experience
d. share vacation photos

2. Where would you include your contact information in a CV? Sb R2
a. At the end, after references
b. In the middle of work experience
c. At the top of the page
d. Only in the cover letter

3. Which of the following is NOT typically included in a CV? Sb R2
a. Education history
b. Work experience
c. Full life story and childhood memories
d. Relevant skill

4. A CV usually includes ....
a. your favorite food
b. your education and skills
c. daily activities
d. stories about your life

5. The personal statement in a CV should ....
a. be very long
b. include your hobbies only
c. describe who you are and your goals
d. tell a funny story

6. Work experience shows ....
a. your friends' jobs
b. your past jobs and responsibilities
c. your favorite books
d. your dreams

7. A good CV should be ....
a. clear and short
b. 10 pages
c. full of pictures
d. without contact information

8. Education in a CV is written in ....
a. random order
b. alphabetical order
c. by favorite subject
d. reverse chronological order

9. The personal statement helps the employer understand your ....
a. goals **b.** toys **c.** trips **d.** dreams

10. Skills in a CV can include ....
a. cooking and sleeping **b.** technical and soft skills
c. favorite games **d.** shopping lists

11. References are ....
a. your teachers only **b.** websites for jobs
c. people who can recommend you **d.** your brothers and sisters

12. To make a good impression, a CV must ....
a. be messy **b.** be copied from a friend
c. have no contact details **d.** be professional

13. Updating a CV regularly is important because ....
a. it keeps information current **b.** it makes it longer
c. it adds jokes **d.** it changes your name

14. Action verbs in a CV help ....
a. remove important details **b.** make it more confusing
c. make it more powerful **d.** hide your achievements

15. Listing your work experience shows the employer your ....
a. wishes **b.** hobbies **c.** secrets **d.** jobs

16. A CV should always be written in a .... way to look professional.
a. messy **b.** clear **c.** random **d.** funny

17. When writing education, students should mention the .... they studied at.
a. school **b.** garden **c.** park **d.** shop

18. References are usually teachers, managers, or other .... people.
a. lazy **b.** trusted **c.** angry **d.** random

Exercise 04 Translation

1. During life, man goes through many different situations, and these situations give them experience in how to deal with life and people. قلين ٢٠٢٤

أ. يمر الإنسان خلال حياته بالعديد من المواقف المختلفة، وهذه المشاكل تكسبه خبرة في كيفية التعامل مع الحياة والناس.
ب. يمر الإنسان خلال حياته بالقليل من المواقف المختلفة، وهذه المواقف تكسبه خبرة في كيفية التعامل مع الحياة والناس.
ج. يمر الإنسان خلال حياته بالعديد من المواقف المختلفة، وهذه المواقف تمنحه خبرة في كيفية التعامل مع الحياة والناس.
د. يمر الإنسان خلال حياته بالعديد من المواقف المختلفة، وهذه المواقف تكسبه تجارب في كيفية التعامل مع الحياة والناس.

2. Some people think that increasing business and cultural contact between nations is positive. Others think it leads to the disappearance of the national identity. دمنهور ٢٠٢٤

أ. يعتقد البعض أن زيادة الاتصال التجاري والزراعي بين الدول أمر إيجابي ويعتقد البعض الآخر أنه يؤدى إلى اختفاء الهوية الوطنية.
ب. يعتقد البعض أن زيادة الاتصال الصناعي والثقافي بين الدول أمر إيجابي ويعتقد البعض الآخر أنه يؤدى إلى اختفاء الهوية الوطنية.
ج. يعتقد البعض أن زيادة الاتصال التجاري والثقافي بين الدول أمر إيجابي ويعتقد البعض الآخر أنه يؤدى إلى اختفاء الهوية الوطنية.
د. يعتقد البعض أن زيادة الاتصال التجاري والثقافي بين الدول أمر سلبي ويعتقد البعض الآخر أنه يؤدى إلى اختفاء الهوية الوطنية.

٢. تتأثر البيئة بالنشاط البشري لهذا السبب يعد الإنسان أهم عنصر في الحفاظ على البيئة أو تدميرها. قلين ٢٠٢٤

a. The environment is affected by human activity. For this reason man is the most important element in preserving or destroying the environment.
b. The environment isn't affected by human activity. For this reason man is the most important thing in preserving or destroying the environment.
c. The environment is infected by human activity. For this reason man is most important element in deserving or destroying the environment.
d. The environment is affected by human creativity. For this reason man isn't the most important element in deserving or destroying the environment.

General Exercises on Unit 6

A Vocabulary and Structure

Choose the (2) correct answers out of the (5) options given:

1. He gave a specific example to explain the rule. The synonym of "specific" is ....
a. vague b. general c. particular d. broad e. precise

2. I like .... on the beach today. It's too hot to do anything else.
a. to lie b. lying c. lie d. to lying e. lies

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. University students often have to .... research on different topics.
a. make b. join c. carry d. do

4. He received a .... in project management last year.
a. career b. certify c. certification d. certain

5. Her smile left a positive .... on everyone she met.
a. comprehension b. impression c. impressive d. environment

6. They .... the budget for the entire project.
a. assisted b. sellected c. wasted d. managed

7. You must always .... your phone software to keep it safe from viruses.
a. inquire b. deepen c. update d. acquire

8. You must never look at .... sun.
a. a b. the c. an d. no article

9. Mahmoud went to a school in Cairo. .... school was very big.
a. A b. The c. An d. No article

10. The bananas are 15 pounds .... kilo.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article

11. What time is .... Maths lesson this afternoon?
a. an b. the c. a d. any

12. Last week, he was talking in .... lesson and the teacher was angry with him.
a. an b. some c. a d. the

13. I finished .... homework I had before I went out.
a. the b. a c. an d. no article

14. Skills in a CV can be divided into soft skills and .... skills.
a. musical b. social c. technical d. random

15. A CV is important because it gives employers a quick view of your ....
a. holidays b. education c. clothes d. pets

B Reading Comprehension

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Some doctors think that you should drink a glass of water each morning. You should drink this water first thing, before doing anything else. The temperature of the water should be similar to body temperature; neither too hot nor too cold.

Why should you drink this water? Water helps your body in many ways. It helps clean out your kidneys. It prepares your stomach for digestion. Water can also help your intestines work better. After drinking water, the intestines can more easily take out nutrients from our food. Water also helps us go to the bathroom more easily.

Scientists suggest that people take in 1,600 milliliters of water each day. But don't drink all of that water in one sitting. If you do, your kidneys will have to work much harder to eliminate it. It's better to drink some in the morning and some in the afternoon. Some people think it's better to drink between meals and not during meals. They think water dilutes the juices produced in our stomachs. This can interfere with normal digestion.

Are you drinking enough water every day? Check the color of your urine. If it is light yellow, you are probably drinking enough. If your urine is very dark yellow, you probably need to drink more water. A little more water each day could make you much healthier!

16. What could be a good title for this reading?
a. "Drink Water, Not Soft Drinks" b. "Drink During Meals"
c. "Drink Between Meals" d. "Drink Enough Water"

17. Why is it helpful to drink water in the morning?
a. Your kidneys will work harder. b. Your intestines will work well.
c. Your juices will be diluted. d. Your urine will be pale yellow.

18. Which of the following is NOT a reason to drink water?
a. So your intestines will work well. b. To get more nutrients.
c. To clean out your kidneys. d. To dilute your stomach juices.

19. Why is it better to drink between meals?
a. So you eat enough food. b. So you don't dilute stomach juices.
c. So your urine will not smell bad. d. So you don't overwork your kidneys.

20. Why is dark-colored urine a sign to drink more water?
a. It shows our body is healthy. b. It means our kidneys are working too hard.
c. Less water makes the color darker. d. It is the same color as our digestive juices.

21. What is the synonym of the "eliminate"?
a. add b. keep c. permit d. get rid of

22. The antonym of "similar to" is.......... .
a. the same as b. alike c. different from d. look like

C Writing

Translate the following sentences:

٢٣. من المتوقع أن يتضاعف عدد سكان القاهرة الكبرى فى العقود القليلة القادمة، ولذلك لابد من اتخاذ تدابير أكثر فعالية لمواجهة المشاكل الناتجة عن هذه الزيادة. LM

a. The population of Greater Cairo is expected to increase in the next few decades. Therefore, effective measures must be taken to face the problems resulting in this increase.
b. The population of Greater Cairo is expected to double in the next few years. Therefore, effective measures must be taken to face the problems leading to this increase.
c. The population of Greater Cairo is expected to double in the next few centuries. Therefore, effective measures must be discussed to face the problems resulting from this increase.
d. The population of Greater Cairo is expected to double in the next few decades. Therefore, effective measures must be taken to face the problems resulting from this increase.

24. Throughout history, literature has played a significant role in human life; it portrays the culture, civilisation, customs, and behaviours of man. LM

أ. لقد لعب العلم، عبر التاريخ، دورا مهما في حياة الإنسان. حيث يصور ثقافة وحضارة وعادات وسلوكيات الإنسان.
ب. لقد لعب الأدب، عبر التاريخ، دورا مهما في حياة الدول. حيث يصور ثقافة وحضارة وعادات وسلوكيات الإنسان.
ج. لقد لعب الأدب، عبر التاريخ، دورا مهما في حياة الإنسان. حيث يصور ثقافة وحضارة وعادات وسلوكيات الإنسان.
د. لقد لعب الأدب، عبر العصور، دورا مهما في حياة الإنسان. حيث يصور ثقافة وحضارة وعادات وسلوكيات الإنسان.

Answer the following questions:

25. What warning did Santiago sense from the smell of blood in the water?
26. In what way is Santiago's battle with sharks different from his battle with the marlin?
27. How is the marlin both a victory and a tragedy in this chapter?

Write your own CV. Include all relevant sections .

1) Complete the following dialogue:

أزهر شرقية أدبى ٢٠٢٢

A teacher is talking to his student.

Teacher: Adam, you don't show me your homework.
Adam: I'm sorry, sir. ❶ ....
Teacher: Oh, why?
Adam: I wasn't well yesterday.
Teacher: ❷ ....?
Adam: I had a headache.
Teacher: ❸...?
Adam: No, I didn't.
Teather: Do you watch much TV?
Adam: ❹ ....
Teacher: I advise you not to watch too much TV.

2) Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Dinosaurs are extinct animals that disappeared completely from the earth more than 65 million years ago. We have known about dinosaurs from their fossils which were preserved in rocks. Scientists now know a lot about dinosaurs. They know that some dinosaurs lived on grass and other plants while others fed on meat. Scientists discovered fossils for more than 1000 species of dinosaurs but they don't know for sure why they died out Some scientists think that a meteorite hit the earth and caused dinosaurs to die out. Another possible reason is climate change. Any way we now know that dinosaurs lived in all the continents of the world because we found their fossils everywhere on the earth.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. When did dinosaurs disappear completely?

....

2. How have we known about dinosaurs?

....

3. How many species of dinosaurs do scientists know?

....

B. Choose the correct answer:

4. Some scientists think that a .... hit the earth.
a. star b. meteorite c. planet d. moon
5. Dinosaurs are .... animals
a. modern b. extinct c. new d. domestic

3) A. Translate into Arabic:

1. All Egyptians must work hard to find possible solutions to our economic problems.

....

B. Translate into English:

٢. يصبح المسلم بأركان الإسلام الخمس مسلمًا حقاً ليلعب دورا فعالا في المجتمع الإسلامى.

....